

www.visionias.net

Lucent's



General Science



CONTENTS

01. Physics	... 1-222
I. General Physics (Mechanics)	... 1-51
Physics, Measurement, Motion, Newton's Laws of Motion, Linear Momentum and Impulse, Rocket (a variable mass system) Types of Forces or Interactions, Frictional Force, Centripetal Force, Torque or Moment of force, Simple Machines, Equilibrium of bodies, work, power, energy, Gravitation, Orbital velocity, Geo-Stationary Satellite, Escape velocity, Elasticity, Archimedes's principle, Law of flotation, Surface tension, Viscosity, Bernoulli's theorem, Simple Harmonic Motion (SHM)	
II. Sound (Acoustics)	... 51-66
Waves or Waves-Motion, Sound waves, Ultrasonic waves or Supersonic waves, Newton's formula & Laplace's Correction for speed of sound, characteristics of musical sound, Reflection of sound wave, Echo, Refraction of sound, Superposition of waves, Interference in sound, Beats, Stationary or Standing waves, Organ pipes, Doppler's effect in sound, Sonic booms.	
III. Thermal Physics (Heat & Thermodynamics)	... 67-89
Heat and Temperature, Thermometry, Thermal expansion of solids, liquids and gases, Calorimetry, Molar heat capacity of the gases, Transmission of heat— Conduction, Convection and Radiation, Black body, Kirchoff's law, Stefan's law, Newton's law of cooling, Kinetic theory of gases, Thermodynamics, Entropy, Evaporation or vapourisation, Joule-Thomson or Joule-Kelvin effect, Relative humidity.	
IV. Light (Optics)	... 89-119
Light, Dual nature of light, Rectilinear propagation of light, Pin hole camera, Eclipses— Solar & Lunar, Reflection of light, Plane mirror, Spherical mirrors— Concave & Convex, Refraction of light, Total Internal Reflection of Light, Critical Velocity, Optical fibers, Refraction of light through a lens, Power of a lens, Dispersion of light, Rainbows, Colour of objects, Interference of light waves, Coherence, Diffraction of light, Polarisation of light waves, Double refraction, Nicol's prism, Polaroid, Plane, Circularly and Elliptically polarised light, Scattering of light, Human eye, Eye's defects or Defects of vision, Optical Instruments— Camera, Microscopes and Telescopes, Fermat's principle, aberration, Achromatism of lenses.	
V. Electricity & Magnetism	... 119-156
Electrostatics—Kinds of charges, Electric field, surface charge density, Coulomb's law, Electric field Intensity, Electric dipole and dipole moment, Electric flux, Gauss's law, Electric potential, Electrical Capacity and Capacitor (Condenser), Dielectric, Electric polarization of matter.	
Current Electricity—Current density, Electric cell, Ohm's law, Child Langmuir's law, Specific resistance or resistivity, Combination of resistances, Lorentz force, Magnetic Flux, Magnetic field, Biot-Savart law, Ampere's law, Galvanometer, Potentiometer, Faraday's laws of	

electromagnetic induction, Lenz's law, Self induction and Mutual induction, Thermo electricity, Electric Heater, Electric Iron, Alternating current (A.C.), Power, Power factor and wattless Current, choke-Coil, Transformer, Dynamo, Microphone, Loudspeaker, Electric Motor, Electric fuse, Socket, Plugs, Electric Switch.

Magnetism—Properties of magnet, Magnetic field intensity, Terrestrial Magnetism, Miscellaneous.

VI. Modern Physics (Atomic & Nuclear Physics) ... 156–179

Electron, Proton, Neutron, pi-meson (π -meson), Positron, Cosmic rays, Planck's, Quantum theory, Photo electric effect, Photo electric cells, Compton effect, X-rays, Moseley's law, Bragg's law, de-Broglie hypothesis of matter waves, Atomic models, Zeeman Effect, Raman Effect, Radioactivity, Mass defect and Binding energy, Nuclear fission and fusion, Michelson-Morley Experiment, Einstein's special theory of relativity.

VII. Electronics ... 179–222

Thermionic emission, Diode & Triode valves, Semiconductor, *p-n*-junction/Semiconductor diode, Tunnel diode, Solar cell, Junction Transistor/Bipolar Transistor, Unipolar Transistor or Field Effect Transistor (FET), MOSFET, Modern electronic devices—CRO, Television, RADAR, LASER, Miscellaneous, Objective Questions.

02. Astronomy ... 223–240

Development of Astronomy, Universe or Cosmos, Eminent Astronomers—Ptolemy's Geocentric theory, Copernicus's Heliocentric theory, Herschel, Hubble's law of recession of galaxies, Doppler's shift, Pulsating or Oscillating theory of Universe, Celestial bodies, Galaxy, Constellation, Stars (Origin & Evolution), Neutron Stars, Solar system, Inner planets or Terrestrial planets, Sun, Photosphere, Chromosphere, Corona, Sun spots, Conventional planets, Prague Summit, Order of planets—Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars etc, Dwarf planets—Pluto, Cheron, Xena—2003 UB 313, Small Celestial bodies—Asteroids, Comets, Meteor etc, Satellite of the earth—Moon, Objective Questions.

03. Computer ... 241–264

Development of Computer, Computer Generations, Types of Computer (according to size)—Micro, Mini, mainframe, Super Computer etc, Quantum Computer, Categorization of Computer based upon their working system—Digital, Analogue, Hybrid, Optical Computer etc, Functions of Computer, Computer System—Hardware & Software, Languages of Computer—Machine code language, Assembly language etc, High level languages—FORTAN, COBOL, BASIC, PASCAL, PROLOG, FORTH etc., Computer bug/virus, Computer Networking, Important facts related to Computers

04. Chemistry

I. Physical Chemistry

Chemistry, Various branches of Chemistry, States of matter, Composition of matter—Solid, Liquid and Gas, Chemical composition of matter—Element, Compound and Mixture, The Component or Constituent particles of the substance or matter, Separation of mixture, Atomic Mass Unit & Mole concept, Mole and Avogadro number, Atomic structure—Atom and Molecule, Atomic models—Rutherford & Bohr's Model, Bohr-Burry Scheme, Shell or Orbit, Orbital, Electronic Configuration, Quantum theory, Pauli's Exclusion Principle, Hund's rule, Radioactivity, Nuclear Fission & Fusion, Electronic theory of Valency & Chemical bonding, Oxidation-Reduction, Acid, Base and Salt, pH Value, Buffer Solution, Chemical formula & Chemical Equation, Chemical reaction, Metallic Corrosion, Galvanization, Solution, Solute and Solvent, Colloid or Colloidal Solution, Gaseous laws, Chemical Kinetics & Chemical equilibrium, Electro Chemistry, Fuels.

... 265-414

... 265-318

II. Inorganic Chemistry

Periodic Classification of elements, Metallurgical Operations, Elements, Ores and their Formulae, Metals—Sodium, Magnesium, Aluminium, Calcium, Manganese, Iron, Copper, Silver, Gold, Platinum, Zinc, Mercury, Lead, Thorium, Uranium, Plutonium etc. Non-Metals—Hydrogen, Carbon, Silicon, Nitrogen, Phosphorus, Oxygen, Sulphur, Halogen, Inert Gases, Metalloid, Some brief fundamentals of Inorganic Chemistry, Catalysis, Man made substances—Cement, Glass, Fertilizers etc.

... 318-371

III. Organic Chemistry

Classification of organic compounds—Aliphatic or Open chain compounds, Cyclic or Close chain compounds, Some important incidents of organic chemistry, Hydrocarbon, Some basic organic compounds, Organic compounds and their uses, Natural sources of organic acids, Alcoholic beverages, Petroleum, Soaps & Detergents, Oils & Fats, Waxes, Plastic, Rubber, Fibres, Miscellaneous, Objective Questions.

... 372-414

05. Biology

Biology, Classification of Organisms, Binary System of the nomenclature of organism, Cytology (cell, its structure and functions of cell organelles), Chromosomes, Structure of DNA and RNA, Virus, Monera Kingdom, Bacteria, Viral and bacterial diseases, Protista Kingdom, Fungi Kingdom, Fungal diseases, Lichens, Plant Kingdom, Algae, Morphology of Angiosperms, Plant tissue, Nutrition in plant, Plant Hormones, Plant diseases, Ecology, Modern Classification of animal kingdom, Animal tissue, Nutrition of Animals, System of Human body—Digestive System, Respiratory System, Excretory System, Nervous System, Circulatory System, Skeleton System, Endocrine System, Reproductive System, Genetics, The terms related to the Genetics (Genetical terminology), Biological terms, Specific branches of Biology, Inventions related to the Medical/Biological Science, Objective Questions.

... 415-586



SCIENCE

Science : The word science comes from the Latin word *Scientia* which implies *Knowledge*. The Science as a subject has come to mean the systematic, consistent and excellent study of the physical world including everything that can be seen, observed or detected in nature by the man and society and the knowledge that grows out of such study. Usually the science is characterized by the methodologies and approaches of the hypotheses, postulates, assumptions, theories and laws based upon experimental observations and mathematical conclusions.

The science is broadly categorized into two groups— Natural science and Social science. Natural science deals with nature or physical world while social science deals with the subjects like sociology, economics, political science, human geography etc. Here in this book we are concerned about natural science only. Natural science is broadly divided into :

1. Physical science (studies concerned with non-living matter).
2. Life science or Biological science (studies concerned with living matter).

On the macro-level physical science consists of Physics and Chemistry while life science (Biology) consists of Botany and Zoology.

The contents of the Astronomy and Computer (especially their elementary and fundamental concepts) are today also assumed (considered) to be the part of the conventional science.

At present research and development activities in various branches of natural science like astrophysics, geophysics, biophysics, biochemistry, genetics, virology, evolution and ecology etc. are going on in earnest.

01. Physics

Physics : Physics is associated with those aspects of nature which can be understood in the most fundamental way in terms of the elementary principles and laws. In other words Physics is that branch of physical science in which matter and energy mutually interact with each other. Physics is usually studied in the following groups—

I. General Physics (Mechanics)

1. Quantity and Measurement

Quantity : Anything, which is expressed in number or whose representation is totally numerical is called quantity.

Example : Population, Ages of men or women, weights of objects etc.

Physical quantity : Quantities expressed in terms of laws of physics are called physical quantities.

Example : Mass of an object, length, force, speed, distance, displacement, momentum, electric current etc. These physical quantities are of two types (i) scalars (ii) vectors.

(i) **Scalars :** Those physical quantities which have magnitude only and whose direction is not taken into the consideration are called scalars.

Example : Mass, temperature, density, volume, electric current, work etc.

(ii) **Vectors :** Those physical quantities which have both magnitude and direction and which are represented by the directed line segment (\rightarrow) obeying the triangle law of vectors or parallelogram law of vectors are called vectors.

Example : Displacement, linear momentum, angular velocity, torque, magnetic field intensity, electric displacement, current density etc.

A physical quantity which has both magnitude and direction but which doesn't obey vector laws of addition or subtraction is not a vector quantity, like electric current, pressure, work etc. Also there are certain physical quantities which are used both as scalar and vector. Simply area is treated as a scalar, while normal area is treated as a vector.

Units of Measurement : To measure any quantity, a definite and a substantial amount of that quantity, is assumed to be standard which is called unit of the quantity and when any given quantity is measured in the terms of this unit, the process is called measurement. There are usually two types of units—

- (i) Fundamental Units (ii) Derived Units

(i) **Fundamental Units :** If a physical quantity is expressed in terms of units which are used as standards and these standards are independent of each other, then these units are called Fundamental Units.

During the
Length, Mass
units of Elect
of substance
Units.

Derived
more funda
units have
of Force, M
Units.

System of
Usual

(i) CG
of units L
Second re
Units.

(ii) FI
Length, I
system is

(iii)
of units
Second.

(iv)
Confere
of Unit
consens
System

The
SI syste

Seven
(i)

as—

To

1 met

(i)

as—

1

kept

calle

—

as—

of a

919:

coo

Am

During the early stage of research and development the units of Length, Mass and Time were assumed to be Fundamental. But later the units of Electric Current, Temperature, Luminous Intensity and the amount of substance were added and thus at present there are seven Fundamental Units.

Derived Units : If a physical quantity is expressed in terms of two or more fundamental units then these units are called *Derived Units*. These units have no independent existence like fundamental units. The unit of Force, Momentum, Work, Potential Energy, Density etc. are Derived Units.

System of Units

Usually physical quantities are measured in four systems of units.

(i) **CGS System** (Centimeter/Gram/Second System) : In this system of units Length, Mass and Time are measured in Centimeter, Gram and Second respectively. CGS system is also called *Metric or French System of Units*.

(ii) **FPS System** (Foot/Pound/Second System) : In this system of units Length, Mass and Time are measured in Foot, Pound and Second. FPS system is also called British System of Units.

(iii) **MKS System** (Meter/Kilogram/Second System) : In this system of units Length, Mass and Time are measured in Meter, Kilogram and Second.

(iv) **SI System** (International System of Units) : In the International Conference of Weights and Measures held at Geneva in 1960 the SI System of Units was adopted and accepted on the basis of a comprehensive consensus. In fact SI system is extended and modified form of the MKS System.

There are *Seven Fundamental Units* and *two Supplementary Units* in SI system.

Seven Fundamental Units of SI System :

(i) **Length** : In SI System Length is measured in *meter* and is defined as—

Total distance travelled by light in vacuum in $1/299792458$ sec is called *1 meter*.

(ii) **Mass** : In SI system Mass is measured in *Kilogram* and is defined as—

The amount of the mass of a cylindrical alloy of Platinum-Iridium kept at International Bureau of Weight and Measure at Sevres in France is called *1 kilogram*.

(iii) **Time** : In SI system Time is measured in *second* and it is defined as—

In the transition of two hyper fine levels of energy in the ground state of an atom of Cesium-133 by means of radiation between an interval of 9192631770 time-periods is called *1 second*.

Einstein in his special Theory of Relativity used Time as fourth coordinate in Space-Time coordinate system.

(iv) **Electric current** : In SI system Electric current is measured in *Ampere* and is defined as—

If two long parallel wires (coils) are kept 1 meter apart through which an electric current is passed in such a way that it produces a magnetic force of 2×10^{-7} N, then the magnitude of the electric current is called 1 Ampere.

(v) Temperature : In SI system Temperature is measured in Kelvin and is defined as—

Three phases of water-solid (ice), liquid and vapour-coexist at 273.16 K which is called triple point of water and this temperature is called critical temperature and its $1/273.16$ th part is called 1 kelvin.

(vi) Luminous Intensity : In SI system luminous intensity is measured in Candela which is defined as—

If any monochromatic source of light produces a frequency of 540×10^{12} Hz in a definite direction and if its intensity is $1/683$ watt/steradian, then is Luminous Intensity is of 1 Candela. If 1 Joule energy is emitted in 1 sec within any solid angle, then it is called 1 watt/steradian.

(vii) Amount of Substance : In SI system Amount of Substance is measured in Mole which is defined as—

If the number of molecules, atoms or ions present in any substance or element is 6.023×10^{23} , then the required amount of the substance or element is called 1 mole.

If this number of molecules, atoms or ions in any substance or element is 6.023×10^{23} , then it is also called Avogadro's Number. Thus Avogadro's Number = 6.023×10^{23} .

or, 1 mole = Avogadro's number

Supplementary Units of SI system

There are two Supplementary Units in SI system.

(i) Radian : The plane angle made by any arc of a circle of equal radius is called 1 radian. All plane angles are measured in radian.

(ii) Steradian : The solid angle made on the centre of a sphere by the area formed as a square on the surface of the sphere where the side of the square is equal to the radius of the sphere is called 1 steradian. All the solid angles are measured in steradian.

Fundamental Units

Physical Quantity	S.I. Units	Symbol
Length	Meter	m
Mass	Kilogram	kg
Time	Second	s
Electric current	Ampere	A
Temperature	Kelvin	θ or K
Luminous Intensity	Candela	cd
Amount of Substance	Mole	mol

Supplementary Units

Physical Quantity	S.I. Units	Symbol
Plane Angles	Radian	rad
Solid Angles	Steradian	Sr

Physical Qu

Area

Volume

Density

Velocity

Force

Linear Mo

Pressure

Work or E

Magnetic

Expon
of 10

10^{18}

10^{15}

10^{12}

10^9

10^6

10^3

10^2

10^1

Units f

(i)

between

(ii)

by ligh

x

(ii)

all the

Un

1 km

✓1 mil

1 NM

1 AU

1 LY

Pa

Some Important Derived Units

Physical Quantity	Definition of Quantity	S.I. Units
Area	Length Square	m^2
Volume	Length Cube	m^3
Density	Mass per unit Volume	$kg\ m^{-3}$
Velocity	Displacement per unit Time	ms^{-1}
Force	Mass \times Acceleration	$kg\ ms^{-2}$ or Newton
Linear Momentum	Mass \times Velocity	$kg\ ms^{-1}$
Pressure	Force per unit Area	Nm^{-2} or Pascal
Work or Energy	Force \times displacement	N-m or Joule
Magnetic Field Intensity	Force electric current \times displacement	$N\cdot amp^{-1}\ m^{-1}$ or Tesla or weber/m ²

Various Exponents of 10

Exponent of 10	Prefix	Symbol	Exponent of 10	Prefix	Symbol
10^{18}	Exa	E	10^{-1}	Deci	d
10^{15}	Peta	P	10^{-2}	Centi	c
10^{12}	Tera	T	10^{-3}	Milli	m
10^9	Giga	G	10^{-6}	Micro	μ
10^6	Mega	M	10^{-9}	Nano	n
10^3	Kilo	k	10^{-12}	Pico	p
10^2	Hecto	h	10^{-15}	Femto/Fermi	f
10^1	Deca	da	10^{-18}	Atto	a

Units for Astronomical distance :

(i) **Astronomical Unit (A.U.)** : It is a *unit of distance*. It is mean distance between Sun and Earth.

$$\checkmark 1 \text{ A.U.} = 1.495 \times 10^{11} \text{ meter.}$$

(ii) **Light Year** : It is also a *unit of distance* and it is distance travelled by light in vacuum in one year.

$$\checkmark 1 \text{ Light Year} = 9.46 \times 10^{15} \text{ meters.}$$

(iii) **Par sec (Parallax Second)** : It is the *largest unit of distance* among all the astronomical units of distance and $1 \text{ Par sec} = 3.08 \times 10^{16}$ meters.

Units of Length or distance	
1 km	= 1000 m
1 mile	= 1.60934 km
1 NM	= 1.852 km
1 AU	= 1.495×10^{11} m
1 LY	= 9.46×10^{15} m = 48612 A.U.
1 Par sec	= 3.08×10^{16} m = 3.26 ly

Units of Mass	
1 Ounce-OZ	= 28.35 gm
1 pound-lb	= 16 OZ
1 kg	= 453.52 gm
1 Quintal	= 2.205 lb
1 Metric ton	= 1000 gm
	= 100 kg
	= 1000 kg

Units of Time	
1 minute	= 60 sec
1 hour	= 60 min = 3600 sec
1 day	= 24 hours
1 week	= 7 days
M lunar month	= 28 days = 4 weeks
1 solar month	= 30 or 31 days = 28 or 29 days (Feb)
1 year	= 13 lunar month = 12 solar month = 365 days = 366 days
1 leap year	

Dimensions of Physical Quantities

In Physics Length, Mass, Time, Temperature, Electric Current etc. which are symbolically represented by L, M, T, O, A have vital and significant roles. All physical quantities are expressed in terms of power (exponents) of these symbols called *dimension*.

$$\text{Example : Area} = L \times L = L^2, \quad \text{Density} = \frac{\text{Mass}}{\text{Volume}} = \frac{M}{L^3} = ML^{-3}$$

$$\text{Force} = \text{mass} \times \text{acceleration} = M \times LT^{-2} \quad = MLT^2$$

$$\text{Magnetic Field Intensity} = \frac{\text{Force}}{\text{current} \times \text{displacement}} = \frac{MLT^{-2}}{A \times L} = MA^{-1}T^{-2}$$

2. Motion and Force

Rest and Motion : If the position of a body changes with time, then the body is said to be in *motion* but if the position of the body does not change with time then it is said to be in *rest*.

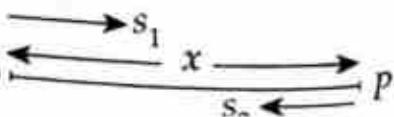
Distance : The total length of the path travelled by a body in any given time interval is called *distance*. In other words, distance is total length between the initial and final positions of the body in a particular interval of time without taking into account the direction of the motion. This is a scalar quantity and is never -ve, and its S.I. unit is meter.

Displacement : The least distance executed by a body between the initial and final points (position) of a straight line motion in a definite direction is called *displacement* and it is a vector quantity. The displacement may be +ve, -ve or zero, and its S.I. unit is meter.

Velocity : If a body going in a definite (fixed) direction during its straight line motion changes its position in unit time, then this is called the velocity of the body. Thus *velocity* of a body is the rate of change of its position in a fixed direction. Velocity is a vector quantity and its S.I. unit is ms^{-1} and its value may be +ve, -ve or zero.

Average Speed : Average speed is defined as total distance travelled by a body upon total time elapsed. Thus

$$\text{Average Speed} = \frac{\text{Total distance travelled}}{\text{Total time elapsed}}$$



Units of Area

$$1 \text{ acre} = 4840 \text{ sq. yard} \\ = 43560 \text{ sq. feet} \\ = 4046.94 \text{ sq. meter}$$

$$1 \text{ hectare} = 2.5 \text{ acre} \\ 1 \text{ sq. km} = 100 \text{ hectare} \\ 1 \text{ sq. mile} = 2.6 \text{ sq. km} \\ = 256 \text{ hectare} \\ = 640 \text{ acre}$$

Units of volume

$$1 \text{ litre} = 1000 \text{ cubic cm (cc)} \\ = 0.2642 \text{ gallon}$$

$$1 \text{ gallon} = 3.785 \text{ lit.}$$

If a body
and the body

Average

If a body
speed s_2 the

\Rightarrow Ave

Speed
points of a
unit time i
change of

Averag
displacem

Thus ,

Instan

average v
not turn o
velocity, t
instantan

Acce
accelerat
of time, t
of a bod
converse
retardec
is ms^{-2}

Mat

thei

If a

acc

The

rest the

Re

that of

that of

If a body travels x distance with speed s_1 and comes back with speed s_2 and the body takes t_1 and t_2 times respectively then

$$\text{Average Speed} = \frac{x+x}{t_1+t_2} = \frac{2x}{\frac{x}{s_1} + \frac{x}{s_2}} = \frac{2s_1s_2}{s_1+s_2}$$

If a body covers half of the distance with speed s_1 and another half with speed s_2 then the average speed for the distance OP of the body = $\frac{\frac{x}{2} + \frac{x}{2}}{t_1 + t_2}$

$$\Rightarrow \text{Average Speed} = \frac{s_1 t_1 + s_2 t_2}{t_1 + t_2}$$

$$= \frac{(s_1 + s_2)t}{2t} = \frac{s_1 + s_2}{2} \quad [t_1 = t_2 = t \text{ (say)}]$$

Speed : Total distance covered by a body between the initial and final points of a straight line motion without any consideration of direction in unit time is called speed of the body. Thus speed of a body is *the rate of change of its position*. It is a scalar quantity and its S.I. unit is ms^{-1} .

Average Velocity : The average velocity of a body is defined as total displacement of the body upon total elapsed time.

$$\text{Thus Average Velocity} = \frac{\text{Total displacement}}{\text{Total time}}$$

Instantaneous Velocity : If a body moves in such a way that its average velocity measured for a number of different time intervals does not turn out to be constant and the body is said to be moving with variable velocity, then the velocity of the body at any given instant of time is called instantaneous velocity and it is expressed as

$$= \vec{v} = \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\vec{\Delta r}}{\Delta t}$$

Acceleration : The *rate of change of velocity* of the body is called *acceleration* of the body. If the velocity changes uniformly at equal interval of time, then acceleration is said to be *uniform acceleration*. If the velocity of a body increases with time then the body is said to be *accelerated* and conversely if velocity decreases with time then the body is said to be *retarded or deaccelerated*. Acceleration is a vector quantity and its S.I. unit is ms^{-2}

$$\text{Mathematically, acceleration} = \frac{\vec{d v}}{dt} \text{ and if } \vec{v} = \frac{\vec{d x}}{dt}$$

$$\text{then acceleration} = \frac{\vec{d v}}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{\vec{d x}}{dt} \right) = \frac{d^2 \vec{x}}{dt^2}$$

If any body moves with a constant velocity then

$$\text{acceleration} = \frac{\vec{d v}}{dt} = 0 \text{ (as } \vec{v} \text{ is constant)}$$

Thus in uniform motion acceleration does not exist. If the body is in rest then obviously *velocity does not exist* and thus *no acceleration exists*.

Relative Velocity : The relative velocity of one body with respect to that of another is the rate of change of displacement of one body relative to that of another and vice-versa.

If \vec{v}_A and \vec{v}_B are the constant velocities of two bodies A and B, then \vec{v}_{BA} is the symbolical representation of the relative velocity of B with respect to A and the relative velocity of A with respect to B is expressed as \vec{v}_{AB} . Mathematically, these are expressed as; $\vec{v}_{BA} = \vec{v}_B - \vec{v}_A$ and $\vec{v}_{AB} = \vec{v}_A - \vec{v}_B$.

Equations of Motion: If a body describes a straight line motion with an initial velocity u in time t , covers a distance s with a uniform acceleration a and finally acquires velocity v then, by applying the fundamental principles of Classical Newtonian Mechanics, Galileo derived the following equations which are called Kinematical Equations of Motion.

$$\text{Equations of motion are: (i) } v = u + at \quad (ii) s = ut + \frac{1}{2} at^2$$

$$(iii) v^2 = u^2 + 2as \quad (iv) S_n = u + \frac{1}{2} a(2n-1)$$

where S_n = distance covered by the body in n^{th} second.

Graphical representation of motion

(i) Displacement-Time Graph :

If a body moves with a uniform velocity then displacement-time graph is a straight line as shown in the figure. The slope or gradient of the straight line provides speed. Also the greater the slopes of the straight lines, the larger the speed.

Obviously in the figure straight lines OP , OQ , and OR have increasing order of the speeds as $\theta_3 > \theta_2 > \theta_1$.

(ii) Velocity-Time Graph :

(a) Constant Velocity or Uniform Motion : If a body moves with a constant velocity in a uniform motion, then Velocity-Time graph is a straight line, parallel to Time-Axis as shown in the figure.

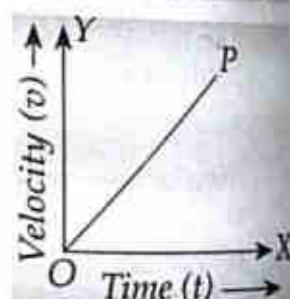
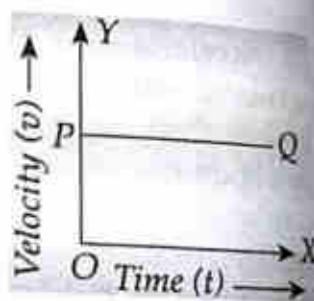
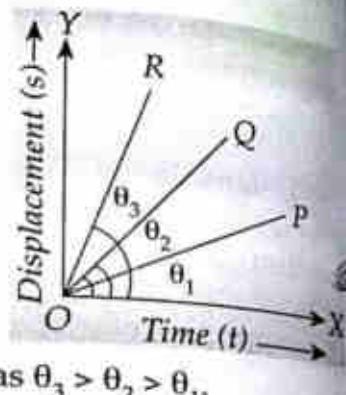
The straight line PQ represents uniform motion.

(b) Uniformly Accelerated Motion : If a body describes a uniformly accelerated motion in a straight line, then the Velocity-Time graph is a straight line as shown in the figure.

Obviously, straight line OP represents Velocity-Time graph of the uniformly accelerated motion.

Two Dimensional Motions : If the motion of a body is described in two dimensional Co-ordinate axes or in a rectangular Co-ordinate axis, then it is called *two dimensional motion*. The circular motion, projectile motion, motion of a canonical pendulum, etc. are all examples of two dimensional motion.

(i) Circular Motion : If a body describes its motion on a circular track or path, then the motion is called *circular motion*. In circular motion, since velocity of the body is tangential at every point of the track, its direction



changes even magnitude of constant) and its direction. Thus motion constant spe

Let P and of a body de O is the cent

If a bod on the circ the body is velocity ω =

If a bod the time re is called ar

Thus c period. Th

Also t

or, v

Thus,

(ii) P

initial vel describes and such

Here

occurs. A is no acc but in

constan gravity

body de

constan with co

Terms

Ti

the ma

Ti

the gr

Th

(F

and B , then \vec{v}_{BA} with respect to d as \vec{v}_{AB} .
 $\vec{v}_{AB} = \vec{v}_A - \vec{v}_B$

otion with an acceleration a
 al principles
 g equations

 at^2 $a(2n-1)$. Q

$\rightarrow P$
 $\rightarrow X$

$\rightarrow Q$
 $\rightarrow X$

$\rightarrow X$
 \rightarrow
 nal
 cal
 ck
 ce
 on

changes everywhere. This shows that as the magnitude of the velocity remains constant (speed constant) and velocity doesn't remain constant (as its direction changes) so the motion is accelerated. Thus motion of a body on a circular path with a constant speed is called *Uniform circular motion*.

Let P and Q are any two instantaneous positions of a body describing a uniform circular motion with linear velocity v . Here O is the centre of the circular track and r is its radius.

If a body describes an angular displacement in t sec and its position on the circular track changes from P to Q then the *angular velocity* of the body is defined as *angular displacement per unit time*. Thus angular velocity $\omega = \frac{\theta}{t}$ (expressed in rad/sec.)

If a body moves on a circular track and completes one revolution, then the time required for it is called *Time period*. The inverse of this time period is called *angular frequency*.

Thus $\omega = \frac{2\pi}{T} = 2\pi n$. Here, n is called angular frequency and T is time period. Thus $n = \frac{1}{T}$.

Also the linear velocity (v) = $\frac{\text{Circumference of the circular track}}{\text{Time elapsed}}$

$$\text{or, } v = \frac{2\pi r}{T} = \left(\frac{2\pi}{T}\right)r = \omega \times r \quad (\because \frac{2\pi}{T} = \omega = \text{angular velocity})$$

Thus, linear velocity (v) = angular velocity (ω) \times radius (r)

(ii) **Projectile Motion** : If a body is projected upward with a certain initial velocity u making an angle θ with horizontal direction, then the body describes a two dimensional motion whose path (trajectory) is *parabolic* and such a body is called *projectile*.

Here a unique physical phenomenon occurs. As the body starts its motion there is no acceleration in its horizontal direction, but in the vertical direction there is a constant acceleration (acceleration due to gravity). Thus, in the projectile motion the body describes its horizontal motion with constant velocity and its vertical motion with constant acceleration.

Terms and Expressions associated with projectile motion.

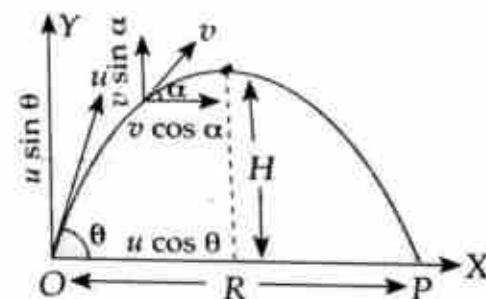
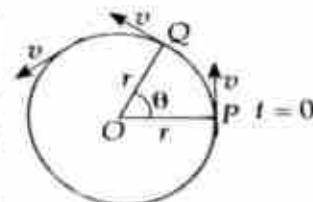
Time of Ascent (t_a) : It is the time taken by a body (projectile) to reach the maximum height (H). It is given by

$$t_a = \frac{u \sin \theta}{g}$$

Time of Descent (t_d) : It is the time taken by a body (projectile) to reach the ground at P from the maximum height (H). It is given by $t_d = \frac{u \sin \theta}{g}$

$$\therefore t_d = t_a = \frac{u \sin \theta}{g}$$

(Here air resistance is assumed to be negligible)



10

Time of flight (t_f): It is the sum total of the time of ascent and the time of descent i.e. the total time taken to travel the distance OP (Horizontal distance by the body called *Horizontal Range or Range.*)

$$\text{Thus } t_f = t_a + t_d = \frac{u \sin \theta}{g} + \frac{u \sin \theta}{g} = \frac{2u \sin \theta}{g}$$

Maximum Height (H): It is the maximum vertical distance travelled by a body (projectile) at which its velocity becomes Zero at glance. It is given by $H = \frac{u^2 \sin^2 \theta}{2g}$

Horizontal Range (R): It is the total horizontal distance (OP) travelled by a body (projectile) in the total time of flight (t_f). It is given by $R = \frac{u^2 \sin 2\theta}{g}$

Obviously range R would be maximum if $\sin 2\theta$ be maximum. But max. value of $\sin 2\theta = 1$

$$\Rightarrow \sin 2\theta = 1 = \sin 90^\circ \Rightarrow \theta = 45^\circ$$

Thus any projectile would have max. range if θ (angle of projection)

$$= 45^\circ \text{ and it would be } R_{\max} = \frac{u^2 \sin 90^\circ}{g} = \frac{u^2}{g} \cdot 1 = \frac{u^2}{g}$$

Also if the angle of projections are θ and $(90^\circ - \theta)$ then horizontal range R would be the same in both cases, whatever be the initial velocity of projection, max. height attained, time of flight, etc.

Equation of the trajectory of the projectile

The overall equation of the trajectory of any projectile, whatever be the individual parameter, is given by

$$y = (\tan \theta) x - \frac{\frac{gx^2}{2u^2} \sec^2 \theta}{2(u \cos \theta)} = (\tan \theta) x - \frac{g}{2(u \cos \theta)^2} x^2$$

Obviously, it is the equation of a parabola. That's why every projectile traces out a parabolic trajectory (path).

Newton's Laws of Motion: Firstly in 1687 Sir Isaac Newton, who was a great mathematician of his time, propounded the laws of motion in his book *Principia*. There are three laws of motion.

First Law (Law of Inertia): A body continues in its state of rest or uniform motion in a straight line in the same direction unless some external force is applied to it. This is *Newton's first law of motion*.

The tendency of bodies or objects to remain in the original initial state of rest or uniform motion is called *inertia*. Inertia is of two types (i) Inertia of rest and (ii) Inertia of motion. Also the external force which is accountable to change the state of the bodies provides us the definition of force.

Examples of inertia: (i) If a train suddenly starts to move from the position of rest then a passenger sitting in it leans in the opposite direction. This happens due to the inertia of the body of the passenger. Due to sudden start of the train the lower part of the body of the passenger which is in contact with the train comes in motion whereas the upper part, due to inertia of rest, stays at rest. Thus, there is a relative displacement of the two parts of the body of the passenger and consequently the passenger leans in the opposite direction.

(ii) To remove dirt from a coat we hit it with a stick. On being hit the coat comes into motion but the dirt, due to its inertia remains at rest and so gets detached from the coat and falls off.

(iii) Before taking a long jump an athlete runs for a while and then takes a leap. By running for a while he gains inertia of motion which helps him take a longer jump.

(iv) While alighting from a slowly moving train one must run for a short while in the direction of the moving train and then let off the train. When you set your foot on the ground, the lower part of your body comes to rest instantaneously but the upper part of the body continues to move in the direction of the train. Due to relative displacement you are liable to fall forward and hurt yourself. If you run for a short while all the parts of the body will be in the same state and hence there will be no relative displacement of the different parts of the body.

Second Law (Law of Measurement of Force) : The rate of change of linear momentum ($p = mv$) of a body is proportional to the force applied and it takes place in the direction of the force. i.e. $F \propto \frac{dp}{dt}$

$$\text{or, } F = k \frac{dp}{dt} = k \frac{d(mv)}{(dt)} = km \frac{dv}{dt} \text{ (here mass } m \text{ is constant)}$$

Where, k = proportionality constant

$$= kma \text{ (as } a = \frac{dv}{dt} \text{ = acceleration)}$$

If the proportionality constant $k = 1$ then $F = ma$.

\Rightarrow Force = mass \times acceleration.

If $F = ma = m \frac{dv}{dt} = 0$, then no acceleration would be produced.

If the acceleration of the body is zero ($a = \frac{dv}{dt} = 0$) then the body will move either with a constant velocity or be in a position of rest. This implies that in the absence of an external force the body either moves with constant velocity or comes to rest. This also concludes that in the absence of an external force the inertia of a body is conserved.

Third Law (Law of Action and Reaction) : To every action, there is an equal and opposite reaction. Action and reaction act on different bodies. Since their lines of action are different, the resultant force is not zero. This is Newton's Third law of motion.

Examples : (i) A rocket whose mass decreases continuously due to ejected mass in the form of gases during its forward motion.

(ii) During firing of a bullet the gun recoils back with a great force.

(iii) To drive water boat forward the bamboo stick is pressed into the land of water.

(iv) During pulling water from the well sometimes the rope breaks and the man falls behind the well.

Units of Force : The S.I. Unit of force is *Newton*. Forces are defined by *Newton's first law of motion* and measured by *Newton's second law of motion*.

By Newton's second law $F = ma$. Here if $m = 1 \text{ kg}$ and $a = 1 \text{ meter / second}^2$, then $F = 1 \text{ N}$. Thus 1 Newton is the force required to produce an acceleration of 1 ms^{-2} in a body of mass 1 kg.

The CGS unit of force is *Dyne* and $1 \text{ N} = 10^5 \text{ dyne}$.

Another unit of force is *kg-wt* which is also used for *Gravitation*. 1 kg-wt is the force required resulting from the acceleration of gravity on the body of 1 kg mass. Thus by Newton's second law, Force due to gravity = mass \times acceleration due to gravity. The force of gravity acting on a body is the weight of the body.

Thus weight (W) = mg .

Here the value of g (acceleration due to gravity) = 9.8 ms^{-2}

Thus, 1 kg.weight = $1 \text{ kg} \times 9.8 \text{ ms}^{-2} = 9.8 \text{ kg.ms}^{-2} = 9.8 \text{ N}$.

Linear Momentum and Impulse: The product of the mass of a moving object or body with its velocity (constant) is called Linear Momentum and it is a vector quantity.

Thus momentum (p) = mass \times velocity

$$\Rightarrow p = mv.$$

The S.I. unit of the linear momentum is kg.ms^{-1}

If any external force is operative on an object or a body for a very short span of time, then the product of this external force and the time is called *Impulse* and the force is called *Impulsive Force*.

Thus Impulse (J) = Force \times time interval

$$\Rightarrow J = F \cdot \Delta t = \frac{\Delta p}{\Delta t} \cdot \Delta t = \Delta p$$

$\Rightarrow J = \Delta p$ = change in linear momentum.

Thus *impulse* is also defined as *change in the linear momentum of the body for a short span of time*.

The S.I. Unit of the impulse is that of linear momentum and given by kg.ms^{-1}

Examples of the linear momentum and the impulse

(i) Cricket players while taking a catch move their hands in the direction of the motion of the ball to avoid maximum injuries and for minimum hurt.

(ii) In heavy and light vehicles springs and shock absorbers are installed to avoid exertion and for comfortability.

(iii) To hit nail in depth, a heavy hammer is used.

Law of conservation of linear momentum

The *linear momentum conservation* is the outcome of *Newton's second and third law of motion*. Under the mutual action and reaction of two or more bodies, free from external forces, the algebraic sum of the linear momenta of the bodies in any assigned direction remains conserved. Thus, in general, if no external force is operative on a system of particles or bodies under the mutual action and reaction of the particles, the momentum of the system in any direction remains conserved. This is the *law of conservation of linear momentum*.

Example

(i) When a shot is fired, the cannon recoils. This is an example of the law of conservation of momentum. Here the system (*Shot + Cannon*) is at rest with respect to reference frame fixed to the earth. When a shot is

fired with a velocity say v , it gains a certain velocity, say V and by the conservation law the cannon must also acquire the same velocity in the opposite direction so that the algebraic sum of the momenta becomes zero. If m and M be the masses of shot and cannon, then by conservation law of linear momentum;

$$mv + MV = 0 \quad \text{or, } V = -\frac{mv}{M}$$

-ve sign indicates that V must be necessarily opposite to v . This velocity of the cannon is called the *velocity of recoil*.

(ii) In the process of collisions, elastic or inelastic the total linear momentum before collision is equal to the total linear momentum after collision. Thus, total linear momentum of the system of colliding particles is conserved.

If m_1 and m_2 the two masses of colliding particles, u_1 and u_2 are the velocities of the respective particles before collision and v_1 and v_2 are the velocities of the particles after collision.

Then by the law of conservation of linear momentum

$$\text{Total linear momenta before collision} = m_1 u_1 + m_2 u_2$$

$$\text{Total linear momenta after collision} = m_1 v_1 + m_2 v_2$$

$$\text{Thus } m_1 u_1 + m_2 u_2 = m_1 v_1 + m_2 v_2$$

Elastic and Inelastic collision : When two particles or bodies directly strike (collide) in such a way that the total kinetic energy and the total linear momentum of the colliding particles during the collisions remain constant (conserved) then it is called elastic collision. If the relative velocity of separation and approach is equal for the two colliding particles, then the collision is said to be perfectly elastic and the particles of equal masses mutually exchange their velocities to each other after the collision.

But when two particles or bodies collide in such a way that the total linear momenta of the colliding particles or bodies remain constant or conserved but the total kinetic energy of the colliding particles system is not constant (conserved) then it is called inelastic collision.

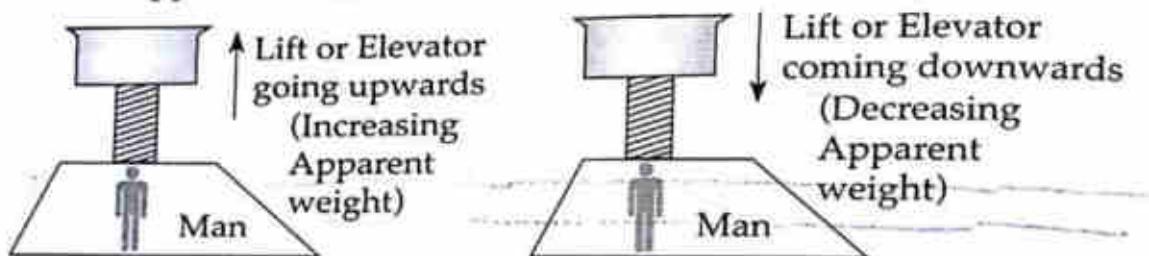
Rocket Motion (A system of variable mass) : The basic principle on which Rocket motion occurs or a Rocket is propelled is the *Newton's third law of motion* and the *law of conservation of linear momentum*.

A typical example of variable mass system is that of a rocket motion from which hot gases keep on escaping, thereby continuously decreasing its mass. A rocket may use either a liquid or a solid fuel. In the former case the fuel (like liquid H_2 or liquid paraffin) and a suitable oxidizer (like O_2 , H_2O_2 or HNO_3), stored up in separate chamber are injected into a combustion chamber where the fuel is burnt. In the latter case, the fuel itself carries its own oxidizer and hence a separate chamber is not needed. In both cases large quantity of the heat of combustion is produced, which largely raises the internal pressure and temperature of the chamber and burnt up gases (like CO, steam etc) are pumped out from an orifice at the back or the tail end of the rocket in the form of a high velocity stream called the *jet*. Consequently the rocket is propelled forward (opposite to the direction of the jet). Here the momentum lost by the jet of the fuel gases must be equal to the momentum gained by the rocket.

A multistage rocket is just a combination of a number of rockets either joined consecutively in series or one inside the other or with the rear part of one inside the nozzle of the other. In all the three types, the first stage is the largest in dimension and in weight and the last stage is the smallest and the lightest. The first stage rocket is used first and when its fuel is all burnt up and it has done its job, it gets detached and discarded, with the second stage taking over the task of producing further acceleration. This too, in turn is detached when its fuel is burnt up and the third stage rocket takes over. The velocity thus goes on increasing at each stage by the same amount as it does in a single stage rocket. The fuel consumption and thrust for the first stage are about 100 times more than for the third stage and the fuel stock carried by it about 60 times that carried by the third stage.

Any rocket (Single Stage) can attain the *maximum velocity* of 3.5 kg/sec due to limitations of conventional chemical fuels, cooling problems etc. Thus a *single stage rocket is incapable to put space satellites in the orbits or escape through the earth's gravitation field*. Thus a *multistage rocket* is designed and fabricated to *enhance and achieve a greater velocity*.

The Apparent weight of a body in a lift or elevator.



The lift or elevator is a simple machine installed in various multiplexes through which people are transported in multi storied buildings for the business and other officials purposes.

If M be the mass of a man elevated on the lift and F be the apparent weight of the man, then for the lift going upwards :

$$F - Mg = Ma \\ \Rightarrow F = Mg + Ma = M(a+g) \quad [\text{larger wt.}]$$

Here a = acceleration of the lift by which it goes up or down and
 g = acceleration due to gravity

Now for the lift coming downwards $F + Mg = Ma$
 $\Rightarrow F = M(a-g)$ (Lesser wt.)

Thus, the man elevated on the lift experiences larger weight of its own in *going up* and experiences *lesser weight* in *coming down*.

Types of Forces or Interactions : Everywhere in our nature there are four types of forces—

- (i) Gravitational Force (ii) Weak Force
- (iii) Electromagnetic Force (iv) Nuclear Force

(i) Gravitational Force : Every body in our universe *interacts* with each other which is called *Gravitation* and the occurrence of such interactions are due to the individual masses of the bodies where gravitational fields are confined and *respondent* to each other.

The *Gravitational force* is the *weakest* among all existing forces and it is negligible for all lighter and smaller bodies but becomes significant

and considerable in all celestial bodies. Since the value of *Gravitational constant(G)* measured in *Torsion balance* by Cavendish was very small only $6.67 \times 10^{-11} \text{ Nm}^2 \cdot \text{kg}^{-2}$, gravitational force for smaller bodies is negligible and can not be realized.

(ii) **Weak Force** : The concept of *weak force* came into existence firstly in *Yukawa's meson theory* when explanation of β -decay was propounded. In the atomic nucleus, electron emission (β -particle decay) takes place spontaneously during the conversion of neutron into a proton by ejecting a π meson. This π meson decays almost instantly into an electron (e^-) and an anti neutrino ($\bar{\nu}$).

Thus; n (neutron) $\rightarrow p$ (proton) + π^- (π -meson) $\rightarrow p$ (proton) + e^- (electron) β -decay + $\bar{\nu}$ (anti neutrino)

Here neutron is converted into proton by the exchange of π -meson and consequently interaction between *electron* (β -decay) and *antineutrino* is due to *weak interaction*.

(iii) **Electromagnetic Force** : Electromagnetic force operates on all charged particles and provides atomic and molecular binding forces. Thus electromagnetic interactions are charge-dependent (attractive as well as repulsive).

The electric and magnetic forces compose the electromagnetic force which acts by means of photon or quanta. If both electric and magnetic forces exist, then it is called *Lorentz's force* given by $F = qE + qvB \sin\theta$

Where, q = Charge of the particle

E = Electric field strength

v = Velocity of the charged particle

B = Magnetic field intensity

θ = Angle between velocity and magnetic field

Gravitational

(iv) **Nuclear Force (Strong Force)**: Among all the forces found in nature, nuclear force is the strongest force which basically exists within atomic nucleus between proton-proton, proton-neutron, and neutron-neutron within the range up to 10^{-15} meter. Experimental evidences of the nuclear Physics observe that *nuclear forces* are primarily *attractive, non-electrical, non-gravitational (not central forces), extremely strong but spin dependent* and the *magnitude of the force is same for proton-proton, proton-neutron and neutron-neutron*. Explanation of the nuclear forces was given in detail by *Yukawa's Menson's theory*. Some scientists also assume that the nuclear forces originate through the mutual interaction of two quarks.

Comparison among four types of Interactions :

Interaction	Relative magnitude	Carrier particle	Characteristic Time
Nuclear (strong) interaction	1	π -meson	10^{-23} sec
Electromagnetic interaction	10^{-3}	photon	10^{-20} sec
Weak interaction	10^{14}	Intermediate Bosons	10^{-10} sec
Gravitational	10^{-39}	Graviton	10^{-16} sec

Balanced Force : If on a body various forces act at a time and if the resultant of all these forces is zero then the body is said to be in an equilibrium state and at this moment all forces are called a balanced force. Thus mathematically at equilibrium

$$F = F_1 + F_2 + F_3 + F_4 \dots F_n$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^n F_i = 0$$

Unbalanced Force : If on a body two or more forces operate in such a way that the body (object) starts to move towards any force, then the force acting on the body is called unbalanced force.

Frictional Force : It is our common experience that when a block (body) is set in motion on the floor it eventually comes to rest. This means that an opposing force retards its motion and this force is called frictional force.

This force is neither gravitational nor elastic in nature. This force also occurs in pair. Actually, whenever a body slides over another body, each body exerts a frictional force to each other along the surfaces of contact. The frictional force on each body acts in a direction opposite to its motion.

As the motion of a body increases, the force of friction acting on it also increases.

Thus, force of friction (F_f) is directly proportional to its normal reaction (R).

$$\Rightarrow F_f \propto R \quad \text{or, } F_f = \mu R = \mu mg$$

where, μ is a constant and called coefficient of friction.

m = mass of the sliding body

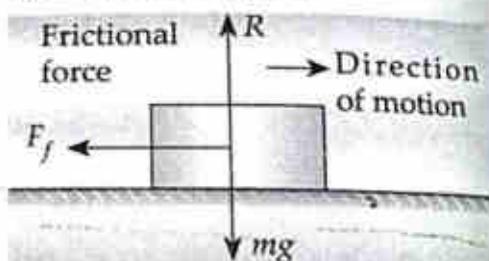
g = acceleration due to gravity

Types of frictional forces

(i) Static frictional force

(ii) Kinetic or sliding frictional force

(iii) Rolling frictional force



(i) Static frictional force : If a body kept on any surface tries to move by any force applied on it but doesn't move, then the force operative within the surfaces of both is called static force of friction which is equal to the applied force but in opposite direction.

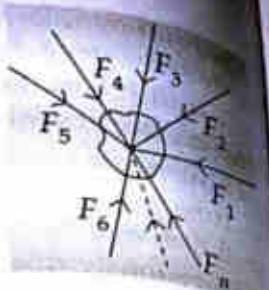
(ii) Kinetic or sliding frictional force : If a body on any surface is sliding or moving uniformly, then the force acting within the surfaces of both is called kinetic or sliding frictional force.

(iii) Rolling Frictional force : If a body rolls on another body (or surface), then force acting within the surfaces of both is called rolling frictional force.

Static force of friction > Kinetic or sliding force of friction > Rolling force of friction i.e. $\mu_s > \mu_k > \mu_r$. Here; μ_s , μ_k and μ_r are called coeff. of static, kinetic and rolling friction.

Characteristics of frictional forces

(i) The frictional forces acting within the two surfaces of the bodies do not depend on their contact area, rather they depend upon the nature of the surfaces.



(ii) The static friction is the greatest.
(iii) To reduce friction we grease called two surfaces machine and with ball-bearing from coming sliding friction.

(iv) It is solid-solid whereas it Advantages

(i) If the wheels w.

(ii) Disadvantages

(i) It and tool

(ii) machine distorts

Ce path of v^2/r ac. Seekir accele has a i.e. in const has a

to circ

ve

be th

co

(ii) The static force of friction is the largest and the rolling force of friction is the least or the smallest.

(iii) To reduce friction between two rubbing surfaces, a suitable oil or grease called *lubricant* is used which is generally introduced between the two surfaces. This ensures smooth functioning of the different parts of a machine and prevents them from getting unduly heated. The lubricant with ball-bearings intervenes between the surfaces. Thus it prevents them from coming into direct contact and the kinetic friction, converted into sliding friction and that is why force of friction diminishes too.

(iv) It is also observed that force of friction between the surfaces of the solid-solid is the largest while in liquid-liquid it is less than the former whereas it is least in solid-gas surfaces.

Advantages

(i) If the force of friction doesn't exist on the road where vehicles run, wheels will start to slip and would ultimately derail.

(ii) Due to the forces of friction man stands and moves.

Disadvantages

(i) Due to the forces of friction, energy is lost too much in machines and tools and ultimately the machines are damaged.

(ii) Due to the forces of friction the inner components (parts) of machines generate tremendous amount of heat (thermal energy) which distorts the machines.

Centripetal Force (Real Force) : When a body moves on a circular path of radius r with uniform speed v , then an acceleration of magnitude v^2/r acts towards the radius and it is called *Centripetal acceleration (Centre Seeking) or radial acceleration*. But by Newton's second law of motion, this acceleration is produced by a corresponding force (every accelerated body has a force) called *Centripetal Force* directed *inwardly* towards the radius i.e. in the direction of acceleration. Thus a body of mass m moving with a constant speed v (uniform circular motion) on a circular path of radius r has a magnitude of the centripetal force.

But $F = \text{mass} \times \text{acceleration}$

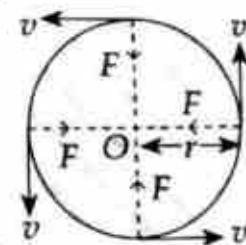
$$\therefore F = \frac{mv^2}{r} = \frac{m\omega^2 r^2}{r} = mw^2 r \quad (\because v = \omega r)$$

where, ω = angular velocity of the body.

Thus centripetal force is a *real force* acting on the body to *maintain a circular motion* or to remain on a circular track. *Without it circular motion is not possible.*

The centripetal acceleration always acts radially inwards, while velocity (linear) acts tangentially outwards.

Thus the *centripetal acceleration* and *linear velocity* of the body describing a circular motion are *perpendicular* to each other throughout the motion. Also at each and every instant the direction of centripetal acceleration (radially inward) and its velocity (tangentially outward) change regularly.



This implies that in the circular motion the body moves on a circular track with variable centripetal acceleration and variable velocity (constant speed). But as tangential velocity changes at each and every instant, another acceleration (due to change in the direction of velocity) is also produced simultaneously. Thus a body describing a uniform circular motion with a constant speed experiences two types of acceleration—one centripetal acceleration acting radially inward and another tangential acceleration acting tangentially outward.

If a_c and a_t be the centripetal and tangential accelerations, then the resultant acceleration acting on the body in uniform circular motion would be expressed as below :

Resultant acceleration (a)

$$= \sqrt{[\text{centripetal acel. } (a_c)]^2 + [\text{tangential acel. } (a_t)]^2}$$

$$\Rightarrow a = \sqrt{(a_c)^2 + (a_t)^2}$$

The nature of the centripetal force is not different from other ordinary forces like Gravitational forces, Frictional forces, Electrostatical Columbian forces etc, but it is simply a way of describing the behaviour of a force responsible for the maintenance of the circular motion.

Examples : (i) In the planetary motions of sun and planets and also in the orbital motions of planets and satellites (both natural and artificial) the Centripetal forces are counterbalanced by Gravitational forces.

$$\text{Thus; } \frac{mv^2}{R} = \frac{GMm}{R^2} = m\omega^2 R \quad (\because v = \omega R)$$

(ii) The centripetal force is necessarily equal to the force of friction of the wheels of the vehicle acting on the contact surfaces at the overturning of the road.

$$\text{Thus; } \frac{mv^2}{r} = \mu F = \mu mg$$

where μ = coeff. of friction.

(iii) An orbiting electron experiences a centripetal force about a massive nucleus which is equal to the electrostatic forces of attraction.

$$\text{Thus; } \frac{mv^2}{r} = \frac{1}{4\pi \epsilon_0} \frac{(Ze)e}{r^2} = \frac{1}{4\pi \epsilon_0} \frac{Ze^2}{r^2}$$

where, e = electronic charge, Ze = charges on the atomic nucleus

Centrifugal Force or Pseudo Force or Fictitious Force

In a uniform circular motion a centripetal force (real force) of magnitude $\frac{mv^2}{r}$ acts on the body in *inertial frame* (*Non-accelerating*). But if an observer is confined on the circumference of any circular path (track) anywhere, then he experiences a *fictitious force* acting outwardly called *centrifugal force* and due to its *fictitious existence*, it is also called a *pseudo force*. Thus centrifugal force is a fictitious force appearing in a *non-inertial frame* whose magnitude is *equal* to that of the centripetal force but *oppositely directed* to it. This force is *not* the *reactionary force* of the centripetal nature but a *virtual imaginary force* that appears by the *virtue of inertia*. That's why it is also called an *inertial force*.

Example : (i) If a man is travelling in a car in a straight line path and the car suddenly turns right, then the man realises a severe shock (push) towards the left. This happens because as the car turns, a centripetal force around the radius of curvature of the path is generated which is counterbalanced by the force of friction of the wheels of the car. But this centripetal force is not balanced by the man, so a shock is felt by the man which comes through the *virtue of inertia*. This is the required centrifugal force which acts outwardly.

(ii) The person sitting in a *merry-go-round* realises an outer push tangentially due to the appearance of a centrifugal force.

In the study of any physical phenomenon, the position of a system or body is made to be fixed and the distances of other bodies are measured called *reference frames*. It is of two types (i) Inertial (Non-accelerating) and (ii) Non-inertial (accelerating).

Inertial frames are those in which *inertia of any body remains conserved*. Thus this frame is either *in rest* or in a *uniform motion* in a straight line i.e. no force, no acceleration concept exists.

But if the force or the acceleration exists in a particular frame it is called non-inertial. Newton's laws of motion are applicable only in inertial frame of reference.

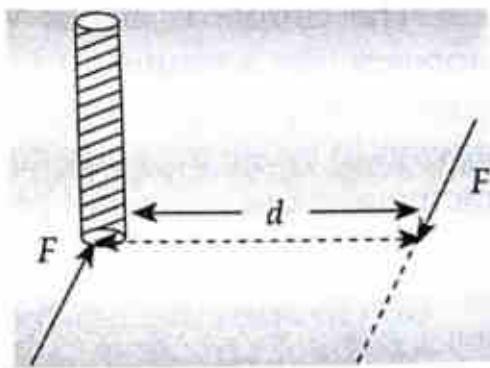
Application

Centrifuge : A device by means of which light particles and heavy particles are separated to each other.

(i) **Cream Separator :** In a cream separator, a vessel containing milk is rotated fast. Being lighter the cream collects in a cylindrical layer around the axis, whence it is drawn off and the skimmed milk is drained through an outlet fitted on the wall of the vessel. The particles, whose density is less than that of the liquid, are driven towards the axis of rotation and those whose density is greater than that of the liquid are driven away from the axis. Cream is lighter than milk, so it is separated from milk and collected at the axis.

(ii) **The Centrifugal Drier :** In laundries wet clothes are dried by packing them in a cylindrical vessel with perforated walls which rotated with a very high speed. Water particles stick to the cloths with a certain force which is called adhesive force. The water particles are not sufficient to keep them moving uniformly in a circle.

Torque or Moment of a force : The turning effect of a force about a point or a line is called the moment of force about that point or line which is called the axis of rotation. The turning effect of a force is dependent on the magnitude of the force and the perpendicular distance of its line of action from the axis of rotation.



20

The force turns or tends to turn the body either in clockwise or anti-clockwise direction. The direction of the moment of force is fixed by the direction in which the force turns or tends to turn the body. Generally the anti-clockwise direction is considered as a positive (+ve) direction of the moment of a force. For larger magnitude of the force, there must be a larger turning effect and its moment of force. Thus turning effect is too much appreciable for a larger moment of force and its perpendicular distance from the axis of rotation.

The moment of the force is defined as the product of the force and the perpendicular distance from the axis of rotation.

Thus, moment of force = Force \times its perpendicular distance from the axis of rotation.

\Rightarrow The moment of the force or torque

$$(\vec{\tau}) = \vec{r} \times \vec{F} = r F \sin\theta \\ = Fr \sin\theta$$

where;

θ = angle between the force and the position vector.

The moment of a force or Torque is a vector quantity and its S.I. unit is N.m

Examples : (i) For the equal forces as far as larger distance from the hinges of any door it will be needed to apply some more moment of force and correspondingly the tendency of more turning will be appeared. That's why *handles* are installed and fixed at a *larger distance* from the *hinges* of the *door*.

(ii) The handle of a quern is kept distant from its pivot because through a smaller force (effort) the handle can be easily turned out (rotated).

(iii) Hand pumps of water have larger handles.

Couple : Two equal and opposite forces form a couple and it is defined as the product of the force and the couple arm.

Thus; couple = force \times couple arm

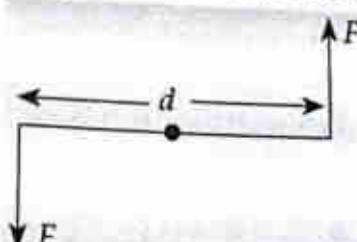
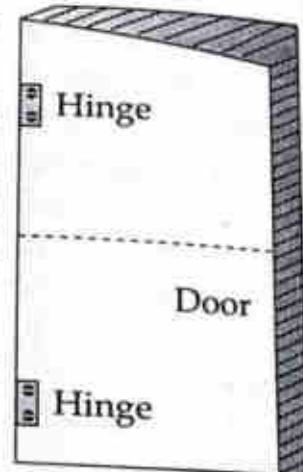
$$= F \times d$$

The couple is also a vector quantity which appears like a torque and its SI unit is N.m. The effect of applying a torque or couple on a body is always to rotate the body because a couple will always have an unbalanced moment about any point or an axis of rotation.

Examples : (i) To rotate the steering wheel of the vehicle.

(ii) To open the lock by the key. (iii) To open the water-pump etc.

Simple Machines : The Simple Machines operate on the principle of couple or torque in which on a convenient point a force is applied and from



another point weight is carried out. The Lever, Pulley, Inclined Planes and Screw Jack are the examples of Simple Machines.

Machines are equipments through which more heavy objects are carried by applying a lesser force.

The efficiency of machine is given by—

$$\text{Efficiency of a machine} = \frac{\text{Work done by the machine}}{\text{Input energy provided by the machine}} \times 100$$

The efficiency of any machine can never be 100 %.

Lever : Lever is a simple machine in which a straight or an inclined rod is made to turn or rotate at a point freely or independently. In every lever there are three points namely — Fulcrum, Effort and Load.

Examples : Tongs, Nut Cracker, Scissors etc.

Fulcrum : The fixed point about which the rod of the lever moves independently is called Fulcrum.

Effort : To use (operate) lever the force applied externally is called Effort.

Load : The weight carried by the lever is called Load.

Theory of Lever : The basic physical principle on which a lever operates is that the product of effort and effort-arm is equal to the product of the load and load-arm.

$$\text{Thus: } \text{Effort} \times \text{Effort-arm} = \text{Load} \times \text{Load-arm}$$

Mechanical Advantage of Lever : The ratio of the load carried by the lever to the effort applied is called the mechanical advantage of the lever.

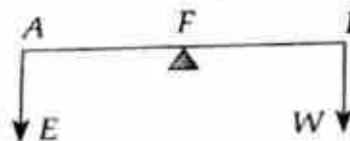
$$\text{Thus mechanical advantage} = \frac{\text{Load or weight (W)}}{\text{Effort (E)}}$$

Types of Levers : On the basis of the relative positions of fulcrum, effort and load there are three types of Lever.

(i) **First Type of Lever :** In this type of lever the Fulcrum (F) is at midway between Effort (E) and Load or Weight (W).

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Mechanical advantage} &= \frac{\text{Load or weight (W)}}{\text{Effort (E)}} \\ &= \frac{AF}{BF} = \frac{\text{Effort arm}}{\text{Load arm}} \end{aligned}$$

Example : Scissors, Brakes of a bicycle, balance etc.

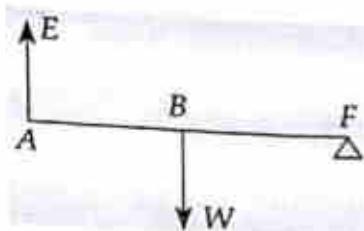


(ii) **Second Type of Lever :** In this type of lever the load (W) is at midway between the fulcrum (F) and the Effort (E).

$$\text{Mechanical advantage} = \frac{\text{Load (W)}}{\text{Effort (E)}} = \frac{AF}{BF} = \frac{\text{Effort arm}}{\text{Load arm}}$$

Such levers provide more than one mechanical advantages since $AF > BF$

Example : Nut cracker, Lemon squeezer, movable door on hinges, tobacco cutting machines etc.

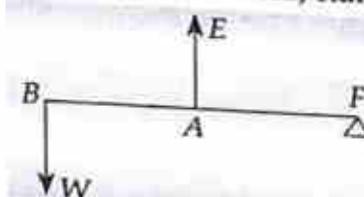


(iii) **Third Type of Lever :** In this type of lever the Effort (E) is located at midway between the Fulcrum (F) and the Load or Weight (W).

$$\text{Mechanical advantage} = \frac{\text{Load (W)}}{\text{Effort (E)}} = \frac{AF}{BF} = \frac{\text{Effort arm}}{\text{Load arm}}$$

Such type of levers provide mechanical advantages of less than 1, since $AF < BF$. Such levers are used and utilized to enhance the slow motion.

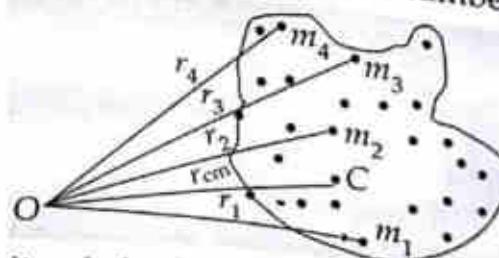
Example : Tongs, plough of the farmers, hands of a man etc.



Centre of mass : Every physical system of particles (body) is associated with a certain point whose motion is characterised by the system as a whole, and when a system moves under an external force then this point moves in a similar way as a single particle moves under the same external force. This is called *centre of mass* of the system.

Thus centre of mass of a body (system of particles) is a point where the whole (entire) mass of the body may be supposed to be concentrated so far the action of a system of parallel forces acting on the elementary masses is concerned. If a body (system of particles) is composed through a number of particles, say n of masses $m_1, m_2, m_3, \dots, m_n$ located at the distance (position vector) $r_1, r_2, r_3, \dots, r_n$ then the position of the position vector r_{cm} is defined as

$$r_{cm} = \frac{m_1 r_1 + m_2 r_2 + m_3 r_3 + \dots + m_n r_n}{m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + \dots + m_n}$$



Centre of Gravity : The centre of gravity of a body (system of particles) rigidly connected together at a point where the whole mass of the body or the system may be supposed to be concentrated so far as gravity (force of attraction due to the earth) on the constituent particles of the body or the system is concerned. Also according to the principle of the law of gravitation every particle of a body near or upon the surface of the earth is attracted towards the centre of the earth. The vectorial sum of all ..

attractive forces on the particles is the total force with which the body is attracted towards the centre of the earth. This force is called the *weight* of the body and the point of application of this force is called the *centre of the gravity* of the body or the system.

For a larger body *centre of gravity* and *centre of mass* are two different points but for a *smaller body* these two are a *coincident point*.

Centre of gravity of some rigid bodies

Bodies

Uniform bar (rod)

Position of the centre of gravity (C.G.)

Mid-point of the axis passing through the bar or rod.

Triangular solid body

The intersection point of the medians.

Rectangular or Square Solid

The intersections points of the diagonals.

Circular Lamina

Centre of the circle.

Conical Solid

At $\frac{1}{4}$ th height on the axis of the cone from its base.

Hollow Cone

At $\frac{1}{3}$ rd height on the axis of the cone from its base.

Solid Spherical body

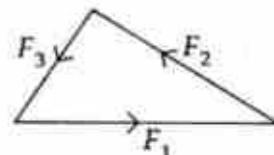
Centre of the sphere

Equilibrium of Bodies : When a body under the action of several forces neither moves in a straight line nor rotates around a point then it is said to be in *equilibrium*.

Conditions for equilibrium : (i) The vector sum of all forces acting on a body along any assigned direction for translational equilibrium must be *zero*. Thus no linear motion occurs.

(ii) The algebraic sum of moments (torques) of all the forces acting on a body about any assigned point or line for rotational equilibrium must *vanish* (being zero). Thus no angular acceleration must exist.

If three forces acting on a particle as shown in the figure are capable of being represented in magnitude and direction by the three sides of a triangle taken in order, they (force) *produce an equilibrium*.

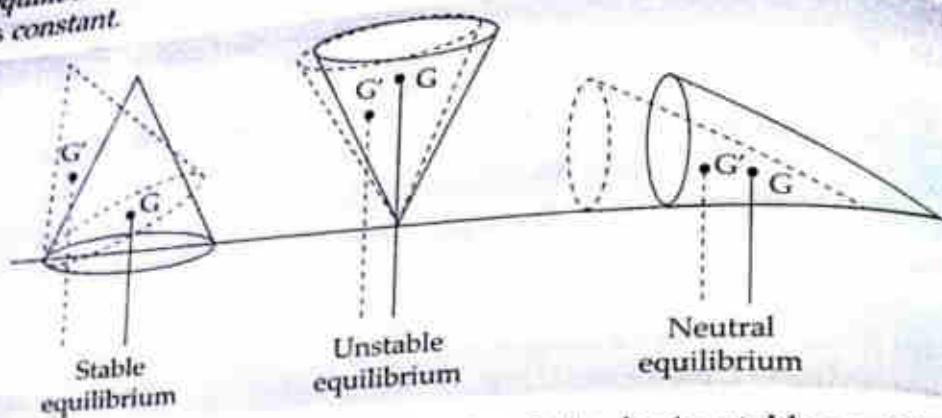


Types of Equilibrium : There are three types of equilibrium (i) Stable equilibrium (ii) Unstable equilibrium (iii) Neutral equilibrium.

(i) Stable equilibrium : When a body is in equilibrium in such a way that a slight displacement from this position produces a restoring force tending to return the body to the previous equilibrium, then body is said to be in *stable equilibrium*. In *stable equilibrium* the body possesses *minimum potential energy*.

(ii) Unstable equilibrium : When a body is in an equilibrium in such a way that any displacement from this position produces a force tending to push the body farther from the equilibrium position, then it is said to be in *unstable equilibrium*. In *this equilibrium position* the body possesses *maximum energy*.

(iii) **Neutral equilibrium**: When a body is in such a state of equilibrium that on displacing slightly from that position it (body) experiences neither a restoring force nor a deflecting force, then body is said to be in neutral equilibrium. In this equilibrium position the potential energy of the body is constant.



In the gravitational field a body is said to be in *stable equilibrium* when its centre of gravity (C.G.) lies as below as possible.

Universal conditions for the stability of equilibrium—

(a) The body must have *minimum potential energy*.

(b) The vertical line through the *centre of gravity* (c.g.) of the body must pass through the *base* of the body.

Examples : (i) The tall Tower of Pisa is extremely inclined for an observer and it *appears* that it may *fall down* at any moment, but it *never falls*. In fact it has been surviving (existing) since centuries. The reason for its *stability* is that the *vertical line* passing through the *centre of gravity* (c.g.) lies within the *base* of the tower.

(ii) A double-decker bus is found to be in *danger* of overturning if *more passengers are seated on the upper deck*. If there are more passengers on the upper deck, the c.g. of the system (bus+passenger) will be *shifted upward* and the *stability of equilibrium* will be *reduced*.

(iii) A man carrying a *bucket completely filled of water leans forward*. The man leans outward to attain an equilibrium position. When he *leans forward* the *vertical line* through the c.g. of the system (man + bucket) passes through the *base* of the system (space between his feet).

3. Work, Power and Energy

Work : When a constant force F acts on a particle and the motion of the particle takes place in a *straight line* in the *direction of the force*, the work done by the force is defined as the product of the magnitude of the force F and the distance x through which the particle moves.
Thus the work (W) = $F \cdot x$

However a force acting on a particle may not act in the direction in which the particle moves. Here the work done by the force is defined as the product of the component of the force along the line of motion of the particle.

If θ be the angle made by F with the line of motion of the particle, then by the definition of work; $W = (F \cos \theta) \cdot x = F \cdot (x \cos \theta)$
or, work done by a force = force \times displacement along the force.

Work is a scalar quantity and the SI unit of Work is N-m which is called Joule (J).

The value of the work will be maximum at $\theta = 0^\circ$
and minimum at $\theta = 90^\circ$

$$\Rightarrow W_{\max} = Fx$$

$$W_{\min} = 0$$

Power : The power of an agent is defined as the rate at which work is done. The average power delivered by an agent is the total work done by the agent divided by the total time interval.

$$\text{Thus power } (P) = \frac{\text{work done } (W)}{\text{time interval } (t)}$$

$$\text{The instantaneous power of an agent is } P = \frac{dW}{dt}$$

$$\text{The SI unit of power is watt; } 1 \text{ watt} = \frac{1 \text{ Joule}}{\text{sec}} = 1 \frac{\text{N} \cdot \text{m}}{\text{sec}}$$

The power of Machines are expressed in Horse Power (H.P.) and
1 H.P. = 746 watt.

Watt-second (Ws) - It is a unit of work.

Watt-hour (Wh) - It is also another unit of work.

$$\Rightarrow 1\text{Wh} = 3600 \text{ Joule.}$$

Kilo Watt-hour (kWh) - It is also the unit of work (energy)

$$\begin{aligned} 1 \text{ kWh} &= 1000 \text{ watt hour} \\ &= 1000 \text{ watt} \times 1 \text{ hr.} \\ &= 1000 \text{ watt} \times 3600 \text{ sec} \\ &= 3.6 \times 10^6 \text{ watt sec} \\ &= 3.6 \times 10^6 \text{ Joule} \end{aligned}$$

Thus, W, kW, MW, and H.P. etc. are the units of power;
while Ws, Wh, kWh, etc. are the units of work (energy).

If the force applied on a body is not constant, rather varies with distance, then the total work done by the force = work (W) = $\int F \cos \theta dx$

The work done in stretching a spring through a distance $x = \frac{1}{2} kx^2$,
where k = a spring constant.

Energy : Energy of a body is its capacity of doing work. In Mechanics (General Physics) a body is capable of doing work under two circumstances-

- (i) When it is in motion and (ii) When it is situated (located) in a field or when it is strained.

Thus two types of energy usually coexist— one due to the motion and the other due to the field or position.

26

Kinetic Energy : A body describing motion acquires a linear velocity and develop a capacity of doing work which is called kinetic energy of the body.

If m be the mass of the body having a velocity v , then kinetic energy of the body is given by

$$K.E. = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 = \frac{1}{2}(mv)^2 = \frac{p^2}{2m} \quad (\because p = \text{linear momentum} = mv)$$

Thus, if the mass of the body is made double then its kinetic energy will become double, while if either velocity or linear momentum of the body is double, its K.E. will become four times as that of the original.

Potential Energy : If a body develops a capacity of doing work due to its position or field, it is called the potential energy of the body.

If m be the mass of the body and h be the height or position of the body where acceleration due to gravity is operative, then potential energy of the body is given by $P.E. = mgh$, where; g = acceleration due to gravity.

When a bullet strikes (hits) a target it penetrates through the target and works against the resisting force offered by the target. This is the K.E. of the body and is measured by the work it can do in being brought to rest. When the body is kept in a field, it works due to its position in the field. This is obviously P.E. Thus the unit of energy is obviously the same as that of work.

Conservative and Non-Conservative forces : A force is said to be conservative, if the work done by it on any particle that moves between two points depends only upon these two points and not on the path followed. A force is non-conservative if the work done by the force on a particle that moves between two points depends on the path taken between those points. Thus a force is said to be conservative if the work done by the force on a particle in a round trip is zero. A force is said to be non-conservative if work done by the force on a particle in a round trip is not zero.

Examples : The Gravitational force, Electrostatical force, Adhesive and Cohesive forces etc. are conservative forces. Viscous force, frictional force, damping force etc. are non-conservative forces.

Law of Conservation of Energy : Energy may be transformed from one form to another but it can't be created or destroyed and the total energy of any body or system is constant. Also whenever any energy in any form disappears, then the same amount of energy appears in another form. This is called the law of conservation of energy.

Transformation of Energy

Equipments / Instruments

Solar Cell

Dynamo

Electric Motor

Microphone

Transformation of Energy

Solar energy into Electrical energy

Mechanical energy into Electrical energy

Electrical energy into Mechanical energy

Sound energy into Electrical energy

Equipment
Loudspe
Musical
Bulb / Tu
Heater
Candle

Coal
Electric
Heat E

G
of int
(attra
New
I
dire
to th

Equipments / Instruments	Transformation of Energy
Loudspeaker	Electrical energy into Sound energy
Musical Instruments	Mechanical energy into Sound energy
Bulb / Tube	Electrical energy into Light energy
Heater	Electrical energy into Thermal energy
Candle	Chemical energy into Light energy and Thermal energy
Coal	Chemical energy into Thermal energy
Electric Cell	Chemical energy into Electrical energy
Heat Engine	Thermal energy (Heat energy) into Mechanical energy

4. Gravitation

Gravitation is the weakest interaction or force among all the four types of interactions existing in our Universe. Each and every body interacts (attracts) each other by virtue of its mass. This is called *Gravitation*.

Newton's Law of Gravitation

In our universe the force of interaction acting among any two bodies is directly proportional to the masses of the bodies and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between the bodies.

If m_1, m_2 be the masses of two bodies at r distance then according to the Newton's law of gravitation

$$F \propto m_1, m_2, \quad F \propto \frac{1}{r^2}$$

$$\Rightarrow F = G \frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2}$$

where G is called Universal Gravitational Constant

$$= 6.67 \times 10^{-11} \text{ Nm}^2\text{kg}^{-2}$$

Gravity : As in Newton's law of gravitation the forces of interaction exist among any two bodies, but if in these two bodies one body is the Earth, then this gravitation is called gravity and by this force of gravity the Earth attracts everybody towards its centre. If a body is projected upwards freely, then due to the force of gravity it falls back.

Acceleration due to gravity (g) : If a body is dropped freely and it executes a free falling motion, then as the body comes near the Earth's surface then its velocity increases and the acceleration produced is called acceleration due to gravity. If m be the mass of any body describing a free falling motion then due to the presence of force of gravity the weight of the body $= mg$.

where $g = 9.8 \text{ ms}^{-2}$ or 32 ft s^{-2} = acceleration due to gravity (Near the earth's surface)

In SI unit ' g ' is expressed in ms^{-2} or N. kg^{-1} .

Relation between Universal Gravitational Constant (G) and the acceleration due to gravity (g).

If the earth is supposed to be a homogeneous solid sphere of mass M_e and another body of inertial mass m be (located) on the surface of the earth.

Then the force of interaction on the body of mass $m = \frac{G M_e m}{R_e^2}$;

where R_e = radius of the earth

Now, by Newton's second law of motion.

Force = inertial mass \times acceleration = mg

$$\text{Thus } \frac{G M_e m}{R_e^2} = mg$$

$$\text{or, } g = \frac{G M_e}{R_e^2}$$

(Here, we assume that the inertial mass is equal to the gravitational mass.)

Obviously, the value of the acceleration due to gravity ($g = 9.8 \text{ m/s}^2$) doesn't depend upon the mass of the body. Thus two bodies of different masses (if air resistance is to be negligible) fall freely and they (both) have the same value of g near the earth's surface. This shows that if two bodies of different masses, shapes and sizes are dropped in a vacuum from the same height, then both will reach the ground (surface) simultaneously. In the presence of air, the viscous drag, buoyancy etc. the motion (free falling) of the bodies are affected and thus the heavy body comes down earlier than lighter body.

Variation in acceleration due to gravity (g) : At the latitude of 45° and at the sea-level the standard value of g is 9.8 m/s^2 or 32 ft/sec^2

But the value of g is not constant and varies from place to place.

(a) Due to the spheroidal (Oblate Spheroid) shape of the earth

As derived above $g = \frac{G M_e}{R_e^2}$ and since the equatorial diameter is larger than the polar diameter, the value of g in the equatorial region is less than that in the polar region.

Thus; $g = \text{max. (At poles)}$

$\checkmark g = \text{min. (At equator)}$

(b) Due to the axial rotation of the earth : If a body of mass m is kept on the earth's surface at any place whose latitude is λ then due to earth's rotation the weight of body is observed to have changed. This changed weight is the apparent's weight of the body. Obviously an apparent weight appeared due to variation in g .

In fact the body describes (traces) a circle of radius $r = R_e \cos \lambda$ due to earth's rotation.

The expression of the apparent weight is derived as—

$$\text{Apparent wt } (mg') = mg - m\omega^2 r \cos^2 \lambda$$

Thus, apparent acceleration due to gravity

$$= g' = g - \omega^2 r \cos^2 \lambda$$

But at the pole $\lambda = 90^\circ$

$$\Rightarrow g' = g \text{ (max. at the poles)}$$

At the equator $\lambda = 0^\circ$

$$\Rightarrow g' = g - \omega^2 r \text{ (At the equator)}$$

Obviously, if the earth stops to rotate then

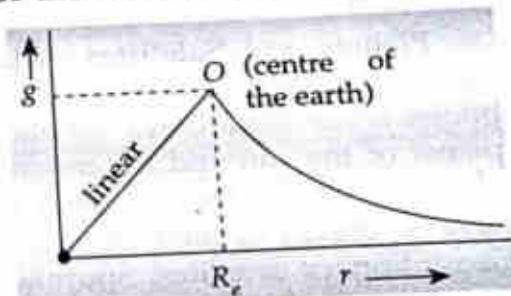
$$\omega = 0 \text{ and here } g' = g$$

If the earth's rotation increased 17 times of the present value, then the weight (apparent wt.) at the equator will be zero.

Obviously, the value of g increases on decreasing the value of angular velocity of the earth and vice-versa.

(c) With distance from the Centre of the Earth : Here the graphical representation of the variation of g with distance has been displayed—

The value of $g = 0$ at the centre of the earth. It increases linearly with distance up to the surface of the earth and then decreases rapidly and again becomes zero at infinity. The acceleration due to gravity g is maximum on the surface of the earth.



(d) Variation in going up from the earth's surface and coming down from the earth's surface.

(i) The value of g decreases in going up. If any body goes h height from the earth's surface, then the value of g decreases and say g' which is given by $g' = g \left(1 - \frac{2h}{R_e}\right)$

(ii) The value of g also decreases in coming down. If any body comes down to h height from the earth's surface, the value of g decreases and we say it g' which is given by $g' = g \left(1 - \frac{h}{R_e}\right)$

Remark : The value of g from going up or coming down inside the earth decreases but decreases more in going up than in coming down.

Applications of the variation of g

(i) If a lift or an elevator goes up with any acceleration a , then the man sitting in it experiences a larger weight than that of his original.

Thus, apparent weight = $(mg + ma)$ (increased wt.)

where; m = mass of the man.

General Science

30

(ii) Similarly, if a lift or an elevator comes down with any acceleration a , then the man sitting in it experiences a lesser weight than that of his original.

Thus apparent weight = $(mg - ma)$ (decreased wt.)

(iii) If a lift or an elevator moves with a constant velocity (no acceleration) up or down then there is no change in the weight of the man.

(iv) If during coming downward the rope of the lift or elevator gets broken, then a free falling motion occurs and the sitting man experiences weightlessness.

Since during free falling $a = g$.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Thus apparent wt.} &= ma = mg \\ &= mg - mg = 0\end{aligned}$$

(v) If the value of the acceleration a of the lift or elevator during coming downward became more than g , then the sitting man on the floor of the lift would escape on the roof of the lift.

As if $a > g$ then apparent wt. = $mg - ma < 0 = -ve$

Thus apparent wt. (-ve) physically activates the man upwardly and man comes on the roof of the lift (elevator).

Planets and Satellites : Planets are the celestial bodies revolving around the elliptical orbits of the sun in our solar system. But the heavenly bodies revolving around the planets are called satellites. The Earth is the planet of the sun and the moon is a satellite (natural) of the Earth. The planets and satellites draw their light and energy from the sun because they have no energy of their own. There are so many artificial satellites like—Geostationary satellites, Sputnik-I, Aryabhata, Rohini and Apple which have been launched in various orbits of the earth. Various communication satellites are orbiting around the Earth.

Sputnik-I was the first artificial satellite launched in 1957 by Russian scientists.

Orbital Velocity : If a body (say, a satellite) revolves around another body (say, the Earth) then the velocity of the revolution of the first body is called orbital velocity.

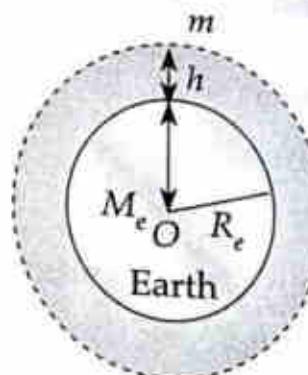
Let m be the mass of a satellite orbiting around the earth of the mass M_e with velocity v_0 (orbital velocity) and let R_e be the radius of the earth.

Here, gravitational pull on the satellite = Centripetal force necessary to keep the body on the circular track (orbit.)

$$\text{Thus } \frac{GM_e m}{(R_e + h)^2} = \frac{mv_0^2}{(R_e + h)}$$

where, h = height of the satellite from the Earth's surface,
and g = acceleration due to gravity on the Earth's surface.

$$\Rightarrow v_0 = \text{orbital velocity} = \sqrt{\frac{GM_e}{R_e + h}}$$



$$\text{Thus: } v_0 = \sqrt{\frac{g R_e^2}{R_e + h}} = R_e \sqrt{\frac{g}{R_e + h}} \quad \left(\because g = \frac{GM_e}{R_e^2} \right)$$

Now, if $h = 0$, Then v_0 will become the orbital velocity of the earth.

$$\text{Thus } (v_0)_{\text{earth}} = R_e \sqrt{\frac{g}{R_e + 0}} = \sqrt{g R_e}$$

Obviously from the expression of the orbital velocity of the satellite, the value of v_0 doesn't depend upon the mass (m) of the satellite rather it depends on the height (h) of the satellite, and the larger the value of h the lesser would be the value of v_0 . But satellites having various masses with the same orbital radius have the same orbital velocity.

The value of orbital velocity of the earth and a geostationary satellite is 7.99 km/sec. (approx. 8 km/sec.)

Period of revolution of a satellite : The time required in which the satellite completes one rotation is called the period of revolution (T).

Thus the period of revolution (T) = $\frac{\text{Perimeter of the orbit}}{\text{Orbital velocity}}$

$$= \frac{2\pi(R_e + h)}{v_0} = \frac{2\pi(R_e + h)\sqrt{R_e + h}}{R_e \sqrt{g}} = \frac{2\pi(R_e + h)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{R_e \sqrt{g}}$$

$$\Rightarrow T = \frac{2\pi(R_e + h)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{R_e \sqrt{g}} \quad \left(\because v_0 = R_e \sqrt{\frac{g}{R_e + h}} \right)$$

Obviously, the period of revolution (T) of the satellite is independent of the mass of the satellite. Rather it depends on the height of the satellite from the surface, and the more the height (h) the larger the period of revolution (T).

The period of the revolution of the earth or a geostationary satellite is 84 minutes.

Geostationary Satellite : A geostationary satellite is a communication satellite which revolves from west to east and whose period of revolution is 24 hrs equal to that of axial rotation of the earth (earth's spin). Such satellites are stationary and are located at 36,000 km height from the earth's surface. Geostationary satellites (Communication Satellites) transmit signals across larger distances by receiving these signals from one point on earth's surface and reflecting them down to the another point. In order to provide a stationary target for the transmitted signals, these satellites must remain stationary at a point above the earth.

- Utilities :**
 - (i) The electromagnetic radio-waves are reflected and transmitted and various programmes on the television are displayed.
 - (ii) It is utilised in radio transmission and telecommunication.
 - (iii) The Meteorological Department uses it in weather broadcasting and in earlier predictions of the floods and droughts.

Escape Velocity: The escape velocity is the minimum required velocity of a body through which it is projected. It goes beyond the gravitational pull and never comes back.

If m be the mass of a body projected from the earth's surface of radius R_e and mass M_e , the kinetic energy of the body must be equal to the gravitational potential energy.

$$\text{Thus: } \frac{1}{2}mv_e^2 = \frac{GM_e m}{R_e}$$

$$\text{or, } v_e = \sqrt{\frac{2GM_e}{R_e}} \quad \text{where } v_e = \text{escape velocity}$$

$$\text{But } g = \frac{GM_e}{R_e^2}$$

$$\Rightarrow v_e = \text{escape velocity} = \sqrt{2g R_e} = 11.2 \text{ km/sec. } \checkmark$$

This implies that if a body is thrown from the earth's surface with the velocity of 11.2 km/sec, then the body will never come back to the earth.

Here we observe that escape velocity of a body on the earth's surface is

$$v_e = \sqrt{2g R_e}$$

and the orbital velocity of the body around the earth $v_0 = \sqrt{g R_e}$

$$\Rightarrow v_e = \sqrt{2} v_0$$

Thus, if the velocity of an orbiting satellite close to the earth is increased $\sqrt{2}$ times or 41%, then the satellite will leave the orbit and will escape. In other words, if the kinetic energy of an orbiting satellite is doubled immediately, then the satellite will escape. The value of escape velocity is maximum on the sun and it is 614 km/sec. That's why even lighter gases like H_2 , He etc. do not escape. The moon has the least value of escape velocity i.e. 2.4 km/sec. So, no gases exist on the moon. That's why the moon has no atmosphere and from the surface of the moon the sky appears black. The value of escape velocity of the gaseous molecules must be more than the root mean square (rms) velocity for the existence of the atmosphere.

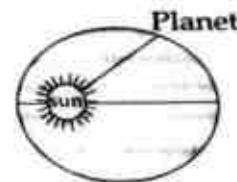
Weightlessness inside the Satellites : In the artificial (man-made) satellite the whole of the gravitational pull provides the necessary centripetal force and no part of the gravitational pull remains unbalanced. Thus a cosmonaut feels weightlessness inside the artificial satellite. That's why a simple pendulum experiment cannot be performed and everything inside the artificial satellite is weightless. Also for the same reason food stuffs of astronaut are supplied in the form of paste. If any cosmonaut tries to drink water from a glass, then he cannot do it because as the glass is inclined water is spread out in the form of droplets.

But on the moon a cosmonaut never feels weightlessness because due to tremendous mass of the moon a gravitational pull is applied ($\frac{1}{6}$ th of the earth) and so he or she doesn't feel weightlessness.

The value of acceleration due to the gravity on the moon's surface is $\frac{1}{6}$ th of the value of acceleration due to gravity of the earth's surface.

Kepler's Laws of Planetary Motion : Kepler gave three laws regarding motion of the planets around the sun.

- First law (law of elliptical orbits) :** Each planet moves in an elliptical orbit around the sun, the sun being at one of the foci of the ellipse.
- Second law (laws of areas) :** The radius vector of any planet relative to the sun sweeps out equal areas in equal times, that is the real velocity of the radius vector of the planet is constant.
- Third law (harmonic laws) :** The square of the period of revolution of any planet around the sun is proportional to the cube of the semi-major axis of the elliptical orbit. i.e. $T^2 \propto a^3$.
where; a = semi-major axis



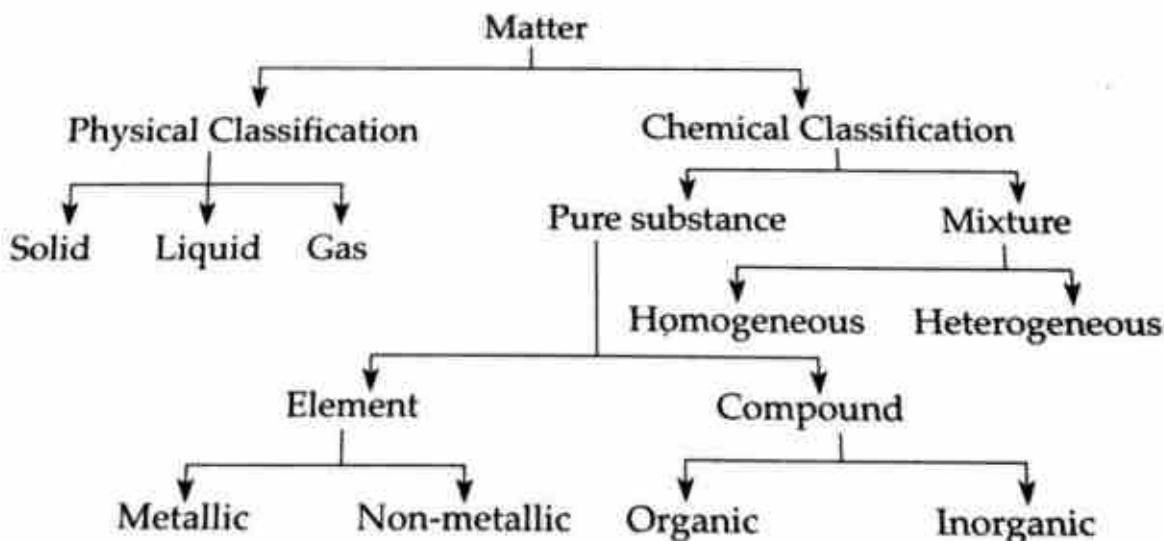
Obviously, those planets which are far away from the sun have a large period of revolution. The planet Mercury which is nearest to the sun has the period of revolution of 88 days while Neptune, which is far away from the sun, has the period of revolution of 165 years.

5. Properties of Matter

Matter : Matter is the substance that occupies space and has mass and it is perceptible to the senses. Matter is one of the two basic components of the physical science in which the other component is energy. The distinguishing properties of matter are gravitation and inertia. Any entity exhibiting these properties at rest is matter. All material bodies have mass, which is a measure of inertia and every material body near the earth's gravitational field interacts by the virtue of its mass.

Thus two types of masses—inelastic mass and gravitational mass remain in existence by their proportion of equality.

The broad classification of the matter is given as below—



The physical classification separates matter into three categories—Solid, liquid and gas-known as three states (phases) of matter. But today plasma, which appears in gaseous or ionized state is actually comes into existence during a thermonuclear process and which is composed of charged particles, is assumed to be the fourth state of matter.

Important characteristics of the Matter

Solids	- Elasticity
Liquids	- Pressure, Floatation, Surface Tension, Capillarity, Viscosity
Gases	- Atmospheric Pressure

(A) ELASTICITY

If a rigid body is in equilibrium under the inter-molecular forces of attraction, whose magnitude depends upon the spacing between the molecules, and an external force is applied, then a new internal force is developed which causes a change in the relative spacing between the molecules. Hence the body changes its shape or size or both and it is said to be *deformed*. When the external force is removed the new internal force brings the body to its normal or original state. The property of the body, by virtue of which it recovers its original shape and size when the external force (deforming force) is removed, is called the *elasticity* of the body.

A perfectly *elastic body* is one that recovers its original size and shape completely when the external force is removed. Thus a *perfectly plastic* body is one that fully maintains its altered size and shape when the external force is removed. Actual bodies behave between these two limits. No body recovers completely its original size and shape after undergoing very large deformations.

A body is said to be rigid if the relative position of its constituent particles doesn't change in equilibrium but on applying an external force a slight relative displacement takes place. In practice no body is perfectly rigid.

Elastic Limit : The maximum limit of the external force (deforming force) by applying on a rigid body, elastic characteristics are maintained, is called *elastic limit*. Different elastic limits are to be found for different bodies.

Strain : When a body suffers a change in its size or shape under the action of external forces, it is said to be *deformed* and the corresponding fractional change is called *strain*. The strain is a ratio and it has no unit, no dimension.

There are three types of strain— longitudinal (linear) strain, volume strain and shearing (shape) strain.

Stress : When external deforming forces act on a body internal forces opposing the former are developed at each section of the body. The magnitude of the internal forces per unit area of the section is called *stress*. In the equilibrium state of a deformed body, the internal forces are equal and opposite to the external forces. Thus, stress is measured by the external forces per unit area of their application. The dimension of the stress is $ML^{-1}T^{-2}$ and its units are N/m^2 (S I) and $dyne/cm^2$ (CGS).

Shear : When external forces are operative tangentially on a body, then a change in shape in the body occurs and it is said to be *sheared*. A shear is numerically equal to the ratio of the displacement of any layer to its distance from the fixed surface.

Hooke'

stress is proportional to strain, provided the strain is small.

Thus, ~~Stress~~ \propto strain, $\Rightarrow \frac{\text{stress}}{\text{strain}} = \text{a constant}$. (Young's modulus)

This is called Hooke's law. The constant of proportionality is called modulus of elasticity of the body and depends upon the material of the body and it is different for different types of strain in the same material. Usually there are three types of elasticity— Young's modulus, Bulk modulus and Rigidity modulus.

(i) Young's Modulus : When equal and opposite forces act on a body along only one direction then the change in length per unit length along that direction is called longitudinal or linear strain and the force acting per unit area of cross-section is called longitudinal stress.

Here the ratio of longitudinal stress and longitudinal strain is called Young's modulus of the material of the body.

If L be the length and A be the cross-sectional area and if its length be increased by ΔL when equal and opposite forces F are applied along its length, then

$$\text{Longitudinal Stress} = \frac{F}{A}$$

$$\text{Longitudinal Strain} = \frac{\Delta L}{L}$$

$$\text{Thus Young's modulus for the material of the body } Y = \frac{F}{\frac{A}{\Delta L}}$$

The unit of Young's modulus is same as that of stress N/m^2 (SI) or dyne/cm^2 (CGS).

(ii) Bulk modulus : When a uniform pressure is applied all over the surface of a body then the volume of the body changes. The change in volume per unit volume of the body is called *volume strain* and the applied pressure is called *normal stress*. Thus the ratio of normal stress to volume strain is called *bulk modulus* of the material of the body.

Let V be the volume of a body and let it be diminished by an amount ΔV when the pressure on its surface increases by Δp , then

$$\text{Normal Stress} = \Delta p \text{ and Volume strain} = \frac{\Delta V}{V}$$

Thus Bulk-modulus for the material of the body,

$$K = \frac{-\Delta p}{\frac{\Delta V}{V}} = -\frac{V\Delta p}{\Delta V}$$

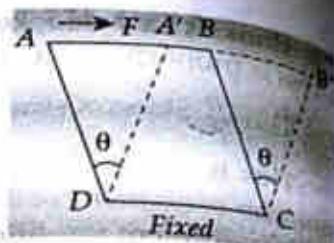
The converse of the bulk modulus is called *compressibility*. The negative sign is assigned because volume decreases when the pressure increases.

(iii) Rigidity modulus : When a body is sheared, the ratio of tangential stress to shearing strain is called *rigidity modulus* of the material of the body.

Let ABCD be a section of a cube of face area A. Let its lower face be fixed and the upper face be acted upon by a tangential force F. Let θ be the angle through which its vertical sides have been turned.

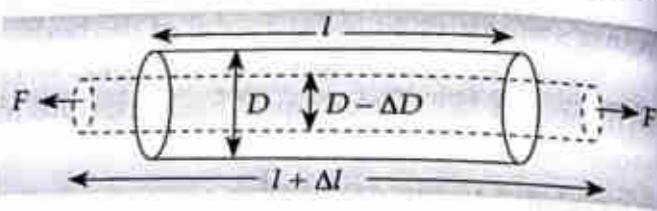
$$\text{then tangential stress} = \frac{F}{A}$$

$$\text{and shearing strain} = \theta$$



$$\text{Thus rigidity modulus of the material of the cube is } (\rho) = \frac{F}{A\theta}$$

Poisson's ratio : When two equal and opposite forces are applied to a body along a certain specific direction, the body extends along that direction. At the same time, it also contracts along the perpendicular direction. The fractional change in the direction along which the forces have been applied is called *longitudinal strain*, while the fractional change in a transverse (perpendicular) direction is called *lateral strain*.



The ratio of lateral strain to that of longitudinal strain is called *poisson's ratio*. It is a constant for the material of a body.

If a wire of original length l and diameter D is subjected to equal and opposite force F along its length, then the length of it increases to $l + \Delta l$ and the diameter decreases to $D - \Delta D$,

$$\text{Now, longitudinal strain} = \frac{\Delta l}{l} \text{ and lateral strain} = \frac{\Delta D}{D}$$

$$\text{The poisson's ratio } (\sigma) \text{ of the material of the wire is } = \frac{\Delta D}{\frac{\Delta l}{l}}$$

The theoretical value of poisson's ratio (σ) lies between -1 to $\frac{1}{2}$. However its practical value is never negative and it lies between 0 and $\frac{1}{2}$.

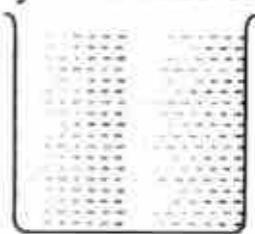
(B) PRESSURE

Pressure is defined as the force applied per unit surface area.

$$\text{Thus, Pressure} = \frac{\text{Force applied}}{\text{Area of the surface}}$$

Obviously, the pressure will be more for a larger force and smaller area of the surface and vice-versa. The SI unit of pressure is N/m^2 which is called pascal (pa). It is a scalar quantity.

Pressure applied on liquids : The pressure on the liquid surface is experienced due to its weight exerted everywhere. Usually molecules of a liquid are in a random motion with different speeds in different directions. If a liquid is confined in a container, then the molecules of the liquid collide with each other and also with the walls of the container (vessel). Due to it on the walls of the container and on its bottom (per unit base surface) exerted pressure is applied.



In order to evaluate the pressure exerted on any point of the liquid at height h of the liquid density ρ , the required pressure will be

$$p = \frac{\text{Force due to the wt. of the liquid}}{\text{Area of the surface upto which liquid is confined}}$$

$$= \frac{mg}{A} = \frac{V\rho g}{A} = \frac{Ah\rho g}{A} = \rho gh \quad (\because V = Ah)$$

Where, V = Volume = Area \times Height (Length)

g = acceleration due to gravity.

Thus, $p = \rho gh$

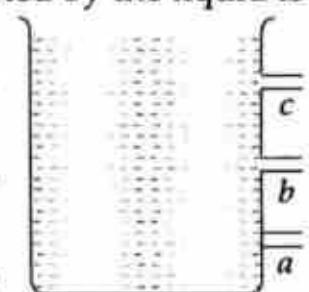
Obviously, the liquid pressure is directly proportional to the density of liquid. Also the pressure exerted on the liquid doesn't depend upon the shape or size of the container.

If on the free surface of the liquid atmospheric pressure be operative then the total pressure exerted will be

$$= \text{Atmospheric Pressure } (P) + \rho gh$$

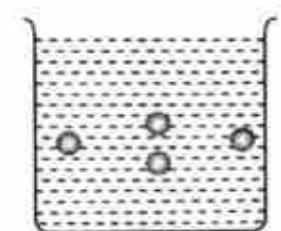
Some observations and conclusions regarding liquid pressure

(i) At any point inside the liquid the pressure exerted by the liquid is directly proportional to its depth from the free surface. Thus, as shown in the diagram the pressure will be in a decreasing order for the points a , b and c .



Thus, $p_a > p_b > p_c$ Where, p_a , p_b and p_c are the respective pressures at the points a , b and c .

(ii) At every point and in every direction the pressure exerted inside the liquid at rest is same. If a number of holes are made after filling the container with liquid, then the liquid will be released from every hole with equal pressure.

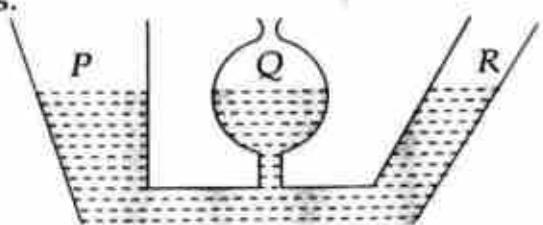


(iii) For the same horizontal surface any liquid at rest exerts the same pressure at all points.

Thus; as shown in the diagram

$$p_P = p_Q = p_R$$

Where p_P , p_Q and p_R are the respective pressures at P , Q and R .



Pascal's law : This is a natural consequence of the fundamental laws of fluid mechanics and it is called Pascal's law which states that the pressure exerted anywhere in a mass of a confined liquid is transmitted undiminished in all directions throughout the mass so as to act undiminished at right angles to the surface of the vessel exposed to the liquid. According to this law a small force applied somewhere on a confined mass of liquid will appear as a very large force on the wall of the container. This law is directly followed in the working of Hydraulic Press, Hydraulic Brake, Hydraulic Lift etc.

Effect of the pressure on the melting point of the solid and the boiling point of the liquid.

On heating the solid substance if the volume of the substance increases, then by the application of pressure its melting point increases and vice-versa. Examples - wax, sulphur etc. But while on heating the solid substance if the volume of the substance decreases, then by the application of pressure its melting point decreases and vice-versa. Examples — ice, bismuth etc.

The boiling point of a liquid increases on increasing the pressure on the free surface of the liquid.

Example : At simple atmospheric pressure the boiling point of the water is 100°C but if the pressure is doubled then its boiling point becomes 125°C.

(C) FLOATATION

Upthrust or Buoyant force of a liquid : When a body is wholly or partially immersed in a liquid at rest, the liquid exerts pressure on every part of the body's surface which are in contact with the fluid. The pressure is larger on the parts immersed more deeply. So the thrusts exist on all sides in upward direction called buoyancy or buoyant force. The upthrust or the buoyant force acts on the centre of gravity (c.g.) of the displaced liquid by the body which is called *centre of buoyancy*.

Archimedes's Principle : Archimedes's principle states that when a body is partially or fully immersed into a fluid at rest, the fluid exerts an upward force of buoyancy which is equal to the weight of the displaced fluid. Here the apparent weight of the body is equal to the displaced fluid.

Fluids are those substances which can flow, the liquids and the gases both are fluids. Archimedes's principle is valid for both liquids and gases.

Applications :

(a) The relative density of any solid

$$= \frac{\text{wt. of the solid in air}}{\text{Apparent wt. of the solid in water}}$$

(b) The relative density of any liquid

$$= \frac{\text{App. wt. of the solid in the liquid}}{\text{App. wt. of the solid in the water}}$$

The relative density is a pure number and it has no unit.

$$\text{Density} = \frac{\text{Mass}}{\text{Volume}}$$

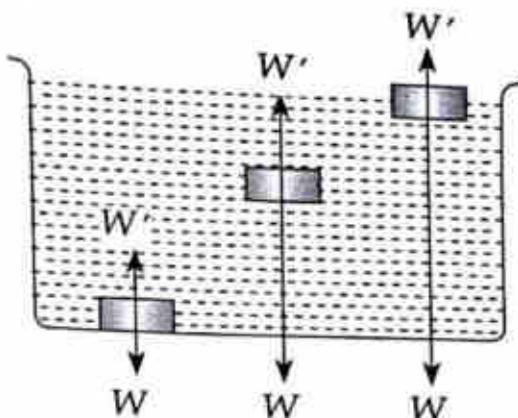
$$\text{Relative density} = \frac{\text{density of the object}}{\text{density of the water at } 4^\circ\text{C}}$$

Note : The density of water is max. at 4°C.

Floatation : If a body tends to sink in a liquid then two forces immediately become operative — the weight (W) of the body downwardly and the upthrust or force of buoyancy (W') upwardly.

Here three cases arise.

- If $W > W'$ i.e. the wt. of the body is greater than upthrust, then the body will sink.
- If $W = W'$ i.e. the wt. of the body is equal to the upthrust, then the body floats inside the liquid.
- If $W < W'$ i.e. the wt. of the body is less than upthrust, then the body floats partially in the liquid and the upper part of the body remains outside from the liquid.



(i) $W > W'$ (ii) $W = W'$ (iii) $W < W'$

Also for a body floating partially the ratio of the following must hold

$$\frac{\text{The density of the body}}{\text{The density of the liquid}}$$

$$= \frac{\text{Total volume of the body inside liquid}}{\text{Total volume of the body}}$$

Application: If a piece of ice floats on a water surface then its $1/10^{\text{th}}$ part of the total volume remains above the surface and $9/10^{\text{th}}$ part remains submerged. Thus the density of the ice is 0.9 gm/cm^3 . The density of the pure water 1 g/cm^3 or (1000 kg/m^3) . On the principle of these applications the quantity of water in impure milk is measured by the *Lactometer*.

Hydrometer : The hydrometer is a device through which the relative density of fluids (liquid or gas) is measured.

The law of floatation : When an object floats inside a liquid, then the apparent wt. of the object is equal to the liquid displaced by the object. The centre of gravity (c.g.) of the object and the centre of gravity (c.g.) of the displaced water lie in the same vertical line.

Thus, the wt. of the displaced liquid = Upthrust or force of buoyancy = Apparent wt. of the object

Examples of Archimedes's principle and law of floatation

(i) The ships of iron and the boats of wood float in water but the nails of iron sink. The special design and shape of the ship and the boat through which wt. of displaced water are more than the wt. of the ship and boat, due to which more force of buoyancy becomes operative and the ships or boats float. But the wt. of the water displaced by the nails is less than the wt. of the nails that is why nails sink.

(ii) Life saving belts and submarines operate on these principles.

Meta Centre : The centre of gravity (c.g.) of the displaced liquid by a floating body is called centre of buoyancy. The vertical line drawn from the centre of buoyancy of the displaced liquid intersects the vertical line passing

through the centre of gravity (c.g.) of the body. This point of intersection is called *metacentre*. A floating body is said to be in a stable equilibrium which has its metacentre higher (above) than its centre of gravity (c.g.).

If in a container (vessel) of water a piece of ice is floating, then after the complete melting of ice, the level of the water in the container is the same as earlier (original).

Conditions of equilibrium of a floating body

(i) The wt. of the floating body is equal to the wt. of the liquid displaced.

(ii) The c.g. of the body and the c.g. of the displaced liquid (centre of buoyancy) must lie on the same vertical line.

The first condition is required for the translational equilibrium and second for the rotational equilibrium of the body.

Stability of equilibrium : The position of the metacentre relative to the centre of gravity (c.g.) of the body plays a significant role in the stability of the equilibrium of the body. When the metacentre lies above the c.g. of the body, then the body is in stable equilibrium and when the metacentre lies below the centre of gravity (c.g.) of the body, then the body is in unstable equilibrium.

(D) SURFACE TENSION

Cohesive force and Adhesive force : The most basic constituents of the matter (substance) are molecules among which intermolecular forces exist. The forces (attractive) operative among these molecules are called *Cohesive force* and it is larger for the solids. That is why it has a definite size. But in liquids the value of cohesive forces is very small and it is negligible for the gases that is why gases diffuse. The forces (attractive) operative among the molecules of two different substances are called *Adhesive force*. Due to adhesive forces water wets the substances and on writing at the Blackboards by the chalk letters become visible. For a solid-liquid pair if the value of adhesive force is greater than the cohesive force among the liquid molecules, then this liquid doesn't wet the solid but if adhesive force is less than the cohesive force of the liquid, then liquid wets solid.

Example : Mercury doesn't wet glass but water wets glass.

Surface Tension : The evidences of the experiments tell us the surface (free surface) of a liquid behaves to some extent like a stretched elastic membrane having a natural tendency to contract and occupy a minimum possible surface area as permitted by the circumstances of the liquid mass. This property of the liquid is called surface tension and it is measured by the force per unit length of line drawn in the liquid surface acting perpendicularly to it and tangentially to the surface of the liquid and tending to pull the surface apart along the line.

Thus, Surface Tension (T) = $\frac{\text{Force} (F)}{\text{length of the line drawn liquid} (l)}$

The surface tension of all liquids decreases linearly with temperature over the small temperature range.

Thus, T
where,

Surfac
unit is N /

Note
zero :

Surf
surface o
of the li
creating
energy.
tension
Joule / r

The
surfa
etc. ar

A
imme
curve
surfa
call

in
ou
bu
te
a
F

*t of intersection
ble equilibrium
ravity (c.g.)
then after the
er is the same*

*of the liquid
d (centre of
brium and
itive to the
ability of
c.g. of the
entre lies
unstable*

*uents of
r forces
called
ite size.
ligible
erative
force.
at the
air if
g the
force*

*face
stic
um
ss.
ed
ng
id*

Thus, $T = T_0 (1 - \alpha t)$

where, T_0 = value of the surface tension at $t^\circ\text{C}$
 α = Temperature coeff.

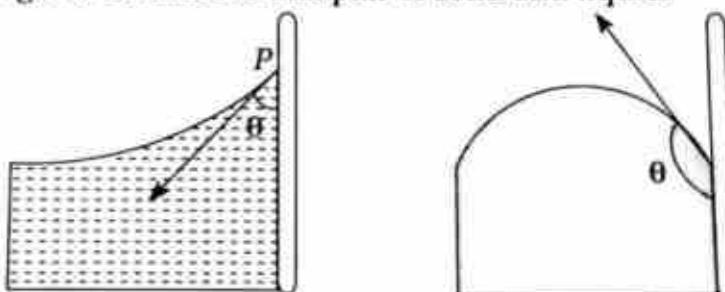
Surface tension is a vector quantity and its SI unit is N/m i.e. Nm^{-1} .

Note: The value of the surface tension becomes zero at the critical temperature.

Surface Energy: Every strained body possesses potential energy. Thus surface of a liquid behaves also like a strained system and hence the surface of the liquid also has a potential energy which is equal to the work done in creating the surface. This energy per unit area of the surface is called surface energy. The surface energy of a liquid is numerically equal to the surface tension. Thus, surface energy and surface tension both can be expressed in Joule / meter².

The free surface of the liquid tries to acquire the minimum area due to surface tension and that's why rain drops, liquid drops, drops of mercury etc. are spherical.

Angle of contact: When a solid body in the form of a tube or a plate is immersed in a liquid, the surface of the liquid near the solid in general is curved (concave or convex). The angle between the tangents of the liquid surface and the solid surface at the point of contact, inside the liquid is called the angle of contact for that pair of solid and liquid.



Pressure Inside a Soap bubble and inside a liquid drop: The pressure inside a soap bubble or a liquid drop must be in excess of the pressure outside the bubble or drop because without such pressure difference, a bubble or a drop cannot remain in a stable equilibrium. Due to surface tension the bubble or drop has a tendency to contract and disappear altogether. To balance the tendency to contract, there must be an excess of pressure inside the bubble or drop.

The excess pressure inside a soap bubble = $\frac{4T}{R}$

Where; T = Surface Tension

R = Radius of the soap bubble

and the excess pressure inside a liquid drop = $\frac{2T}{R}$

Where, T = Surface Tension

R = Radius of the liquid drop

For a soap bubble two surfaces are taken under consideration upon which surface tension is effective, while for a liquid drop and for an air bubble one surface is assumed to be effective for the surface tension.

Some incidents and facts related to surface tension

- (i) A thin little needle can float in water due to surface tension.
- (ii) Soaps and Detergents reduce the surface tension of the water and clothes are thereby cleaned up.
- (iii) Through the soap solution a great bubble can be produced as water reduces its surface tension.
- (iv) On a spray of kerosene oil (K-oil) the surface tension of water reduces and mosquitoes sink into the water and die.
- (v) Hot soup is tasty (delicious) because its surface tension is reduced and it spreads uniformly on the mouth-tongue.
- (vi) The hairs of shaving brush stick to each other due to surface tension on drawing it out from the water.

(E) CAPILLARY ACTION OR CAPILLARITY

When a long glass tube of very fine bore called capillary tube is dipped into a liquid, then the liquid rises or depresses in the tube. If the angle of contact is acute (less than 90°) then liquid rises and if the angle of contact is obtuse (more than 90°) then the liquid depresses. It is called capillary action or capillarity.

Generally the liquid which wets glass rises upwards and the liquid which doesn't wet glass depresses downwards.

When a capillary tube is dipped into water it rises, while in the case of mercury it depresses.

Let us suppose r be the radius of a capillary tube, T be the surface tension of the liquid and ρ be its (liquid) density. Let if it rises or depresses h height or depth then the radius of the tube is given as :

$$r = \frac{2T \cos \theta}{h \rho g} \quad \text{or, } h = \frac{2T \cos \theta}{r \rho g} \quad \text{where, } \theta = \text{angle of contact}$$

Obviously; a liquid will rise the most for the least radius and vice-versa.

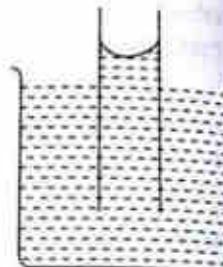
For pure water and glass $\theta = 0^\circ$

For pure mercury and glass; $\theta = 135^\circ$

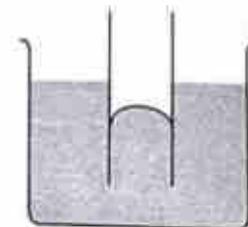
If a capillary tube be of height less than h , then the liquid doesn't overflow. The angle made by the liquid surface with the capillary tube changes in such a way that the force $2\pi r T \cos \theta$ becomes adjustable and equalises to the weight of the liquid raised in the capillary tube.

Examples of Capillarity :

- (i) Blotting paper sucks to ink due to the small holes (pores) of the paper which act like the capillary tubes.
- (ii) Through the wicks of K-oil lamp, K-oil rises into the wick due to capillary action.
- (iii) In the branches of plants and leafs the water and nutritional salts are transported through the capillary action.



Water rised



Mercury depressed

- (iv) In the artificial satellites (in their state of weightlessness) if a capillary tube is dipped into water, then the water will rise upto its full height.
- (v) Just after heavy rainfall farmers plough their agriculture lands to break the capillaries formed by the soil so that water doesn't come upto upper surface and the soil remains wet (wetted).

(F) VISCOSITY

If the layers of a fluid (liquid or gas) slip or tend to slip on another layers in contact, then any two such layers exert a tangential force on each other. The directions of these forces are such that the relative motion between the layers are opposed. This property of the fluid to oppose relative motion between its layers is called viscosity. The forces between the layers opposing the relative motion between them are called the forces of viscosity. Thus, viscosity may be thought to be an internal friction of the fluid in motion.

Let us suppose a liquid is flowing as shown in the figure (i) and AB is the ground level at which the lowermost layer is at rest.

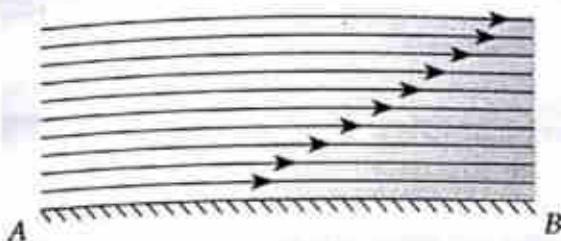


Fig. (i)

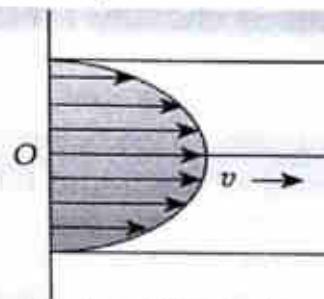


Fig. (ii) : Velocity distribution curve

As we move from the lowermost layer to upward the flow velocities of the liquid layers go on increasing and the uppermost layer has maximum velocity. Thus every lower layer has lesser velocity than consecutive upper layers and others. In fact every upper layer tries to drag forward every consecutive (adjacent) lower layer, but a lower layer tries to pull consecutive (adjacent) upper layer backwards.

If a liquid flows in a cylindrical pipe or tube as shown in figure (ii) a velocity distribution curve is obtained which is *parabolic* and the velocity of the mid. Layer is the maximum and decreases for other adjacent layers.

Thus, viscosity is the internal characteristics of liquids and gases which are produced by the cohesive forces of the molecules. When the liquid flows a relative motion among its various layers start due to which the distance among the molecules increases and it is opposed by the cohesive forces and thus viscosity is produced. But in gases viscosity is generated due to molecules transfer from one place to another. That is why, in the gases viscosity is less than that of the liquids. In liquids viscosity is also measured by their concentration. The liquids which are more dense (concentrated) have more viscosity. Examples - Glycerine and Honey have more viscosity than water.

Due to viscosity in air the cloud particles come slowly and clouds seem to be floating.

Coefficient of viscosity: The coefficient of viscosity is the only parameter through which the viscosity of the fluid is measured. Let a liquid be flowing from the ground level and let v be the velocity of layer at a distance x from the bed and $v + dv$ be the velocity at a distance $x + dx$.

Thus, the velocity differs by dv in going through a distance dx perpendicular to it.

Here, $\frac{dv}{dx}$ is called velocity gradient.

Newton observed that the viscous force acting between any two adjacent layers of the liquid is proportional to the velocity gradient $\left(\frac{dv}{dx}\right)$ in the direction perpendicular to the layers and the area (A) of the layer.

$$\text{Thus, } F \propto A \frac{dv}{dx} \Rightarrow F = -\eta A \frac{dv}{dx}$$

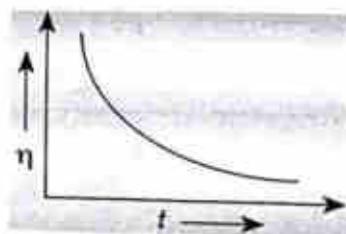
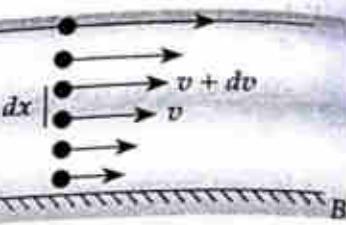
where; η = a proportionality constant called coeff. of viscosity. Negative sign indicates that the viscous force opposes the relative motion.

The SI unit of viscosity is N.Sm^{-2} and its C.G.S. unit is dyne.Scm^{-2} . However poise is another SI unit of viscosity which has been given in the honour of the French scientist Poiseulle.

Also, 1 poise = 0.1 N.Sm^{-2}

The viscosity of the liquid falls very rapidly with rise in temperature. But no actual theory of temp. variation with viscosity has been until developed.

The viscosity of a gas increases with rise in temperature.



Streamline flow or Steady flow : The flow of a fluid is said to be streamlined or steady if the velocity at every point in the fluid remains constant both in magnitude and direction and the energy needed to drive the fluid being used up in overcoming the *viscous drag* between its layers. Thus, in steady flow, each small volume element of the fluid (say a particle of the fluid) follows exactly the same path and has exactly the same velocity as its predecessor.

The line along which the particles of the fluid move one after another, with their constant velocities at various points and their motion are along the tangents to those points, is called a streamline. This also concludes that a streamline is a curve and the tangent to it at any point gives the direction of the fluid-flow at that point.

Turbulent flow : In the flow of another type, the fluid doesn't maintain constancy of the velocity of its fluid particle both in magnitude and direction and this is called turbulent flow. Most of the external energy in maintaining this type of flow is used in setting up eddy-current in the fluid.

Critical Velocity and Reynold's Number : The flow of a liquid remains steady or orderly only till its velocity doesn't exceed a certain limiting value of it which is called its critical velocity. Beyond the critical velocity, the flow loses all its steadiness with the paths and velocities of the liquid ...

change continuously and haphazardly. Such a flow is called turbulent flow and most of the energy needed to drive the liquid is now dissipated in setting up eddies and whirlpools.

O. Reynolds determined the value of the critical velocity v_c for a liquid as; $v_c = \frac{k\eta}{\rho r}$. Where, η = Coeff. of viscosity

ρ = Density of the liquid

r = Radius of the tube in which liquid is flowing.

k = Reynold's number in which liquid is flowing.

This is called Reynolds formula. Here k is called Reynolds number, its value is very high and usually it is represented on a logarithmic scale. For a narrow tube the value of k is 1000. Obviously for the flow of liquids of higher viscosity and lower density through narrow tubes tends to be steady or orderly (streamlined) whereas that of liquids of lower viscosity and higher density through broader tubes tends to be turbulent.

Principle of Continuity : If an incompressible (const. density), non-viscous, fluid flows steadily through a tube of non-uniform cross-section, then the product of the area of cross-section and the velocity of flow is same at every point in the tube.

Thus, in a particular tube if A be the area of its cross-section and v be the velocity of flow of the liquid at a place (point), then according to the continuity principle; $Av = \text{Constant}$

Thereby, for two different places (points) in a tube as shown in the figure,

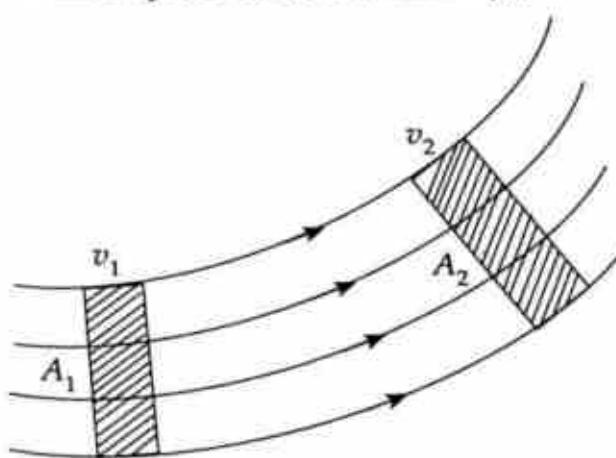
$$A_1 v_1 = A_2 v_2$$

Usually the principle of continuity is a fundamental law of fluid-flow and it is a special case of the general physical law of conservation of matter. Also we can conclude that in a steady compressible flow the velocity of flow varies inversely with the cross-sectional area, being larger in narrower parts of the tube and vice-versa.

Bernoulli's Theorem : This states that for all points along a streamline in an incompressible and non-viscous fluid flowing steadily, the sum of pressure energy, potential energy and kinetic energy per unit volume is constant.

Thus, if p be the pressure energy per unit volume, ρ be the density of the fluid, h be the height from the ground level, then by Bernoulli's theorem,

$$p + \frac{1}{2} \rho v^2 + \rho gh = \text{constant.}$$



y parameter
be flowing
 $+ dv$

any two
 $(\frac{dv}{dx})$ in
er.

gative
 cm^{-2} .
in the

→

be
ns
'e

s.
e
r.

Here, the term $(p + \rho gh)$ represents the pressure of the fluid even if fluid is at rest, so it is called static pressure of the fluid. The term $\frac{1}{2} \rho v^2$ represents the pressure of the fluid and by virtue of its velocity v it is called dynamic pressure of the fluid.

Thus, Bernoulli's theorem or equation can also be expressed as

$$\text{Static Pressure} + \text{Dynamic Pressure} = \text{constant}$$

In fact, Bernoulli's theorem is nothing but the law of conservation of energy for an ideal fluid.

Applications : (i) **Venturimeter** : This instrument is based upon Bernoulli's theorem by which the rate of flow (speed) of the liquid (say water) is measured through a pipe.

(ii) **Pitot Tube** : This instrument (device) is based upon Bernoulli's theorem which measures the rate of flow (speed) of the gas.

(iii) **Dynamic Lift** : This device operates on the principle of Bernoulli's theorem and in it the force acts on a body such as an air plane wing, a hydrofoil, a spinning ball, the spinning shot of a rifle by virtue of its motion through air.

(iv) Often in a sea if two water boats are moving parallel to each other and come close to each other, then the velocity of the water behind the two boats becomes larger than the individual relative velocities of the boat and consequently low pressure regions develop and the boats collide.

(v) If a Cyclonic storm comes, the roof of the tin foils are flown away because the pressure of the outer surface of the roof has low pressure (high velocity) than that of the air inside the roof in a closed room where no change in the pressure takes place.

Terminal Velocity and Stokes's theorem : When a solid body falls under gravity through a liquid (or gas), the layer of the liquid in contact with the body moves with the velocity of the body, while the liquid confined at the far distance from it is at rest. Thus, the body produces a relative motion between the layers of the liquid. This is opposed by the viscous force appeared between the layers of the liquid. The viscous force increases with the velocity of the body and ultimately becomes equal to the driving force of the body. The body then falls with a constant velocity and it is called *Terminal Velocity*.

Stokes observed dimensionally that when a small sphere moves slowly with a constant velocity through a perfectly homogeneous viscous fluid of an infinite extension, the resistive force experienced by the sphere is $F = 6\pi \eta r v$; where r is the radius of the sphere, v is its terminal velocity and η is the viscosity of the fluid. This is called *stokes law*. If this sphere of density ρ falls freely from rest under gravity through a fluid of density σ and acquires a terminal velocity v , then

$$6\pi \eta r v = \frac{4}{3} \pi r^3 (\rho - \sigma) g \Rightarrow v = \frac{2}{9} \frac{r^2 (\rho - \sigma) g}{\eta}$$

where, v = terminal velocity; This concludes that the terminal velocity of a small sphere is proportional to the square of its radius.

(G) ATMOSPHERIC PRESSURE

The gaseous layer which surrounds the earth is called atmosphere. It is held on the earth by the action of gravity. Atmosphere is a mechanical mixture of the gases namely nitrogen and oxygen and some other inert gases. The pressure of these gaseous mixture of atmosphere is called atmospheric pressure. As gravity is the only force acting on the atmosphere, the pressure on the atmosphere is obviously the weight of the vertical column of air of unit cross-section and height equal to that of atmosphere. Firstly the atmospheric pressure was evaluated and measured by Von Guericke. Normally, the atmospheric pressure is the pressure required which is exerted by the column of 76 cm of Hg at 0°C and at 45° latitude near the sea. Thus we can also say that atmospheric pressure is the pressure equivalent to the wt. of the column of 76 cm of Hg for unit cross-sectional area.

Unit of Atmospheric Pressure

Column of 1 cm of Hg	= 1.33×10^3 Pascal
1 Pascal	= 1 Newton/meter ²
1 Bar	= 10^5 Newton/meter ²
1 Millibar	= 10^2 Pascal
1 torr	= 1 milli Hg Pressure = 133.8 Pascal

More appropriately; 1 atmosphere = 1.013×10^5 N/m²

Thus, the atmosphere exerts on us a pressure of 1600 kg, but we don't realise pressure. The osmotic pressure of the blood and mineral water of our body exerts an equivalent pressure that's why we don't feel external pressure. At the earth's surface (near sea level) on reaching a distance of 110 m upwards, atm. pressure decreases by 1 cm column of Hg.

In hilly area it is difficult to prepare food because of a fall in pressure on the hill and the boiling point of water correspondingly rises up. Consequently the latent heat of vaporisation of water decreases too and, that's why the difficulties occur. The phenomenon of ink overflowing from the pen of a man sitting in aircraft at higher altitudes, the phenomenon of bleeding through the nose etc. are common interesting incidents.

Barometer : The barometer is a device by which the atmospheric pressure is measured. Fortin fabricated and designed the barometer on the basis of Torricelli's theorem. It measures the atmospheric pressure accurately and by the help of Fortin barometer weather related activities are predicted. When the indicator of a barometer suddenly falls, it is the indicative prediction of the appearance of a cyclonic storm, but if its indicator falls slowly then the possibility is of the coming of rain and if the indicator inclines upward slowly then there is a possibility of the appearance of a clear day.

Due to large size and some other drawbacks, Fortin barometer was replaced by Aneroid barometer which is compact and convenient and in it no liquid is used. The frequent use of Aneroid barometer is customary to measure the altitude of various places. The device Altimeter operates on the basic principle of Aneroid barometer by which altitudes are measured.

The Standard Atmospheric pressure is the pressure required of 76 cm of Hg column or 760 mm of Hg column, which is equivalent to 1 atm.

6. Simple Harmonic Motion

Periodic motion and Oscillatory motion : Any motion that repeats in equal intervals of time is called periodic motion. The motion of the earth about its axis is a periodic motion. The motion of the piston of an engine, the motion of a pendulum, the motion of the electron in an atom etc. are the examples of periodic motion. The interval of time after which motion is repeated is called time period (T) or periodicity of the motion. In 1 sec repetition of the motion is called frequency (n). The relation between time-period (T) and frequency (n) is $n = \frac{1}{T}$.

If a particle in periodic motion moves back and forth over the same path, it is called an oscillatory (vibratory) motion. The oscillations of a simple pendulum, sonometer wire, atoms at the lattice sites of a solid, a mass attached to a spring etc. are the examples of periodic motion.

Simple Harmonic Motion : Simple Harmonic Motion (S.H.M.) is defined as motion in which acceleration is always directed towards a fixed point in the path of motion and is proportional to the displacement from that point.

Characteristics of Simple Harmonic Oscillator

(A) If an oscillator executing S.H.M passes through a fixed point (mean position) then

- (i) No acceleration exists or acceleration is zero and thereby no force comes into existence and no work is done.
- (ii) The potential energy of the oscillator is zero but the kinetic energy is maximum.

(B) If an oscillator executing S.H.M passes through the extreme point (end point) then

- (i) The acceleration is maximum and thus acting restoring force will be maximum.
- (ii) The oscillator instantaneously comes to rest (its velocity becomes zero) thus kinetic energy becomes zero. But its potential energy is maximum.

Equation of S.H.M. : If a particle of mass m moves in such a way about a fixed point (mean position) O then a force $F = -kx$ acts on the particle where k is a constant and x is the displacement of the particle from the fixed point O .

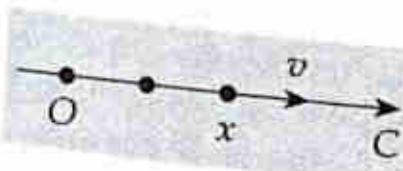
The acceleration of the particle at any instant is

$$f = \frac{F}{m} = \frac{-k}{m}x = -\omega^2x \quad \dots (i) \quad (\because F = -kx)$$

where, $\omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}$ (say a constant)

But acceleration $= f = \frac{dv}{dt}$ and velocity $= v = \frac{dx}{dt}$

Thus, acceleration $= f = \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{dx}{dt} \right) = \frac{d^2x}{dt^2} \quad \dots (ii)$



at repeats in
of the earth
an engine,
om etc. are
ch motion
n. In 1 sec
een time-

he same
ons of a
solid, a

(M.) is
a fixed
t from

oint

orce

rgy

int

ll

s;

t

Now, from eqns. (i) & (ii)

$\Rightarrow f = \frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = -\omega^2x$. The negative sign is the indication of particle's motion toward the mean position.

$$\Rightarrow \frac{d^2x}{dt^2} + \omega^2x = 0.$$

This is the eqn. of a simple harmonic oscillator in differential form.
The solution of this eqn. is given by $x = a \sin(\omega t + \phi)$.

where, x = instantaneous displacement at time t .
 ω = a constant, called angular frequency.
 ϕ = phase constant
 a = max. displacement or amplitude.

Thus, velocity of the particle executing SHM

$$v = \frac{dx}{dt} = a\omega \cos(\omega t + \phi)$$

$$= a\omega \sqrt{1 - \sin^2(\omega t + \phi)} = a\omega \sqrt{1 - \frac{x^2}{a^2}} \quad [\because \frac{x}{a} = \sin(\omega t + \phi)]$$

$$= a\omega \frac{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{a} = \omega \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{velocity } v = \omega \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}$$

Time Period and frequency of a body suspended by a vertical spring : Let L be a natural length of a massless spring and a block of mass m be attached to it and the spring be vertically suspended by a rigid support. Now, let the spring be slightly extended from equilibrium, then the time period of oscillation of the block is given by

$$T = 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}. \text{ Here; } k \text{ is called spring constant.}$$

$$\text{and frequency of oscillation } n = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{1}{2\pi} \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}$$

If the mass of the spring say m_s is also taken under consideration, then time period of the oscillating body (block).

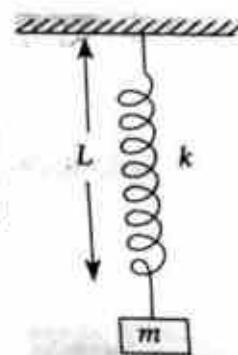
$$= T = 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{m + \frac{m_s}{3}}{k}} \text{ and frequency of oscillation}$$

$$= n = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{1}{2\pi} \sqrt{\frac{k}{m + \frac{m_s}{3}}}$$

If a spring of length L and spring constant k be cut (or divided by breaking) into two equal parts or pieces each of length $L/2$ and spring constants k_1 and k_2 , then $k_1 = k_2 = 2k$.

$$\text{Thus, } k = \frac{k_1}{2} = \frac{k_2}{2}$$

If n be the frequency of oscillation of a body of mass m attached to a massless spring, then frequency of oscillation (n) = $\frac{1}{2\pi} \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}$



But if the spring is cut into two equal pieces then each attached with a body of mass m will oscillate with frequency $(n') = \sqrt{2} \frac{1}{2\pi} \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}$
 $\Rightarrow n' = \sqrt{2} n$

In SI unit frequency of the oscillator is expressed in Hertz (Hz). Here angular frequency of a simple harmonic oscillator (ω) is related to frequency of n as $\omega = 2\pi n$, but $n = \frac{1}{T}$,

$$\text{Thus, } \omega = \frac{2\pi}{T},$$

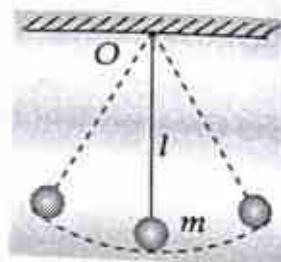
where T = Time period of the oscillator measured in seconds.

The maximum displacement of the oscillator (or particle) from the centre of oscillation (mean position) is called amplitude of the oscillation.

If a smooth straight tunnel is made diametrically opposite the points on the surface of the earth, then a body dropped to it executes S.H.M. and its period of oscillation is 84.2 minutes.

Simple pendulum and Some interesting incidents related to it :

A simple pendulum consists of a heavy particle suspended by a massless inextensible and perfectly flexible string (thread). The distance between the point of support (O) and the particle (bob) is called length (l) of the pendulum. An ideal simple pendulum defined as above can never be realised in practice, though in laboratories a small brass ball (bob) is suspended by a long thin cotton thread to construct a simple pendulum. The distance between the point of support and the centre of gravity of the bob is called the effective length of the pendulum.



The time period of the simple pendulum = $T = 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{l}{g}}$

(A) Obviously $T \propto \sqrt{l}$ i.e. on increasing the length of the pendulum the time period T will increase and vice-versa. For example when a girl stands up during springing then the center of gravity (c.g.) of the body of the girl comes upward and the effective length is decreased smaller or lesser than that of initial value.

Also the time period of a simple pendulum doesn't depend upon its mass, so if another girl comes and seat gently then its time period doesn't change.

(B) As $T \propto \sqrt{\frac{l}{g}}$ and the value of g decreases either in going up or coming down inside the earth's atmosphere so a pendulum clock will become slowed down and will indicate a longer time period.

(C) If a pendulum clock is brought inside an artificial satellite, then due to the state of weightlessness inside the satellite ($g = 0$), the time period of the clock becomes infinite (∞). That's why such clock doesn't work inside the artificial satellites.

(D) In summer season the effective length of the pendulum clock is lengthened (increased length), so its time period is also increased and consequently the clock becomes slow. But in winter season the effective length is contracted thus time period is decreased and the clock becomes fast.

(E) As on the moon the value of acceleration due to gravity is $g/6$, where g is acceleration due to gravity on the earth's surface. Thus, the period of oscillation of the pendulum clock is increased on the moon's surface and so it (pendulum clock) is slowed down.

II. Sound (Acoustics)

1. Wave Motion

Wave motion : A wave motion is a process of transmission of disturbances created somewhere in an elastic medium in all directions around it and along with the disturbances energy transmits. Although the particles of the medium only vibrate about their mean position and do not leave their original respective positions.

Thus, three conditions are required for the formation of a wave—

- A vibrating body called the *source* is necessary to create the disturbance.
- An elastic medium called the propagating medium through which the wave transmits.
- Particles of the medium which take part in the process of onward transmission of the *disturbance* by executing successive similar vibrations in the source about their respective mean position.

Such wave (disturbance) progression along with energy transmission is called a wave-motion.

Broadly a wave is categorized into two types—

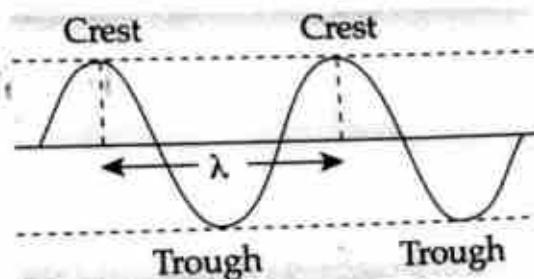
- Mechanical waves (Elastic waves)
- Non-mechanical waves (Electromagnetic waves).

(i) Mechanical waves (Elastic waves) : Waves which propagate in materialistic elastic medium like solid, liquid or gas are called mechanical waves. There are two essential features— elasticity and inertia for the existence of the mechanical waves.

Types of Mechanical waves :

- Transverse mechanical wave
- Longitudinal mechanical waves.

(a) Transverse mechanical wave : If in an elastic medium wave propagates



(transmits) along the perpendicular direction of the particles vibration, then the wave is called transverse mechanical wave.

Transverse mechanical wave can be generated in solids and upper surfaces of the liquids. But it cannot be generated through gases and inside liquids due to lack of rigidity. The transverse wave propagates in the form of crest (max. upwards displacement) and trough (max. downwards displacement). The distance between two adjacent crests or troughs is called wavelength and it is represented by λ .

(b) Longitudinal mechanical wave : If in an elastic medium, a wave propagates (transmits) along the direction of particles vibration, then the wave is called longitudinal mechanical wave.

Longitudinal wave can be generated (produced) in all medium—solids, liquids and gases and such wave transmit through compression and rarefaction. In compression the pressure and the density of the medium is maximum, while in rarefaction the pressure and the density of the medium is minimum. Examples — Sound waves in air, earthquake waves, water waves etc. are longitudinal mechanical waves.

(ii) Non-mechanical waves (Electromagnetic waves) : Waves whose propagation (transmission) does not need any elastic medium and which is generated by the mutual oscillations of electric and magnetic fields perpendicular to each other. Such waves are called non-mechanical waves (electromagnetic waves). The electromagnetic waves propagate in a perpendicular direction to each electric field and magnetic field and it travels in vacuum with velocity of light $c = 3 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$ or 3 lakh km/sec. Each and every electromagnetic wave travels with the same velocity i.e. velocity of light c . The wavelength range of various electromagnetic waves lie between 10^{-14} meter to 10^4 meter. The examples of electromagnetic waves are radio waves, ultra violet rays, X-rays, γ -rays, thermal radiations etc.

In the early days light was also assumed to be an elastic wave and a hypothetical medium called ether was supposed to be its medium of propagation. But later after the negative result of ether drag by Michelson-Morely experiment, this concept was discarded (abandoned).

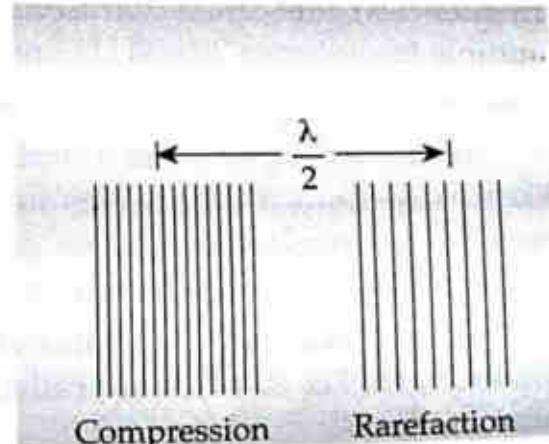
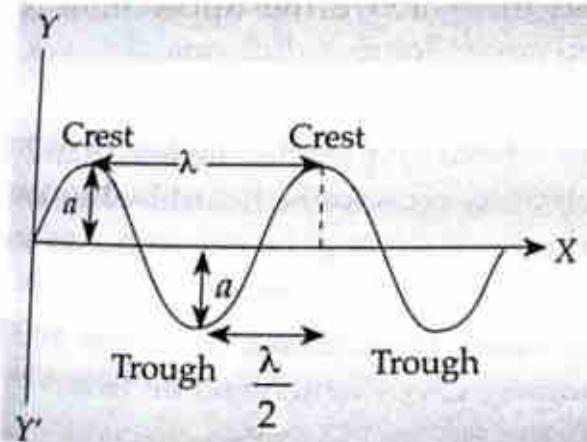
Spectrum of electromagnetic waves

Electro-magnetic waves	Inventors	Wavelength range (m)	Frequency range (Hz)	Utilities
X-rays	Roentgen	$10^{-10} \text{ m to } 10^{-8} \text{ m}$ $(1\text{A}^\circ - 100\text{A}^\circ)$	$10^{18} \text{ Hz to } 10^{16} \text{ Hz}$	X-rays are extensively used in various surgical diagnosis like bone fractures, diseases of lungs, kidneys etc. and in various industrial purposes.

$$(1\text{A}^\circ = 10^{-10} \text{ m or } 1\text{nm})$$

Electro-magnetic waves		Inventors	Wavelength range (m)	Frequency range (Hz)	Utilities
γ -rays	H.Becquerel	$10^{-14} \text{ m to } 10^{-10} \text{ m}$ $(0.0001\text{\AA}^{\circ} - 1\text{\AA}^{\circ})$ $(0.0001\text{\AA}^{\circ})$		$10^{20} \text{ Hz to } 10^{18} \text{ Hz}$	γ -rays have max. penetrating power which is utilized in nuclear reaction and artificial radioactivity.
U/V-rays	Ritter	$10^{-8} \text{ m to } 10^{-7} \text{ m}$ $(1000\text{\AA}^{\circ} - 100\text{\AA}^{\circ})$		$10^{16} \text{ Hz to } 10^{14} \text{ Hz}$	U/V rays are used in producing electric discharge, photoelectric effect and in destroying bacteria.
Visible radiation	Newton	$3.9 \times 10^{-7} \text{ m to } 7.8 \times 10^{-7} \text{ m}$	$10^{14} \text{ Hz to } 10^{12} \text{ Hz}$		By visible radiation objects become visible and by the illumination of the visible radiation objects are made distinctive.
Infra-red radiation	Hurssel	$7.8 \times 10^{-7} \text{ m to } 10^{-3} \text{ m}$	$10^{12} \text{ Hz to } 10^{10} \text{ Hz}$		I/R-radiations are thermal radiations and on which object these incident raise the temperature. These are utilized in photography of the objects behind mist and fog. It is also used to warm patients in hospitals. In T.V. remote I/R is used.
Short radio waves	Henric Hertz	$10^{-3} \text{ m to } 1 \text{ m}$	$10^{10} \text{ Hz to } 10^8 \text{ Hz}$		Short radio waves are used in radio, T.V. and Telephone etc.
Long radio waves	Marconi	$1 \text{ m to } 10^4 \text{ m}$	$10^6 \text{ Hz to } 10^4 \text{ Hz}$		Longer radio waves are used in radio and T.V.

Terms related to wave motion



(i) **Amplitude** : The maximum displacement from the mean position of the vibration of the particles of the medium is called amplitude of the wave. Thus, maximum displacement on both sides from the equilibrium position is called amplitude which is represented by a .

(ii) **Time-period** : The time taken by the vibration of the particles of the medium in completing one oscillation is called time-period (T)

(iii) **Frequency** : The number of oscillations executed by the particles of the medium in one second is called frequency (n) of the wave and in SI unit it is expressed in hertz (Hz).

$$\text{Thus; } n = \frac{1}{T}$$

(iv) **Phase** : The state of motion of a particle of the medium at a given point of time is called phase of the wave. The state of motion of a particle at a time means where it is and what is its direction of motion at that instant ?

(v) **Wavelength** : The distance required to cover one complete oscillation of any particle of the medium is called wavelength (λ). In a transverse wave the distance between two consecutive (adjacent) crests or troughs is called its wavelength (λ) and in longitudinal wave it is the distance between two consecutive (adjacent) compressions or rarefactions

(vi) **Wave speed** : The rate of the distance travelled by the wave (disturbance) is called wave speed (v).

The relation among wave speed (v), wavelength (λ) and frequency (n) is
 $\text{Wave speed } (v) = \text{frequency } (n) \times \text{wavelength } (\lambda)$.

2. Sound Wave

The sound wave is a longitudinal mechanical wave which is generated (produced) by the transmission of the disturbances in the form of compressions and rarefactions. This train of packets of compressions and rarefactions on reaching the listener's ears produces a variations of pressure on his or her ear-membranes. These pressure variations set up impulses on the auditory nerves which carry the message to the hearing centre of the brain.

In fact sound is produced by the rapid vibration of material bodies and its sensation is produced by a vibrating body, provided its frequency of vibration lies within the range 20 Hz to 20,000 Hz called audibility limit (range). The frequencies of less than 20 Hz (lower limit of audible frequencies) are called *infrasonics* and those above the upper limit of audible frequencies 20,000 Hz are called *super-sonics (ultrasonics)* waves.
Frequencies range of sound waves :

Infrasonic waves : The sound waves whose frequencies are less than 20 Hz are called *Infrasonic waves* and such waves cannot be heard by human ears. Such waves are produced inside the earth during the occurrence of an earthquake. Heart beats of a human body are also infrasonics.

Audible waves : The sound waves whose frequencies lie between (20 Hz to 20,000 Hz 20 kHz) are called *audible waves* which can be heard by human ears.

Ultrasonic waves : The sound waves whose frequencies are more than 20,000 Hz are called ultrasonic waves and such waves cannot be heard by human ears. Ultrasonics were produced firstly by Galton and later these were produced in certain crystals of tourmaline, quartz, zinc oxide, etc. by Piezo electric method. Thus, Piezo electric crystals of quartz, rochelle salt, tourmaline etc. are generators of ultrasonics. As the frequencies of ultrasonics are too large so these waves are very energetic and have shorter wavelengths. Some animals like birds, bats, cats, dolphins etc. not only hear ultrasonics but also generate them. In the dark, the bats can fly freely without dashing against any obstacle (barrier) because during their course of flight they constantly send forward ultrasonic signals and if any obstacle is there, they hear the echoes (reflected sound wave) of the ultrasonics and at once change their course of flight. Bats can easily hear the ultrasonics of the frequencies of 1,00,000 Hz.

Utilities :

- (i) In medical science ultrasonics are used in bloodless surgical operations, in detection of tumor and teeth cavity etc. By ultrasonic radiation various neurological disease and arthritis are being cured.
- (ii) In western countries milk is purified by passing contaminated milk through ultrasonics. Generally contaminated (impure) milk has bacteria which are destroyed on passing through the ultrasonics.
- (iii) Ultrasonics coagulate the dust particles in winter season. Thus mists and fogs at the airports are diminished and this facilitates in landing aircrafts (aeroplanes).
- (iv) Ultrasonics are also used in measuring the sea depth, and in detecting or locating larger rocks, icebergs, bigger fishes etc. inside the sea SONAR (Sound Navigation And Ranging) is a technique through which objects located inside the sea are detected.

3. Speed of Sound

For the propagation of sound wave (mechanical longitudinal wave) a materialistic medium is needed. That's why sound doesn't propagate in vacuum. The speed of sound is different in different media. Newton firstly theoretically observed and propounded that the speed of sound is dependent on elasticity (E) of medium and its density (d) as given below;

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{E}{d}}$$

If the medium is solid then elasticity (E) = Young's modulus (γ)

$$\text{then } v = \sqrt{\frac{\gamma}{d}} \text{ (solid)}$$

Newton assumed (considered) that if sound wave propagates through a gaseous medium, then the disturbances transfer in the form of compressions and rarefactions in such a way that the temperature remains constant and the process is said to be isothermal.

Thus, elasticity (E) = Bulk's modulus (β)
= Pressure (p)

$$\rightarrow v = \sqrt{\frac{P}{d}} \text{ (gas)} = 280 \text{ m/sec}$$

where, $P = 1.013 \times 10^5 \text{ N.m}^{-2}$,

$$d = 1.29 \text{ kg.m}^{-3}$$

But this calculated value (280 m/sec) of the speed of sound by Newton himself was less than the actual value of the speed of sound (= 332 m/sec) which was globally acceptable.

Thus, a corrective modification was made by Laplace in this regard and he asserted that during the transmission of sound wave the compressions and rarefactions transfer so rapidly that temperature doesn't remain constant but the total thermal energy remains constant. Thereby Laplace assumed that the process of sound wave transmission is adiabatic (const. thermal energy) not isothermal (const. temperature) and it is called Laplace's correction.

Thus, elasticity (E) = Bulk's modulus (β) = γP

$$\text{where, } \gamma = \frac{C_p}{C_V} = \frac{\text{molar sp. heat at constant pressure}}{\text{molar sp. heat at constant volume}}$$

$$= 1.44 \text{ (for air diatomic gas)}$$

$$\text{Thus, speed of sound} = v = \sqrt{\frac{\gamma P}{d}} = 332 \text{ m/sec.}$$

As the speed of light in air (c) is $3 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$ (300000 km/sec) which is very large than the speed of sound (332 m/sec). That's why during lightning in the sky both light and sound originate at the same time but light appears earlier to the eye and sound comes later to the ear.

Liquids are more elastic than gases but solids are the most elastic. Thus, speed of the sound is maximum in solids. Also speed of sound is more in liquids than gases. The speed of sound in air = 332 m/s

in water = 1493 m/s

and in iron = 5130 m/s

Speeds of sound in various media

Medium	Speed of sound in m/s at 0°C	Medium	Speed of sound in m/s at 0°C
CO_2	260	Water	1493
Air	332	Sea water	1533
Vapour (100°)	405	Iron	5130
Alcohol	1213	Glass	5640
Hydrogen	1269	Aluminium	6420
Mercury	1450		

If a sound wave propagates from one medium to another, then its speed and its wavelength changes but its frequency remains constant. Thus, the speed of sound doesn't depend on frequency. On moon no sound wave exists because of the absence of atmosphere (medium).

Variation in the speed of sound

Effect of pressure : At the same temperature the speed of sound in gas doesn't vary with pressure.

Effect of temperature : The speed of sound is directly proportional to the square root of its absolute temperature i.e. $v \propto \sqrt{T}$.

More appropriately as at 0°C the speed of sound is 332 m/sec and if at $t^{\circ}\text{C}$ speed be v , then $v = 332 + 0.61t$. Obviously, for every 1°C increase in temperature the speed of sound increases by 0.61 m/sec .

Effect of humidity : The density of dry air is more than that of moist air. Thus, in moist air value of the speed of sound is more than in dry air. This is the reason why in rainy season the siren of the train is heard sharply up to a far distance than in summer season.

Effect of the speed of the medium : If the medium is speeded up then the speed of sound increases in the same direction and decreases in the opposite direction.

4. Characteristics of musical sound

Musical notes differ from each other in the respect of at least one of the three properties, namely— Intensity, Pitch and Quality. These three are called characteristics of a musical sound. A musical sound is bound to differ from another musical sound in at least one of these three properties and hence they provide a means to distinguish one musical note from another.

Intensity and Loudness : The intensity of a musical sound is defined as the rate of flow of energy per unit area of a plane perpendicular to the direction of wave propagation. The SI unit of intensity is Joule/sec-meter² or watt/meter².

The intensity of a simple harmonic wave is given by

$$I = 2\pi^2 v^2 a^2 \rho v.$$

where; a = amplitude of the wave

ρ = density of the medium

v = frequency of the wave

v = wave speed

Obviously, the intensity of the musical sound is proportional to the square of the amplitude of the wave, the density of the medium, the square of the frequency of the wave, and wave speed. Apart from these the intensity of the musical sound varies inversely as the square distance of the source and varies directly to the elasticity of the medium. This intensity also depends on the size of the source and a larger source has larger intensity and vice-versa.

In fact intensity is a special feature (characteristic) of the musical sound by which feeble (weak) and loud (sharp) sounds can be identified. Though the absolute unit of intensity is watt/m² but it has no significance and another arbitrary unit is *bel* which is expressed on the logarithmic scale and it is used frequently to measure the relative intensity. This unit bel was a nobel honour to the inventor of the telephone *Graham Bel*. Generally, $\frac{1}{10}$ th of bel which is called *decibel* (db) is the most practical unit of the relative intensity.

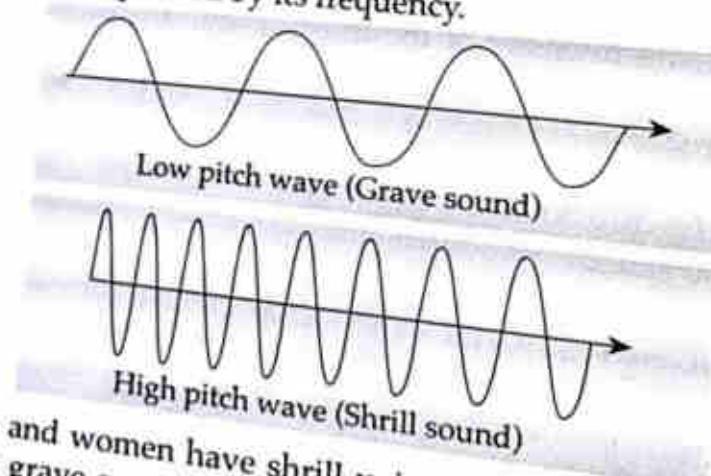
Thus, relative intensity of first relative to second on the logarithmic scale is expressed as $10 \log_{10} \frac{I_1}{I_2}$ decibel (db). The standard intensity level selected for expressing the relative intensity is 10^{-12} W/m^2 .

Loudness is the sensation produced in the human ears and it is something that is not absolute and it varies from person to person although loudness depends upon the intensity. Thus intensity is the physical cause of the loudness. The unit of loudness is phon which is assumed to be the counterpart of the decibel (db).

Source of sound	Intensity (db)	Source of sound	Intensity (db)
Whisper	15-20	Press	100-105
Ordinary conversation	40-60	Archestra	100-110
Loud speaker	70-80	Rocket	160-170
Hot discussion	70-80	Missile	180-190
Heavy motor vehicle, motor bike	90-95	Siren	190-200

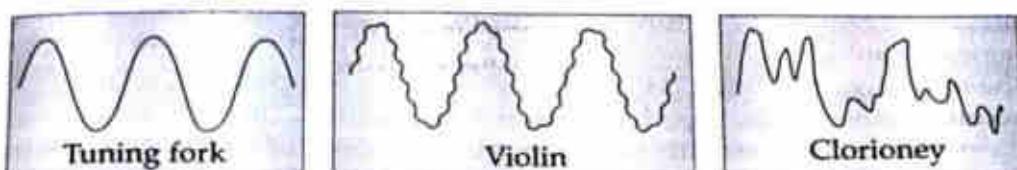
For a sound sleeping man, 50 db sound is sufficient to wake him up. To dwell in the noise of 80 db is harmful and 90 db sound has its maximum limit to dare and if such noise be continued everyday 10 hours then the man would become deaf. World Health Organisation (WHO) has recommended 45 db sound good for the human ears, the sound of more than 75 db is assumed to be dangerous and the sound of 150 db can make human beings abnormal (mad).

Pitch and Frequency: The pitch of a musical note is that physical cause which distinguishes a shrill note from a grave note of the same intensity and coming from the same instrument. Thus the degree of shrillness of a musical note is its pitch. The pitch of a note emitted by a source depends upon its frequency of vibration. The greater the frequency of vibration of a source, higher the pitch of the note emitted and vice-versa. That's why the pitch of a note is expressed by its frequency.



Children and women have shrill voice sound due to higher value of pitch but the grave sound of the man is due to low pitch. The horrified voice of lions have lesser pitch than that of mosquitoes. This shows that grave and shrill sounds are indicators of low and high pitches which has been displayed in the above diagram (graphical representation).

Quality or Timber : Quality or timber is a third feature of a musical note which distinguishes between two notes of the same intensity and pitch but produces two different musical instruments. The quality or timber of a note is appeared due to presence of different harmonics. The presence of harmonics affect the form of the wave emitted by the musical instrument.



The harmonics present do not affect the frequency of the fundamental tone, but they simply reshape the form of the fundamental wave as shown in the diagram. On account of the different shaping of the wave form by the harmonics, the quality of different notes becomes different. Due to the difference in the quality we identify and detect the voices of well known persons.

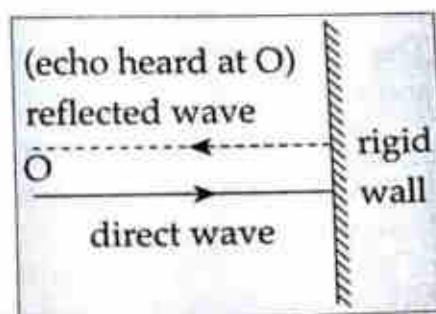
5. Properties of sound wave and some acoustical applications.

(i) **Reflection of sound wave :** Like light wave, sound wave also returns to its original medium after incidence on any rigid surface and it is called reflection of sound wave. When reflection takes place from a rigid wall there is no change in the nature of the wave i.e. compression remains compression and rarefaction remains rarefaction. But when the reflection takes place on the open end of a pipe (organ pipe), then the nature of the wave changes i.e. compression changes into rarefaction and vice-versa. Due to a longer wavelength the sound wave reflects at large surface than light wave. In our daily life there are so many examples of sound wave reflection like reflected sound from walls, mountains, rivers, vallies etc.

(a) **Echo :** Echo is a natural phenomenon of reflection of sound and it is simply the repetition of a sound wave produced by the reflection from an obstacle like rigid wall, tower or mountain. The essential conditions for the formation of an echo is that the interval between the arrivals of the direct wave and the reflected wave must be at least $\frac{1}{10}$ th of a second (0.1 sec) because a human ear cannot distinguish between two sounds arriving within $\frac{1}{10}$ th of a second. Thus the minimum distance to hear (listen) an echo distinctly would be 16.6m (approx. 17m). Since speed of sound (v) = 332 ms⁻¹ in air at NTP, time interval (t) = 0.1 sec.

$$\Rightarrow \text{required distance } (x) = \frac{vt}{2} = \frac{332 \times 0.1}{2} = 16.6\text{m}$$

With the help of echo the depth of sea, the depth of wells, the altitudes of flying aircrafts etc. are measured. With the help of SONAR (Sound Navigation And Ranging) and producing (by the use of) ultrasonics we measure the sea-depth.



No mechanical wave can be produced on the moon due to the absence of the atmosphere. Also due to lack of an elastic medium, sound (longitudinal mechanical wave) cannot be produced. Thus no echo (reflected sound wave) can exist (be produced) on the moon.

(b) Reverberation : When the programmes of music, speech or concerts etc. are organized in lecture halls, cinema houses or auditoriums then a series of multiple reflections takes place from the walls, roofs and floors of the respective buildings. If the source of sound is stopped then up to a few seconds these music, speech or concerts are audible. This continuation of the original sound intensity level above the threshold of audibility is due to the multiple reflection of the source. Here, if source of sound is cut off then it is called reverberation and the time up to which this sound is sustained is called the time of reverberation.

The time of reverberation depends on various factors like material of the absorber, area of the absorbing material, volume of the building (like lecture hall, auditorium) etc.

Here, for the evaluation of reverberation time, Sabine gave a law as

$$T = 0.171 \frac{V}{A} = 0.171 \frac{V}{as} \text{ (SI unit), called Sabine's law.}$$

where, V = volume of the hall

and, $A = as$

where, a = absorption coeff.

s = area of the absorbing material.

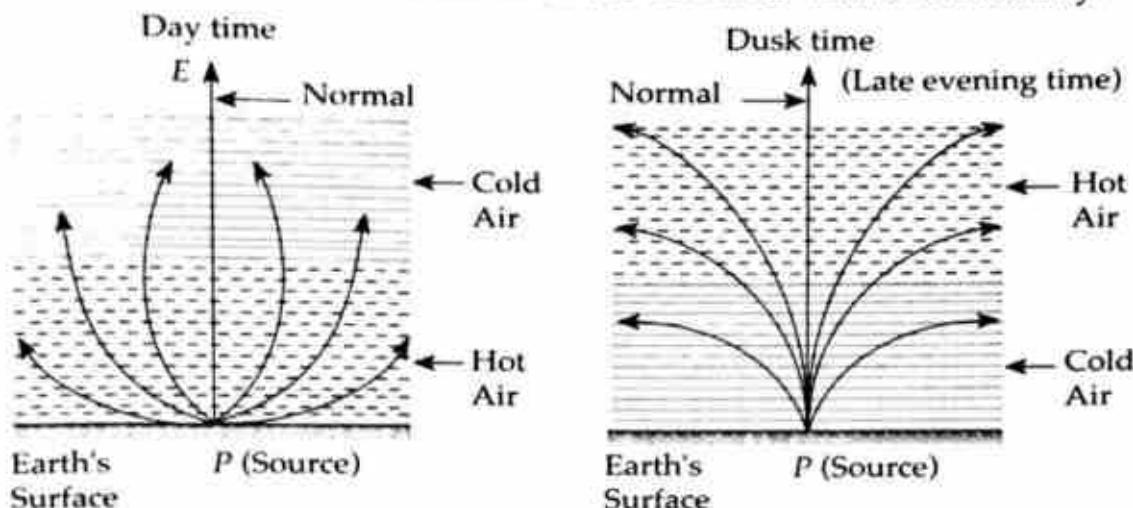
Thus, time of reverberation can be balanced (accommodated) by increasing or decreasing the area of the absorbing material. To sustain the reverberation in the lecture hall or auditorium the walls are made rough or they are covered by porous screens through which some sound is absorbed and original sound becomes clearly (distinctively) audible. The carpet of the floor is also utilised as sound absorber. Due to the reflection of sound *thunder in the cloud* appears.

The fitness of lecture halls, cinema houses, auditorium etc. for music, speech, concerts etc. depends largely on their design and construction. If the construction is such that there is uniformity in rendering of speeches, music, concerts etc. then these are said to be acoustically good, but if not they are said to be acoustically bad. There are two chief parameters echos and reverberation for the bad acoustics of the buildings.

(ii) Refraction of Sound : When a sound wave moves from one mechanical (elastic) medium to another mechanical (elastic) medium, the wave is refracted or transmitted. This phenomenon is called refraction and the refracted wave is deviated from the original path of the incident wave. The main reason for occurrence of refraction in sound is different speeds of sound in different medium at different temperatures.

The best example of refraction of sound or a natural consequence of acoustic (sound) refraction is the appearance of temperature gradient (variation of temperature due to variation of depth in different medium) near the surface of the earth. It is frequently observed that human voices are more clearly heard at dusk (in the late evening) than during day time. In the day time, the

temperature of air is maximum near the ground surface and it diminishes upwards. Thus, the speed of sound is the largest near the surface of the earth ($v \propto \sqrt{T}$) and decreases upwards. So a ray of sound diverging upwards from a source on (or near) the earth's surface is refracted continuously towards the normal and hence less sound reaches the observer. At dusk the situation is just the opposite. Now, a ray diverging upwards from a source on (or near) the surface of the earth is refracted continuously away from the normal. Now, it is totally reflected when it begins to travel downwards with a continuous refraction to reach the observer towards vertically.



(iii) Free Vibration : When a body, which is capable of vibrating is displaced from its position of rest and then is left to vibrate itself, it will vibrate with its own time period or frequency. Such vibrations of the body are called its free vibrations, provided it is free from all type of resisting force, external or internal. Example - the prong of a tuning fork, the stretched string of a sonometer etc. are vibrations capable bodies. When these bodies are disturbed from their position of rest they vibrate and these vibrations are said to be free vibrations, and these are not resisted by frictional forces such as air resistance, viscosity or any other frictional forces etc.

Though vibrations of such bodies are free from the external forces namely air resistance, they are not free from internal frictional forces namely viscous force. In the course of vibrations, the different layers of the prong move relatively to one another and due to this relative motion between the layers a force comes into play which tries to diminish the relative motion. This force is called viscous force or internal frictional force. In practice vibrations of a body are resisted by some kind of frictional force and hence resisted vibrations are the natural vibrations. The frequency of free vibrations of a body is called its natural frequency.

(iv) Forced vibrations : Resonance : If a body can vibrate freely then due to resisting forces the natural frequency of the body starts to decay and thus an external periodic force is needed. A tussle starts between the frequency of the external force and the natural frequency of the body and ultimately the frequency of the external periodic force predominates and through this frequency the body vibrates which is called forced vibration.

But a unique situation arises when the frequency of the external periodic force becomes equal to the natural frequency of body of the free vibration. This is called *resonance*. Thus at resonance natural frequency of the body is equal to the frequency of the external periodic force.

Example : An 1939 Takoma bridge of USA was destroyed due to a mechanical resonance. The fast moving air confined to the outer surface across of the bridge had the same frequency as that of natural frequency of the bridge, consequently the phenomenon of resonance occurred. When military men move across any bridge in troops, then under precautionary measure the condition of resonance is said be avoided by walking troops in such a way that their feet do not fall in the same order.

A transistor (radio) is also tuned (switched on) by means of resonance. The frequency or wavelength of a particular radio station is made adjustable and a particular frequency is tuned by the same frequency on the antenna.

(v) **Superposition of waves :** From a physical point of view it is necessary that when two or more than two waves meet in a medium a resultant wave must be formed. The basic necessity is called superposition principle of waves. The principle states that the resultant displacement due to a number of waves at any point in a medium is the vector sum of the displacements produced by the component waves. If $\vec{y}_1, \vec{y}_2, \vec{y}_3, \dots$ be the instantaneous displacements produced by the component waves at a given point (place), then the resultant displacement (wave) at the same point by the superposition principle will be given by

$$\vec{y} = \vec{y}_1 + \vec{y}_2 + \vec{y}_3 + \dots$$

In sound (acoustic) interference, beats and stationary waves are the direct outcome of this principle.

(a) **Interference in Sound :** Interference is the phenomenon of sustained cancellation or reinforcement of two waves, when they meet under certain specific conditions. When the effect of one wave is constantly neutralised by the other, the two waves are said to interfere destructively (destructive interference) and when their effects are reinforced they are said to interfere constructively (constructive interference). As usual Interference is a basic characteristic of the wave.

In sound when two sound waves trains meet at a point of a medium under certain suitable conditions stated below, then these two either interfere destructively producing a permanent *silence* or interfere constructively producing a permanent *anti-silence*.

Although total energy is conserved in the interference, here sound energy is transferred from the regions of *silence* to the regions of *anti-silence*.

(b) **Beats :** When two sound waves of the same amplitude but slightly different frequencies (not more than 16 Hz) travel along the same line, the loudness of the resultant sound wave formed by their superposition, fluctuates (varies) periodically and alternately which gives rise to a peak

the external
y of the free
frequency of
d due to a
ter surface
frequency
red. When
autionary
troops in

sonance.
djustable
antena.
ew it is
edium a
position
ent due
1 of the
be the
given
int by

re the

ained
rtain
lised
tive
fere
asic

um
ere
ely

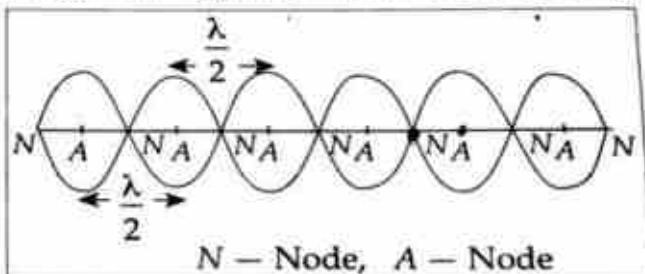
id
ti-

y
z
t
(

value with a waxing noise and then fading out with a waning noise. This phenomenon of waxing and waning in the loudness of the resultant wave is known as *beats*. Thus, the beats are formed due to the superposition of waves. Interferences and beats both occur due to the superposition of waves and these are concerned with the variation of the intensity of the wave. Interference is the phenomenon of sustained destruction or reinforcement of two identical waves and there is a spatial distribution of silence (destructive interference) and *anti-silence* (constructive interference) but in beats *silence* and anti-silence occur periodically at the same place, so it is also called *interference in time*. In producing interference the two interfering waves must be essentially coherent (having constant phase) but in producing beats any two sources can be taken.

(c) Stationary waves (standing waves)

When two identical progressive waves (waves having the same amplitude and frequency) travelling in the opposite directions meet along the same line with the same velocity, then the result of the superposition of such waves in the formation of a system of waves which alternately appear and disappear in the region where the two waves meet without advancing in either direction is called stationary (standing) waves.



In the formation of a stationary wave, the space confined has two types of points. The first is Node where no displacement takes place and another is Anti-node where maximum displacement occurs. The distance between two consecutive Nodes or Anti-nodes is $\frac{\lambda}{2}$; where λ is the wavelength of the waves undergoing for superposition.

(vi) Diffraction of sound : When sound waves originate by a vibrating source they spread in the medium and if the medium is homogeneous and isotropic (have uniform density), then these waves have spherical wavefronts from the point source. Far from the source the wavefronts are nearly planes and the shape of the wavefront is changed when the wave meets an obstacle or an opening in its path. This leads to bending of the wave around the edges. Such bending of waves from an obstacle or an opening is called diffraction.

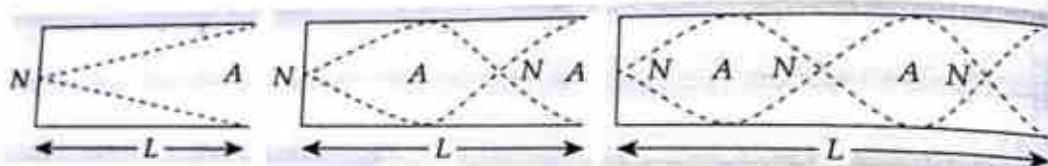
Diffraction is a characteristic property of the wave and all kinds of waves undergo diffraction. The effect of diffraction is appreciable when the dimensions of the obstacles are comparable or smaller than the wavelength of the wave. If the obstacle is large compared to the wavelength, the diffraction effect is almost negligible.

Example : The wavelength of the sound wave is approx. 1 meter and of the same order as the doors and windows of our houses. That's why sound wave is diffracted broadly and one person easily hears the voice of the other.

(vii) **Vibration of air columns and organ pipes :** Just as a string is used as a source of sound in various musical instruments, the vibration of air is used as source of sound in so many musical instruments like in chlorinet, sahnai, bansuri, organ pipe etc. A tuning fork is used as an exciter of vibrations in air and simultaneously performs two works— firstly it throws the air particles inside the pipe (open or closed) due to which forced vibrations are produced in the form disturbances which appear as a progressive wave and then a produced reflected wave is produced which interferes and forms a stationary wave.

It is observed that when a pulse of compressions through the tuning fork is incident on the closed end of a closed pipe, then the reflected wave appears as a pulse of compressions and similarly a pulse of rarefactions appears as a pulse of rarefactions. But in the open pipe a pulse of compressions is reflected as a pulse of rarefactions and vice-versa. Thus, in an open pipe compressions and rarefactions change into each other. Thus incident wave and reflected wave change their phase by π .

Closed organ pipe



In an organ pipe the closed end is essentially a *Node* and the open end is *Anti node*. The fundamental mode of vibration occurs when there is a Node at the closed end and an Anti node at the open end. As in the formation of a stationary wave, the distance between two adjacent Nodes or Anti nodes is $\frac{\lambda}{2}$. Thus, the distance between a Node and an Anti node = $\frac{\lambda}{4}$. $\Rightarrow L = \frac{\lambda}{4}$

The frequency of the fundamental mode is also called *first harmonic*.

$$\therefore n_1 = \frac{v}{\lambda} = \frac{v}{4L} = \text{fundamental frequency.} \quad (\because L = \frac{\lambda}{4} \Rightarrow \lambda = 4L)$$

But $v = \sqrt{\frac{E}{d}}$ where; E = Bulk modulus

$$\Rightarrow n_1 = \frac{1}{4L} \sqrt{\frac{E}{d}} \quad \text{where; } L = \text{length of the pipe}$$

Similarly, for the second mode of vibration, the frequency is called second harmonic or third overtone.

$$\text{Here, } v = n_2 \lambda \text{ i.e. } n_2 = \frac{v}{\lambda} \quad (\because L = \frac{\lambda}{2} + \frac{\lambda}{4} = \frac{3\lambda}{4})$$

$$\Rightarrow n_2 = \frac{3}{4L} \sqrt{\frac{E}{d}} = 3n_1$$

Similarly, for the third mode of vibration; $v = n_3 \lambda$ ie., $n_3 = \frac{v}{\lambda}$

$$\Rightarrow n_3 = \frac{1}{\lambda} \sqrt{\frac{E}{d}} = \frac{5}{4L} \sqrt{\frac{E}{d}} \quad (\because L = \frac{\lambda}{2} + \frac{\lambda}{2} + \frac{\lambda}{4} = \frac{5\lambda}{4})$$

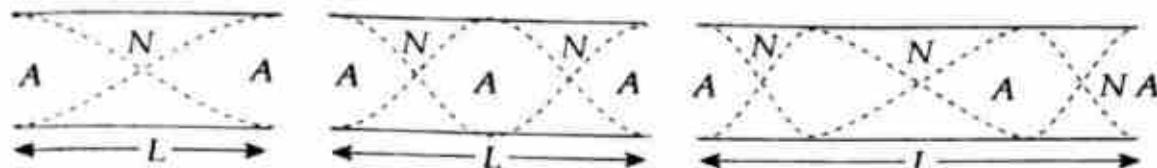
$$\Rightarrow n_3 \sim \frac{5}{4L} \sqrt{\frac{E}{d}} = 5n_1$$

Here, frequency is called third harmonic or fifth overtones.

Thus, $n_1 : n_2 : n_3 : \dots = 1 : 3 : 5 : \dots$

Thus, possible tones of a closed pipe have frequencies in the ratio of odd integers. Notes emitted by the air column in a closed pipe have only alternate overtones and hence poor harmonics.

Open organ pipe



When the air column is contained in an open pipe, the two ends are essentially Anti nodes and then it is said to be in the fundamental mode of vibration of the air column.

$$\text{Obviously, } L = \frac{\lambda}{2}, \text{ and } v = n_1 \lambda \\ \Rightarrow n_1 = \frac{v}{2L} = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{E}{d}} \quad (\because v = \sqrt{\frac{E}{d}})$$

This is the fundamental frequency or first harmonic. Similarly frequency of second mode or second harmonic or first overtone

$$= n_2 = 2 \frac{v}{2L} = 2 \frac{1}{2L} \sqrt{\frac{E}{d}} = 2n_1$$

and frequency of third mode or third harmonic or second overtone

$$= n_3 = 3 \frac{v}{2L} = 3 \frac{1}{2L} \sqrt{\frac{E}{d}} = 3n_1$$

Thus, $n_1 : n_2 : n_3 : \dots = 1 : 2 : 3 : \dots$

Thereby it can be concluded that the possible tones of an open pipe have frequencies in the ratio of natural numbers. The note emitted by the air column in an open pipe will have the full series of overtones and hence it is very rich in harmonics. That's why the quality of a note emitted by an open pipe is always better and sweeter than that of a closed pipe.

6. Doppler's effect in sound

When there is a relative motion between an observer and a source, then the pitch of the note emitted by the source appears to be changed to the observer. This apparent change in pitch due to a relative motion between the observer and the source and also sometimes due to motion of the medium is called Doppler's effect in sound (acoustical Doppler's effect).

Actually Doppler firstly observed this effect in light waves. Thus, the optical Doppler's effect in fact firstly propounded the spectral lines of certain stars which were found to be shifted towards the red or violet end of the spectrum from their normal position by a very small distance. For the red and violet end stars recede from the earth and approach to the earth respectively. Doppler's effect is also a basic characteristic of the wave and it is to be found in all types of wave.

66

The acoustical (sound) Doppler's effect can be observed from a railway platform when a whistling locomotive engine passes the platform at a very high speed. Before passing the platform the pitch of the whistling appears higher and after passing the platform, its pitch appears lower.

The formula derived for Doppler's effect in sound is—

Apparent pitch or frequency (n')

$$= \frac{\text{relative velocity of the observer with respect to velocity of sound}}{\text{relative velocity of the source with respect to velocity of sound}} \times \text{Actual pitch or frequency}$$

$$\text{Thus, } n' = \frac{v \pm v_o}{v \pm v_s} \times n$$

where, n' = apparent pitch or frequency.

n = actual pitch or frequency.

v = velocity of sound.

v_o = velocity of the observer.

v_s = velocity of the source.

Sonic booms, Shock waves and Mach-number :

When the velocity of a source exceeds the phase velocity of a sound wave, then Doppler's effect fails and it has no meaning. There are many instances in which, source moves through a medium at a velocity greater than the velocity of sound. A jet plane, a ballistic missile moves through the air at a velocity greater than the velocity of sound. In such cases the wavefront takes the shape of a cone with moving object at its apex. The Jet plane or the supersonic plane sends a cracking sound called *sonic boom* which can crack glass dishes, window panes and even damage buildings. The wave originated due to sonic boom is called *shock wave*. The spherical wavefront intersect over the surface of the cone with the apex at the source. Because of constructive interference of a large number of waves arriving at the same instant on the surface of the cone, pressure waves of very large amplitude are sent with a conical wave front. Such waves are shock waves.

Here, we can write $\sin \theta = \frac{v}{v_s}$

where, v = velocity of sound

v_s = velocity of source.



In aerodynamics, this ratio $\left(\frac{v}{v_s}\right)$ is called *Mach-Number*.

If $\text{Mach-Number } \left(\frac{v}{v_s}\right) > 1$, the velocity of the source like jet plane

(supersonic plane) is called *Supersonic*.

If $\text{Mach-Number } \left(\frac{v}{v_s}\right) > 5$, then the velocity of the source is called *Hypersonic*.

III. Thermal Physics (Heat & Thermodynamics)

1. Heat & Temperature

The degree of hotness or coldness of a body is called its temperature and thus temperature is an indicator of the thermal stage of the body. Due to different temperatures of two bodies thermal energy transfers from the body having higher temperature to the body of lower temperature and at a particular temperature the process of energy transfer stops and now both bodies are said to be in *thermal equilibrium*. This thermal energy due to which the existence of the temperature in the body appears is called *heat*. In other words, heat is a type of energy by which mechanical work can be done. This was firstly detected by Rumford. Later, Davy confirmed this fact after rubbing two pieces of ice on melting. As no source of heat is available in the melting of the two pieces thus frictional forces came into existence due to the rubbing, which produce heat energy and consequently the two ice pieces melt. Later by Joule's experiment it was observed that heat is a form of energy by which various works can be performed. Joule also asserted that heat and mechanical work are inter-transferable to each other and the ratio of mechanical work and heat energy by which work is done is a fixed ratio called mechanical equivalent of heat and basically it is a conversion unit. If a mechanical work W is produced by an amount of heat H then

$$\begin{aligned} J &= W/H \text{ or } W = JH, \text{ where; } J = \text{mechanical equivalent of heat.} \\ &= 4186 \text{ Joule/kilo cal.} \\ &= 4.186 \text{ Joule/cal.} \\ &= 4.186 \times 10^7 \text{ erg/cal.} \end{aligned}$$

This implies that if work of 4.186 Joule is done then 1 kilo cal. heat would be produced.

Effect of heat :

(a) **Physical changes** : By the application of heat or thermal energy the physical structure of a body like its shape-size, volume, temperature and its state changes.

(i) **Change in Temperature** : Ordinarily temperature of a body increases with increase in heat or on supplying thermal energy to it.

(ii) **Change in Volume** : Ordinarily with increase in heat or thermal energy the volume of the body increases.

(iii) **Change of state** : Usually there are three states of matter— solid, liquid and gas and these states exist due to the difference of temperature thereby due to heat. Thus, change of state takes place due to heat.

(iv) **Others changes** : On heating a body its shape, size, electrical resistance, the ability to dissolve solute in the solvent etc. change drastically.

(b) **Chemical changes** : On heating a substance some changes occur permanently. One can observe free oxygen released on heating potassium chlorate with manganese dioxide.

Units of Heat : The SI unit of heat is Joule and in C.G.S. its unit is calorie.

Calorie : The amount of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 g water by 1°C is called calorie.

International calorie : The amount of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 g water by 1°C (from 14.5°C to 15.5°C) is called International calorie.

British Thermal Unit (B.Th.U.) : The amount of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 pound water by 1°F is called 1 B.Th.U.

Relation among different units :

$$\begin{aligned} 1 \text{ B.Th.U.} &= 252 \text{ cal.} \\ 1 \text{ cal.} &= 4.186 \text{ Joule} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 1 \text{ Joule} &= 0.24 \text{ cal.} \\ 1 \text{ kilo cal.} &= 4.186 \times 10^3 \text{ Joule} = 1000 \text{ cal.} \end{aligned}$$

Thermometry : The branch of thermal physics in which temperature is measured by various devices like thermometers, thermocouple, total radiation pyrometer etc is called thermometry.

All thermometers operate on the single principle by use of the substance whose volume expansion is directly dependent on the temperature. The thermometers are of various types which are fabricated and designed for the different means and purposes.

Thermometers are of many types—Liquid thermometer (based on the expansion of volume of the liquid by increase in temperature.), Gas thermometer (expansion in volume of the gas with increase in temperature), platinum resistance thermometer etc.

Liquid thermometer : In liquid thermometers mercury or alcohol is mainly used. Alcohol is used in those liquid thermometers which measure the temperature of below -40°C . The freezing point of alcohol is -115°C so alcohol thermometer doesn't work below -115°C . The freezing and boiling points of the mercury are -39°C and 357°C respectively. Thus, mercury thermometer is fabricated and designed to remain operational from 30°C to 350°C .

Clinical thermometer : To measure the temperature of the human body a suitable thermometer has been fabricated and designed on Fahrenheit scale and it is called clinical thermometer. Since the temperature of the human body varies in very short span, thus in clinical thermometers lower fixed point is kept at 95°F (35°C) and upper fixed point at 110°F (43°C).

Gas thermometer : Constant volume hydrogen gas thermometer is a standard gas thermometer from which every other gaseous thermometers are fabricated. The temperature upto 500°C can be measured through it and if hydrogen is replaced by nitrogen then temperature up to 1500°C can be measured.

Platinum resistance thermometer : This thermometer is constructed on the basis that the resistance of a metal increases quite uniformly with the rise of temperature. The great advantage of this thermometer is that it measures very wide temperature ranges from -200°C to 1200°C . The value of the temperature measured by platinum thermometer is so consistent, precise and accurate that this thermometer can be used to standardise the other thermometers.

The platinum resistance thermometer has a large thermal capacity and the protecting tube has low thermal conductivity so this thermometer doesn't attain the temperature of the bath quickly in which it is immersed.

Thus, this thermometer has an excessive time lag. Further, some time is also lost in balancing the bridge. That's why this thermometer is not suitable for measuring rapidly varying temperatures.

Thermo-couple : This is a special type of temperature measuring device in which two junctions are constructed by different metals—one junction is hot and another is cold and due to thermoelectric effect temperature is measured and this effect is called Seebeck's effect.

In 1923 Seebeck discovered that when two dissimilar metals are joined to form a closed circuit and a difference of temperature is established between their junctions, an e.m.f. is developed and hence an electric current flows through the circuit. The e.m.f. so produced is called thermoelectric e.m.f. and the phenomenon is called Seebeck effect. Such an arrangement of connecting two dissimilar metals together is called a thermo-couple. The magnitude of thermo-electric e.m.f. depends upon the nature of two metals and on the temperature difference of their junctions.

At a particular temperature of hot junction thermo-e.m.f. becomes maximum. This temperature of the junction (at which e.m.f. in thermo-couple is maximum) is called *neutral temperature* T_n for the thermo-couple.

Neutral temperature is constant for a given pair of metals forming the thermo-couple. If the temperature of hot junction is raised further, the thermo e.m.f. decreases and becomes zero at a particular temperature which is called *temperature of inversion* T_i . Beyond inversion temperature T_i , thermo e.m.f. again increases but in reverse direction. Temperature of inversion is too much above than neutral temperature as the temperature of cold junction is below to it. Thus, inversion temperature is not constant for a given thermo-couple, but depends on the temperature of cold junction. Here, a relation between neutral temperature and inversion temperature is given by,

$$T_i - T_n = T_n - T_c \Rightarrow T_n = \frac{T_i + T_c}{2}$$

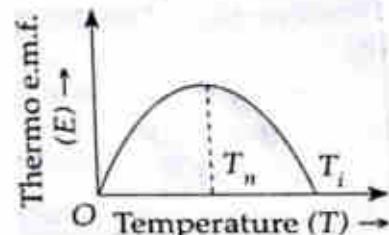
where, T_i = temperature of inversion.

T_n = neutral temperature.

T_c = temperature of cold junction.

Thermo e.m.f. in the circuit varies with temperature of hot junction is graphically obtained which is a parabolic curve given by a relation $E = AT + BT^2$ (a parabola). Here, cold junction is kept at 0°C , while A , B are constant and t is the temperature of hot junction.

Total radiation pyrometer : This is also a temperature measuring device through which the temperature of bodies like stars, sun etc. (which have very high order temperatures) are measured which are far away from us. Thus, radiation pyrometer is a device through which by the estimation of radiation without touching the bodies, temperatures are measured. Total



to raise the
International
uired to raise

1000 cal.
emperature
ouple, total

substance
ature. The
signed for

based on
ire.), Gas
erature),

cohol is
measure
 15°C so
boiling
mercury
n 30°C

body
itscale
uman
fixed

r is a
eters
t and
in be

cted
vith
at it
due
ent,
the

ity
ter
d.

radiation pyrometer operates on the principle of Stefan's law and according to which heat radiation emitted per second per unit area is proportional to the fourth power of the absolute temperature. The body having temperature less than 800°C doesn't emit a suitable (detective) radiation and that's why through the total radiation pyrometer the temperature of only those bodies are measured which have a temperature of more than 800°C.

Various scales of temperature measurement : In the construction of thermometers two fixed points are selected on various scales in which there is a maximum point called Upper Fixed Point (U.F.P.) and there is a minimum point called Lower Fixed Point (L.F.P.). There are various scales like Celsius (or centigrade), Fahrenheit, Reaumur, Kelvin and Rankin.

Generally; the freezing point of ice is taken as L.F.P. and the boiling point of pure water at 76 cm of Hg is taken as U.F.P. The difference between the U.F.P and L.F.P. is called Fundamental difference or Interval (F.I.)

For any thermometer;

Reading - L.F.P.

$\frac{\text{Reading} - \text{L.F.P.}}{\text{U.F.P.} - \text{L.F.P.}}$ = a constant

$$\text{Thus, } \frac{C - 0}{100 - 0} = \frac{F - 32}{212 - 32} = \frac{R - 0}{80 - 0} = \frac{K - 273}{373 - 273} = \frac{R_n - 492}{672 - 492}$$

$$\text{or, } \frac{C}{100} = \frac{F - 32}{180} = \frac{R}{80} = \frac{K - 273}{100} = \frac{R_n - 492}{180}$$

Absolute zero : Theoretically there is no limit of maximum temperature but there is a limit or restriction on the minimum temperature. The lowermost temperature is -273.15°C and it is called *absolute temperature*.

On Kelvin scale absolute temperature is expressed as 0 K and it is the required temperature on which molecular motion of the body is ceased.

$$\text{Thus, } 0\text{ K} = -273.15^{\circ}\text{C} \Rightarrow 273.15\text{ K} = 0^{\circ}\text{C}$$

$$\Rightarrow 0^{\circ}\text{C} = 273.15\text{ K}$$

$$K = (273.15 + {}^{\circ}\text{C})$$

It is a convention in Physics (which is strictly followed) that the temperature of the kelvin scale is never represented in degree.

Some temperature on various scales :

Temperature	Celsius (${}^{\circ}\text{C}$)	Fahrenheit (${}^{\circ}\text{F}$)	Kelvin (K)
Freezing of water	0°C	32°F	273 K
Normal temperature of the room	27°C	80.6°F	300 K
Normal temperature of the human body	37°C	98.6°F	310 K
Boiling point of water	100°C	212°F	373 K

2. Thermal expansion of solids, liquids and gases

Ordinarily the volume of a substance increases with the supply of heat (thermal energy) resulting from the increase of intermolecular distances in the substance. But there are some exceptions also for instance, in water volume contracts on increasing its temperature from 0°C to 4°C . Similarly in Silver Iodide (AgI) volume contracts on increasing the temperature if it has temperature between 80°C to 140°C . On supplying heat expansion occurs in all solids, liquids and gases, but gases expand more than liquids and liquids expand more than solids.

Expansion of solids : Usually if any solid body is heated, it expands in length, breadth and thickness and if the expansion, in length is only substantial then it is called linear expansion but if both length and breadth expand substantially it is called superficial expansion and ultimately if the length, breadth and thickness all expand, then it is called volume expansion (cubical expansion).

Coefficient of linear expansion—It is defined as increase in per degree celsius temperature with unit length of the body and it is represented by α .

Thus, coefficient of linear expansion

$$= \frac{\text{increase in length}}{\text{original length} \times \text{increase in temp.}} \Rightarrow \alpha = \frac{\Delta L}{L \times \Delta \theta}$$

Coefficient of linear expansion is represented by α and its unit is per degree celsius.

Coefficient of superficial expansion : It is defined as increase in per degree celsius temperature with increase in unit area of the body and it is represented by β .

Thus, coefficient of superficial expansion

$$= \frac{\text{increase in area}}{\text{original area} \times \text{increase in temp.}} \Rightarrow \beta = \frac{\Delta s}{s \times \Delta \theta}$$

Coefficient of cubical expansion—It is defined as increase in per degree celsius temperature with increase in unit volume of the body and it is represented by γ .

Thus, coefficient of cubical expansion

$$= \frac{\text{increase in volume}}{\text{original volume} \times \text{increase in temp.}} \Rightarrow \gamma = \frac{\Delta V}{V \times \Delta \theta}$$

Here, it is observed that $\beta = 2\alpha$ and $\gamma = 3\alpha$

Thus, $\alpha : \beta : \gamma = 1 : 2 : 3$

Application related to expansion of solids :

(i) Railway tracks are constructed from iron and steel and these are made adjustable to sustain tremendous load and the thermal expansion. That's why some free space is left at the joints of two such tracks.

(ii) If we pour or keep hot water inside a thick glass (jar) then the inside surface of the jar suffers thermal expansion while outer surface of the jar remains unaffected due to its thickness that's why glass jars crack.

and according
proportional to
temperature
that's why
those bodies

construction of
which there
a minimum
like Celsius

the boiling

E.P. F.I.

${}^{\circ}\text{C}$ 100

${}^{\circ}\text{F}$ 180

R 80

K 100

R_n 180

ature
most

is the
d.



Today good quality glass jars are constructed through pyrex glass whose thermal expansion is negligible and jars can be protected from cracking.

(iii) As time period of a pendulum clock is given by $T = 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{l}{g}}$, from

its time period obviously depends on the length of the pendulum. In summer the length of a pendulum increases, so its time period increases and consequently the pendulum clock slows down. But in winter the length of the pendulum contracts so the time period decreases and pendulum clock oscillates fast. Today pendulum clocks are constructed through those metallic bodies which have negligible thermal expansion and contraction.

Expansion of liquids: As there is no shape of liquids like solids, liquids are always kept in a container (vessel). So linear expansion and superficial expansions in liquids have no relevancy and significance. So cubical expansion (volume expansion) in the liquids has only the appropriate meaning. As soon as heat (thermal energy) is supplied the liquid starts to expand but along with it, its container (vessel) also starts to expand. Actually up to what extent liquid originally expands it doesn't perceive and its expansion is slightly less than the original because some thermal energy is used up in expanding the container.

This shows that there are two types of thermal expansions one is apparent and the other is real. Thereby coefficient of apparent volume expansion (γ_a)

$$= \frac{\text{apparent increase in volume}}{\text{original volume} \times \text{change in temp.}}$$

and coeff. of real volume expansion (γ_r)

$$= \frac{\text{real increase in volume}}{\text{original volume} \times \text{change in temp.}}$$

Thus, if γ_g be the coeff. of volume expansion of the glass the vessel (container) then, γ_r (coeff. of real volume exp.)

$$= \gamma_a (\text{coeff. of apparent volume exp.})$$

$$+ \gamma_g (\text{coeff. of volume expansion of glass})$$

The density of substance is defined as the ratio of the mass of the substance and its volume. As the volume of a substance increases on heating, its density would correspondingly decrease, its mass being constant. But this effect is negligible for solids and prevails in liquids because change in volume in solids are very small.

Anomalous expansion in water: Ordinarily the volume of most liquids increases with supply of heat (thermal energy) while its density decreases. But the behaviour of water is just opposite. If water at 0°C is to be heated up to 4°C , its volume decreases and density increases. At 4°C the volume of water is minimum and its density is maximum but with increase in temperature water behaves like an ordinary liquid. Thus if water of 4°C is to be heated further then its volume increases and density decreases. This is called anomalous expansion of water. There are so many incidents of anomalous expansion of water in our aquatic life. In the winter season

specially in cold regions when atmospheric temperature falls, the upper layer of the water of the lakes and ponds are frozen and consequently density increases while the lower layer of the water is comparatively warmer and this process continues until the total volume of water attains the temperature of 4°C . If the atmospheric temperature falls more sharply, the density of the outer layer of water starts to diminish due to the anomalous expansion of water. Consequently the outer layer is remained frozen at 0°C and the lower layer of the water is in liquid state of 4°C . That's why in the lower layer of the water of the lakes and ponds the fishes and others aquatic organisms live. Due to the anomalous expansion of water the water pipes in the cold regions burst (crack). Since at 0°C water freezes and on transforming it into the ice its volume increases which bursts the tanks (pipes).

Expansion of gases : Gases are the most active substances which take part in thermal expansion. On supplying heat to the gases not only their temperature increase but the pressure and volume also change under the suitable condition. Boyle's law, Charle's law etc. were derived from these conditions.

Boyle's law - $pV = \text{a constant (at constant temperature)}$.

Charle's law - $\frac{V}{T} = \text{a constant (at constant pressure)}$.

Boyle's and Charle's law together give gas equation.

$$\frac{PV}{T} = \text{a constant, called gas constant (R)}$$

$$= 8.31 \text{ joule/mole-kelvin.}$$

Calorimetry : The branch of thermal physics in which heat is measured by the principle of heat lost and heat gained is called calorimetry and the apparatus used for the purpose is called calorimeter. The calorimeter is made of copper. The principle of calorimetry states that the total heat lost is equal to the total heat gained and this is based upon energy conservation principle.

The heat lost or gained by a body depends on the mass of the body and on the rise or fall in its temperature.

Thus; $\Delta Q = ms\Delta\theta$.

where; s is a constant called specific heat capacity of the body

m = mass, $\Delta\theta$ = rise or fall in temperature.

Specific heat capacity : This is defined as the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 kg of a substance through 1 K thus

$$\Delta Q = ms\Delta\theta \Rightarrow s = \frac{\Delta Q}{m\Delta\theta}$$

If $m = 1 \text{ kg}$ and $\Delta\theta = 1 \text{ kelvin}$ then $s = \Delta Q$

S.I. unit of specific heat capacity is $\text{J kg}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1}$ and in CGS it is cal. $\text{gm}^{-1} \text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}^{-1}$.

Thermal capacity : It is defined as the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of a given amount of a substance through 1 kelvin, thus thermal capacity = ms Joule/kelvin or cal. ${}^{\circ}\text{C}^{-1}$.

glass whose
in cracking.
from
pendulum. In
increases
er the length
pendulum
rough those
contraction.
ds, liquids
superficial
cubical
ppropriate
nd starts
expand.
ive and
energy

one is
olume

ssel

e

1

:

Substance	Sp. heat (cal./gm°C)	Substance	Sp. heat (cal./gm°C)
Lead	0.03	Water	1
Brass	0.09	Ice	0.50
Iron	0.11	Alcohol	0.60
Carbon	0.17	Tarpin	0.42
Silica (sand)	0.20	Magnesium	0.25
Aluminium	0.21	Zinc	0.092

Specific heat capacities and Molar heat capacities of the gases

On supplying a substantial amount of thermal energy to gases the temperature of the gases increase and both volume and pressure change along with it. Thus, it can also be interpreted as the temperature variation with pressure at constant volume and the temperature variation with volume at constant pressure. That's why gases have two specific heat capacities—one at constant pressure indicated by C_p and another at constant volume indicated by C_v . Here it is also observed that specific heat at constant pressure is greater than specific heat at constant volume.

Specific heat capacity at constant pressure (C_p): The amount of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 kg mass of a gas through 1 K at constant pressure is called specific heat capacity of the gas at constant pressure (C_p).

Specific heat capacity at constant volume (C_v): The amount of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 kg mass of a gas through 1 K at constant volume is called specific heat capacity of the gas at constant volume (C_v).

Molar heat capacity at constant pressure (C_p): The amount of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 mole (gm-molecule) of a gas through 1 K at constant pressure is called molar heat capacity at constant pressure (C_p).

Molarheatcapacityatconstantvolume(C_v): The amount of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 mole (gm-molecule) of a gas through 1 K at constant volume is called molar heat capacity at constant volume (C_v).

Relation between C_p and C_v :

(i) C_p is greater than C_v and Mayer established a relation; $C_p - C_v = R$, called Mayer's relation.

Here R is called gas constant and its value $= 1.99 \approx 2 \text{ cal/mole-K}$
 $= 8.31 \text{ Joule/mole-K}$

(ii) $\frac{C_p}{C_v} = \gamma$ = ratio of specific heat capacities.

Water equivalent: This is quantity of water in kg which will require the same amount of heat to raise its temperature through 1 K as it is required by the body when heated through the same temperature. Thus, its unit is gm or kg.

If m be the mass of a body in kg and s be the specific heat in SI unit, then water equivalent of the body $= W = \frac{ms}{4200}$

1./gm°C

Obviously; water equivalent (in gm) and thermal capacity (in cal./°C) are numerically equal.

Latent heat of fusion : The latent heat of fusion of a substance is defined as the quantity of heat required to convert 1 kg of the substance from solid to liquid state without change of temperature at its melting point. It is expressed in cal/gm in CGS unit and in Joule/kg in SI unit.

Thus, $Q = mL$

where, Q = heat required

m = mass of the substance (solid)

L = Latent heat of fusion.

Latent heat of ice (latent heat of fusion of ice) = 80 cal/gm

$$= \frac{80 \times 4.2}{10^{-3}} \text{ Joule/kg.}$$

$$= 336 \times 10^3 \text{ J/kg}$$

Latent heat of vaporisation : The latent heat of vaporisation of a substance is defined as the quantity of heat required to convert 1 kg of the substance from liquid to vapour state without change of temperature at its boiling point. It is also expressed in cal/gm in CGS unit and in Joule/kg in SI unit.

Thus, $Q = mL$,

where, Q = heat required

m = mass of the substance (liquid)

L = latent heat of vaporisation

Latent heat of water (latent heat of vaporisation of water)

$$= 536 \text{ cal/gm} = \frac{536 \times 4.2}{10^{-3}} \text{ J/kg} = 2250 \times 10^3 \text{ J/kg}$$

Change of state of matter: A substance can be found only in three states of matter— solid, liquid and gas. If a certain amount of thermal energy be supplied to the solid state then at a particular temperature (melting point of the solid) it is converted into liquid and this thermal energy is latent heat of fusion and conversely if such energy be withdrawn from the liquid it would be transformed back into the solid state. Similarly the liquid is converted into the gas (vapour) at a particular temperature (boiling point of the liquid) and the thermal energy supplied is latent heat of vapourisation. Conversely by withdrawing required thermal energy, the gas could be again transformed back into the liquid state.

✓ Steam at 100°C is hotter than water at 100°C though water is boiling. This is strange but true because boiling water has only thermal energy whereas steam has thermal energy plus latent heat of vaporisation. Because of this steam is more painful than boiling water.

Most metals are found to be in solid state but mercury (Hg) exceptionally is the only metal found in liquid state.

Melting point of a solid : A constant temperature at which a solid is transformed into liquid by the supplied heat energy of latent heat of fusion is called its melting point (m.p.).

Effect of pressure : When a solid melts, there may be an increase or decrease in volume with the application of pressure. The melting point of certain solids like wax and sulphur increases with increase in pressure, while the melting point of certain solids like ice, gallium and bismuth decreases with increase in pressure. Thus, ice will melt at a temperature lower than 0°C when the pressure is higher than that of the normal pressure.

Effect of Impurity : Normally the m.p. of solid decreases more sharply on mixing impurity. Example- If some salts or perfumes are added to ice of 0°C then its melting point decreases upto -22°C .

Freezing point : At a fixed temperature the transformation of a liquid into the solid by lowering the temperature or withdrawing the thermal energy (latent heat of fusion) is called freezing point. The freezing point coincides with the melting point of the solid.

Boiling point of a liquid : A constant temperature at which a liquid is transformed into gas (vapour) by the supplied heat energy of latent heat of vaporisation is called boiling point (b.p.).

Effect of pressure : When a liquid boils i.e. changes from liquid to gas there is an increase in its volume. Thus the boiling point of a liquid rises with increase in pressure and vice-versa. Thus a liquid will boil at lower temperature under reduced pressure. Hence; water will boil at a temperature lower than 100°C when the pressure applied is less than normal pressure.

Effect of Impurity : On mixing the impurity boiling point of the liquid increases.

Condensation point : At a constant temperature the transformation of vapour into the liquid is called condensation point and usually the condensation point and boiling point of the liquid coincides.

Difference between vapour and gas : If the liquid boils at a particular temperature (b.p) then after a few seconds latter latent heat of vaporisation generates the vapour. But a few seconds latter vapour increases its temperature which is called critical temperature (T_c) above which vapour is called gas.

3. Transmission of heat

Due to substantial temperature difference the heat is transferred from one place to another in a substance then it is called transmission of heat. There are three processes (modes) of the transmission of heat—

- (i) **Conduction** (ii) **Convection** and (iii) **Radiation**.

(i) Conduction : By the process of conduction heat is transferred from one place to another by the particles vibrations of the substance but these particles do not leave their occupied position. In fact when a substance is being heated then the molecules (particles) start to vibrate rapidly (vigorously) and this kinetic energy of vibration of the particles is transferred which appears as heat energy and it is called the phenomena of thermal conduction. In solid, heat is transmitted by the process of thermal conduction only but this process

is not relevant and significant in liquid and gas. The process of transmission of heat in the substance is called thermal conductivity. The rate of thermal (heat) energy transmitted through the substance (conductor) depends on various parameters like area of cross section, temperature difference between the faces of the substance and the thickness of the substance and it is given as— the rate of thermal energy transmitted = $\left(\frac{Q}{t}\right) = \frac{k A \Delta\theta}{\Delta t}$

where k is a proportionality constant called coefficient of thermal conductivity whose value is different for different substance (conductor) and depends on its material.

A = area of cross-section

$\Delta\theta$ = difference in temperature

Δt = thickness

Δt = change in time

Also here, $\frac{\Delta\theta}{\Delta t}$ is called temperature gradient

On the basis of thermal conductivity the substances are classified in the following types—

(a) **Good conductor** : The substances through which heat is transmitted very easily and conveniently are called good conductors or conductors. Most of the metallic solids are good conductors.

Examples : Metals, acidic water, human body etc. are good conductors.

(b) **Bad Conductor** : The substances through which heat is not transmitted easily and conveniently and a little amount of heat transfers are called bad conductors. Examples— Wood, fiber, glass, rubber, air etc. are bad conductors.

(c) **Thermal Insulator** : The substances through which heat is not transmitted by any means (methods) are called thermal insulators. In fact bad conductors are sometimes synonymously used as thermal insulators. Thus, we can say bad conductors are good insulators. In garments and cloths air is trapped which provides a good insulating characteristic.

Examples— Abonite, asbestos etc are insulators.

(ii) **Convection** : In the process of convection heat is transmitted in the substance by transfer of molecules (particles) of the substance and thus a current due to the molecules transfer is generated which is called convectional current.

In liquid and gas heat is transmitted by the process of convection and as molecules of solid are not free to move, so heat cannot be transmitted in solid by the process of convection. Whenever a liquid or a gas is heated, the molecules (particles) of these substances become lightened and move upwards and then cooler molecules settle downwards and heated. Now a convectional current is formed and heat is transmitted throughout in the liquid or gas. The atmosphere of our earth is heated by the process of convection.

increase or
ng point of
sure, while
decreases
ower than
.

re sharply
d to ice of

a liquid
thermal
g point

liquid is
heat of

to gas
i rises
lower
ature
sure.
quid

tion
the

ar
on
ts
ur

n
t.

(iii) **Radiation**: In the process of radiation there is no need of any medium for the transmission of heat, while in conduction and convection a medium is necessarily needed. In fact thermal radiation is an electromagnetic wave which can transmit even in vacuum. Thus we can say that in the process of radiation thermal energy transmits anywhere without interfering with and heating the medium through which it passes. We obtain heat (thermal energy) from the sun by the process of radiation on the earth's surface. Thus, thermal radiations (simply radiation) are the electromagnetic waves which on being absorbed by the certain bodies manifest themselves as heated. But there are also other electromagnetic waves that stimulate the sensation of vision and these are called luminous radiations, while those producing chemical changes are called actinic radiations.

Difference between thermal radiation and light radiation : Thermal radiation (heat radiation) and light radiation (optical radiation) both have the same form of radiant energy and the difference between them is a difference of frequency or wavelength, but not of kind.

Sources of thermal radiations : Any hot body maintained at a constant temperature may serve as a source of thermal radiations. The earliest source of thermal radiations suitable for simple experiments on radiation is a leslie cube which is simply a hollow cube of metal blackened on one side with lamp-soot. When the boiling water is poured into it, radiations are emitted from blackened surface. But now at present two special devices have been designed by Fery and Wien's black bodies which are usually used as the source of thermal radiations. The ideas of these radiations came from the concept of black body and the theoretical fact is that the quality of radiations inside a uniformly heated enclosure is exactly the same as that of black body radiations (radiations from a hot black body).

Black body : A perfectly black body is one which absorbs completely all the radiations of whatever wavelength incident upon it. Since it neither reflects nor transmits any radiation, it appears black whatever the colour of the incident radiation may be. If a black body is placed inside a uniform temperature enclosure, it will absorb the full radiation of the enclosure. The quantity and quality of the radiation inside a uniform temperature enclosure is not affected by the presence of any body inside it, the black body will emit the full radiation of the enclosure on attaining equilibrium temperature with it. Thus, the radiation emitted by a black body is also the full radiation consisting of all possible wavelength.

But there is no surface available in practice which will absorb all the radiation falling upon it. Even the lamp-blacked surface which is assumed to be a perfectly black body and which absorbs practically all the visible and infra-red radiations, reflect the far infra-red radiation.

Emissive power and Absorptive power : The emissive power of a body at a given temperature and for a given wavelength is defined as the radiant energy emitted per second per unit surface area of the body per unit wavelength range. It is symbolically represented by e_{λ} .

The absorptive power of a body at a given temperature and for a given wavelength is defined as the ratio of the radiant energy absorbed per second by the surface of the body to the total energy falling per second on the same area. It is symbolically represented by a_λ .

Kirchhoff's law: It states that the ratio of emissive power to absorptive power for a radiation of a given wavelength is the same for all the bodies at the same temperature and it is equal to the emissive power of a perfectly black body at that temperature.

$$\text{Thus } \frac{\text{emissive power of any body } (e_\lambda)}{\text{absorptive power of that body } (a_\lambda)}$$

$$= \text{emissive power of black body at the same temperature } (E_\lambda).$$

This law also concludes that if a body absorbs radiation of a particular wavelength strongly, it also emits the same radiations strongly. Thus, the alternate statement of Kirchhoff's law is *good absorbers are good emitters*.

Red glass appears red because from the thermal radiation incidents upon it red colour is totally reflected and other colours are absorbed. If the red colour from the white light is withdrawn, then this would seem to appear green. That's why when a red glass is heated for a long time, it appears green and conversely on heating a green glass it appears red.

Stefan's law: It states that the total radiant energy (E) emitted per second from unit surface area of a black body is proportional to the fourth power of its absolute temperature (T)

$$\text{Thus, } [E \propto T^4] \Rightarrow E = \sigma T^4, \quad \text{Here, } \sigma \text{ is called Stefan's constant.}$$

Boltzmann established this law theoretically from a thermodynamical consideration and hence an extended form of Stefan's law is called Stefan Boltzmann's law which is stated as below—

If a black body at an absolute temperature T is surrounded by another black body at an absolute temperature T_o , then it will lose an amount of energy σT^4 per sec per unit area and will gain an amount of energy σT_o^4 per sec per unit area from the surroundings. Hence the net loss of energy per sec per unit area of the body will be $E = \sigma(T^4 - T_o^4)$ which is called Stefan-Boltzmann's law.

Newton's law of cooling : It states that the rate of loss of heat energy of any hot body by the process of thermal radiation is proportional to the difference between the mean temperature and the surroundings.

$$\text{Thus the rate of heat energy lost } \left(\frac{Q}{t} \right) = k \left(\frac{\theta_1 + \theta_2}{2} - \theta_0 \right)$$

where, k = a proportionality constant

θ_1, θ_2 = two temperatures of small time interval.

θ_0 = temperature of the surrounding.

t = time

It is observed that if a hot body loses its heat energy in such a way that its temperature falls from 70°C to 60°C in particular time t min, then it will take more than t min. in the temperature falling from 60°C to 50°C . By the process of radiation the heat energy lost not only depends upon the temperature difference of the body and the surroundings, but also on the nature of the surface of the body and its surface area.

For a small temperature difference of the body and surroundings, Newton's law of cooling becomes just an approximation of Stefan Boltzmann's law of radiation.

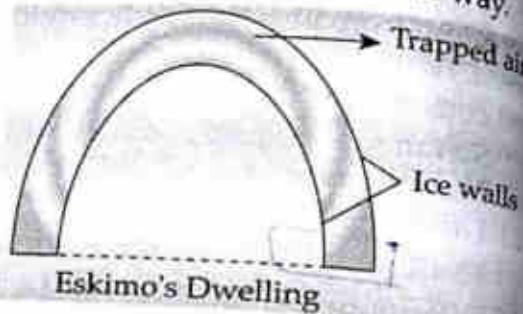
Utilities and Applications of transmission of heat in our daily life

(A) Utilities and Applications of conduction

(i) When we touch a piece of iron and wood placed in the same room, we feel iron to be colder than the wood. The reason behind it is good conduction of heat by the iron in comparison to the piece of the wood.

Our body temperature (normally 37°C) is generally greater than that of the room. When we touch an iron piece, heat is rapidly conducted from the hand (hotter body) to the iron but wood being a bad conductor conducts very little amount of heat. So we lose more heat by touching iron than wood. That's why an iron piece appears colder. But when both are kept in the open sky under the sun, then on touching the iron piece it appears hotter than the wooden piece. This can also be explained exactly in the similar way.

(ii) Eskimos live in the houses of double walls of ice as shown in the figure. Such houses keep people warmer and comfortable because air molecules are being trapped between the ice walls of the house which is bad conductor of heat.



(iii) To drink tea in a metallic cup is painful than to drink tea in a ceramic or fiber cup. The simple reason behind it is that heat from the tea goes into the metallic cup which becomes hot and ones lips have painful and bitter experience due to good conduction of heat. But due to bad conduction of heat, in ceramic or fiber cup heat doesn't travel from tea to the cups and does not warm.

(B) Utilities and Applications of convection

(i) Ventilation : The ventilation of a room is the process of expulsion of warm and impure air and induction of cold and fresh air into the room. For proper ventilation an outlet is necessary near the top of the room and an inlet near the bottom of the room. The hot and impure air being lighter escapes from the top outlet and fresh air enters into the room through the inlet at the bottom of the room.

(ii) Chimney : Smoke issuing from chimneys is a common phenomenon and in a chimney the process of convection occurs. Hot air and smoke being lighter move up through the chimney while the cold and heavier air is continuously drawn inside the bottom. Thus, a convective current is set up. In the tall chimney the difference in the density of air between the top and the bottom is large. Narrow chimneys are being preferable to wide ones because they can prevent downward currents of air more effectively.

(iii) Winds and breezes : Trade winds, land breeze and sea breeze are natural consequences of convection. The equatorial belt of the earth is hotter than other regions. Air of this belt thus becomes lighter and rises up. Cold

surroundings
on of Stefan.

ily life

me room, we
conduction

than that of
d from the
conducts
an wood.
the open
etter than
r way.

pped air

walls

hind
and
heat.
avel

on
m.
id
er
e

air from North and South rushes to take up the place of the hot air. Due to the rotation of the earth from West to East, this natural air current actually flows from the North-East direction in the northern hemisphere and from South-West direction in the southern hemisphere. These are called trade winds.

Land is a better absorber of heat and has a higher thermometric conductivity than water. Consequently land attains a higher temperature during the day time in comparison to the water. Air over land becomes lighter and rises up. Cold air from seas, oceans or lakes rushes to the land. This is called sea-breeze.

As a body which is a good absorber of heat is also a good radiator of heat, so in night the temperature over land goes on falling down much earlier than that over the water. Air over water being hotter rises up and cold air from land flows into the sea. This is called land breeze.

(iv) To fillup inert gases inside the electric bulbs : To avoid the burning of the filaments of the electric bulbs which are made of tungsten (high atomic wt. and high m.p.) the bulb is evacuated (creation of vacuum). Also to avoid the melting of filaments in the bulb some inert gases like argon or krypton are filled up and thus thermal radiations generated by filaments form a convectional current inside the bulb and a tremendous quantity of thermal energy produced doesn't melt the filament.

(C) Utilities and applications of radiation

(i) Cloudy night of winter is warmer than that of night of free and clear sky : In the night of free and clear sky the thermal energy (thermal radiation) produced from the earth's surface goes upwards uninterruptedly into the space through the sky. But during cloudy nights these radiations do not go into the space as the cloud is a bad conductor of heat which prevents these radiations get reflected back and our surrounding becomes warmer.

(ii) In desert area day is too hot and night is too cold : Since sand (silica) is a good absorber of thermal radiations and by Kirchhoff's law a good absorber of heat is also a good emitter (radiator). During the day the sand absorbs the thermal radiations from the sun and so day becomes too hot but at night all such radiations are emitted thus night becomes too cold.

(iii) Outer layers of a tea container (jar) are made bright : The bright layer neither permits inner thermal energy to go out nor absorbs or accepts outer thermal energy (radiation). It simply reflects and thus the container remains hot a longer time.

Prevost's theory of heat exchange : The most basic and fundamental concept about the radiation process was propounded by Prevost at Geneva in 1792. Before this theory it was assumed that there are two types of radiations - hot and cold. Cold bodies emit cold radiations and hot bodies emit hot radiations. A block of ice was supposed to emit cold radiations, because it produces a sensation of coldness and a red hot iron ball was supposed to emit hot radiations, as it produces the sensation of warmness. If this is a fact then there must be a basis to define hot and cold bodies. But we have no such basis of thinking and no scientific background. The correct explanation was given by Prevost.

Prevost asserted that all bodies, irrespective of their temperature, emit only one type of radiation and temperature is the only core factor regarding its rate of emission. At low temperature, the total emission (radiation of all wavelengths) is poor and at high temperature the emission of radiation is very high. The rise or fall of temperature, which is observed in a body is due to its exchange of radiant energy with surrounding bodies, which goes on uninterrupted in equal amount even after the attainment of thermal equilibrium. This is called Prevost's theory of heat exchange. When we stand near a fire, we have the sensation of warmth, because our body which is also a radiator receives more energy from the fire than what it loses through radiation. But when we stand near a block of ice, we feel a sensation of coldness because our body emits more radiant energy than what it receives from the ice.

By the devices pyrometers and bolometers the thermal radiations were detected earlier but at present thermopiles are the appropriate devices operated on the basis of variation of temperature with resistance of platinum wires. Thus, the temperature of the sun, stars etc. can be measured by pyrometers and bolometers.

4. Kinetic theory of gases

The theoretical analysis of the behaviour of gases was first explained by J. Bernoulli in 1738. Later, Maxwell, Boltzmann and Clausius consensusly and comprehensively gave the theory of the nature, character and behaviour of gases and propounded various models and consequently a theory was concluded which is called kinetic theory of gases. The following assumptions (postulates) were given as below—

- (i) Each and every particle of gases has identical mass and volume and these particles are called molecules.
- (ii) The molecules of the gas are in random motion and they obey Newton's laws of motion. The molecules move in all directions with all possible velocities from zero to infinity and collide constantly with each other. Collision also takes place on the walls of the container. Though the molecules are constantly having their velocities changed in magnitude and direction due to mutual collisions, yet a particular temperature and its overall distribution in volume element remains unaffected.
- (iii) The volume of the molecules is negligibly small in comparison to the volume occupied by the gas.
- (iv) The collisions are perfectly elastic and are of negligible duration. The collisions of the molecules occur to each other and with the walls of the container in which both momentum and kinetic energy remain constant. The time of the collision is negligible in comparison to the time spent in traversing the paths between two collisions.
- (v) The gas exerts pressure on the walls of the container. This pressure arises due to collisions of the molecules with the walls. As a molecule collides, it suffers a change in momentum. The rate of change of momentum is equal to the force exerted on the wall (Newton's Second law of motion). Since a large number of molecules collide frequently, they exert a steady force given

by the average rate of change of momentum. This force measured per unit area of the wall is called the 'pressure' of the gas.

The pressure exerted by the gaseous molecules on the walls of the container = $p = \frac{1}{3} \rho \bar{C}^2$
 where ρ = density of the gas
 \bar{C}^2 = mean-square speed.

5. Thermodynamics

Thermodynamics is that branch of Physics in which we are mainly concerned about the transformation of heat into mechanical work. With the advancement of time thermodynamics covers all the branches of Physics as well as Chemistry and we deal now today a relationship between the heat and energy associated with any form of energy like-electrical, mechanical, chemical etc. Thus, thermodynamics is an empirical or experimental science and the laws of thermodynamics have been developed by means of observation and experiments since long.

Thermodynamic system : A thermodynamic system is one which may interact with its surroundings in at least two distinct ways and one of these is necessarily a transfer of heat in or out of the system. The other may be some other means of transfer of energy, say by performance of mechanical work by or on the system or through electromagnetic interaction such as magnetisation.

Example: A gas contained in a cylinder, a vapour in contact with its liquid, a stretched wire, tyre containing air etc. are examples of thermodynamical system.

Thermal equilibrium : A thermodynamic system is said to be in thermal equilibrium if all parts of it are at the same temperature and this temperature is the same as that of the surroundings.

Zeroth law of thermodynamics : If two independent thermodynamical systems are in thermal equilibrium with a third thermodynamical system, then they must be in thermal equilibrium to each other. This is called Zeroth law of thermodynamics and it becomes a base for the definition of temperature. All these systems can be said to possess a characteristic to remain in thermal equilibrium and this characteristic is called temperature. Thus, we can define the temperature of a system as the property by virtue of which we determine whether the system is in thermal equilibrium or not with other neighbouring systems.

Mechanical equilibrium : For a system (thermodynamical) to be in mechanical equilibrium, there must be no unbalanced forces between different parts of the system or between the system and the surroundings.

Chemical equilibrium : For a system to be in chemical equilibrium, the composition of the system must remain fixed (constant) and system must have a definite physical configuration.

Thermodynamical equilibrium : If a thermodynamical system is in thermal equilibrium, mechanical equilibrium and chemical equilibrium then

the system is said to be in thermodynamical equilibrium. In the condition of thermodynamical equilibrium no change occurs in the state of system or in the surroundings.

Thermodynamical definition of Ideal gas (perfect gas) : An ideal gas (perfect gas) is one whose internal energy is entirely kinetic and depends on its temperature only and it is independent of its volume. This definition has been concluded from Joule's experiments which simply showed that there is no intermolecular attractions among the gaseous molecules. Thus, total internal energy is entirely kinetic and it depends upon the temperature only.

Thermodynamical definition of real gas : A real gas has intermolecular attractions among gaseous molecules and thus the internal energy is both potential and kinetic. Thermodynamically real gas is called Vanderwaal's gas whose nature, character and behaviour are determined by Vanderwaal's gas equation $(p + a/v^2)(v - b) = RT$, where a, b are called Vanderwaal's constants.

First law of thermodynamics : The first law of thermodynamics is simply the law of conservation of energy applied to the thermodynamical system. According to this law if a substantial amount of thermal energy is supplied to a thermodynamical system, then it is partially used in changing its internal energy (temperature dependent) and partially used in doing external work.

If dQ is the thermal energy supplied and dU and dW are change in internal energy and external work done respectively, then according to the First law of thermodynamics.

$$dQ = dU + dW.$$

All are expressed in same unit and it is called differential form of the First law of thermodynamics.

In thermal physics practically all mechanical works can be transformed into thermal energy (heat energy) but its converse is not true. The First Law of thermodynamics simply explains it, as equivalency of both mechanical work and quantity of heat being extracted mutually and nothing else.

Second law of thermodynamics : To extract a certain quantity of heat from a body and to convert it completely into work is permitted by the First law of thermodynamics. But in actual practice it is found to be impossible. If this was possible, we could drive ships across an ocean by extracting heat from the water of the ocean. Thus the First law simply tells that if a process takes place, energy will remain conserved. It doesn't tell us whether the process is possible or not. Similarly, if a hot body and a cold body are brought in contact, the First law is not violated whether the heat flows from hot to cold or cold to hot. But experience has shown that heat never flows from cold to hot body.

The Second law of thermodynamics explains the possibility of the thermodynamical process, its direction and its relevancy. In this regard two important statements are given :

Kelvin-Planck's statement : It is impossible to construct a device which operates in a cycle that will take heat from a body and convert it completely into the work without leaving any change anywhere.

Clausius's statement : It is impossible to construct a self acting device which operates in a cycle that will transfer heat from a cold body to a hot body without expenditure of work by an external energy source or without any aid of external agency. In other words heat cannot flow spontaneously from a colder to a hotter body.

Third law of thermodynamics : The entropy of any system at absolute zero (lowermost temperature) is a universal constant, which may be taken to be zero. This is called Third law of thermodynamics or *Nernst heat theorem*.

Here two important consequences of this law are :

- (i) Specific heat capacities of a system vanish at absolute zero.
- (ii) Coefficient of volume expansion of any substance vanishes at absolute zero.

An alternate statement of third law of thermodynamics is the unattainability of absolute zero. A fundamental feature of all cooling processes is that if the temperature achieved is lower, it is difficult to go still lower. Thus, Third law of thermodynamic can also be stated as it is impossible to reduce any system to the absolute zero by a finite number of operations by any procedure, no matter how the system is idealised.

Entropy : If a substance takes or gives up an amount of heat Q in a reversible process at constant temperature T , then $\frac{Q}{T}$ is called an increase or a decrease in the entropy of the substance. Thus change in entropy is denoted by $\Delta S = \frac{Q}{T}$. Obviously its SI unit is Joule/kelvin and its C.G.S. unit is Cal/kelvin. But the Second law of thermodynamics imposes the restriction in which only those processes are possible for a system in which entropy of the system plus surroundings always increases. Thus, on account of the processes occurring in nature the entropy of the universe is continuously increasing. That's why entropy doesn't obey the law of conservation.

Our every day experience tells us that chaos (disorder) must probably exist in nature as usual while the orderness is the least probable. Thus, in all natural processes there is a tendency to proceed towards a state of great disorder. As entropy of a system increases due to natural process taking place in the system, the degree of molecular disorder of the system also increases. Thus entropy of a system is a measurement of the degree of molecular disorder existing in the system. That's why we conclude that gas has more entropy than liquid and liquid has more than solid.

$$\text{i.e. } (\text{gas})_{\text{entropy}} > (\text{liquid})_{\text{entropy}} > (\text{solid})_{\text{entropy}}$$

Some important thermodynamical processes

(i) Cyclic process : The thermodynamical system which operates in such a way that its initial and final conditions are the same, then it is said to be in a cyclic process.

By the First law of thermodynamics

$$dQ = dU + dW = U_f - U_i + dW = dW \quad (\because U_f = U_i)$$

Thus, total thermal energy would be utilised in doing mechanical work and change in internal energy would be zero.

(ii) Quasi-Static process: A process in which a system never works more than infinitesimal (very small) from the equilibrium state and it is called a quasi-static process. Thus, the quasi-static process is an ideal process which can never be exactly obtained but can be approximated under some specific circumstances.

(iii) Reversible and Irreversible process : A reversible process is one which can be reversed in such a way that all changes taking place in the direct process are exactly repeated in the reverse order (opposite sense) and no changes are left in any of the bodies taking part in the process or in the surroundings. The conditions of reversibility are never realised in practice, hence a reversible process is only an ideal conception.

Any process which is not reversible exactly is an irreversible process. All natural processes such as conduction, radiation, radioactive decay etc. are irreversible processes. Thus, irreversibility is a rule.

(iv) Isothermal and Adiabatic process : When a thermodynamic system undergoes through a process in which its temperature remains constant, then the process is said to be isothermal. The essential condition for an isothermal process is that the system must be contained in a perfectly conducting chamber and it occurs extremely slowly in which the heat produced or absorbed during the process at once goes out or comes in from outside. Hence, temperature will remain constant but as there is no perfect conductor, so isothermal process cannot be performed exactly but can only be approximated. Ideal gas equation $PV = RT$ is directly applicable for an isothermal process.

But when a thermodynamic system undergoes a process under the condition that no heat comes into or goes out of the system, then the process is said to be adiabatic. Such process can occur when the system is perfectly insulated from the surroundings. But since no perfect insulator is available, perfect adiabatic change is impossible. Thereby, an approximate adiabatic process can be obtained (achieved). It is an extremely rapid or fast process because there is a very little time for the heat to go out or to come into the system. The equation $PV^\gamma = \text{constant}$ is directly applicable and relevant for an adiabatic process, where γ = specific heat capacities ratio of the ideal gas.

Examples : If a gas is suddenly compressed, the heat of compression is added to its internal energy and its temperature rises. That's why the bicycle pump is heated when the air in it is suddenly compressed. Similarly, if a gas is suddenly expanded, then the external work done during it against the surroundings draws energy (equivalent to the work done) from its internal energy and its temperature falls. When a motor tyre bursts, the sudden expansion of air into the atmosphere is an adiabatic process in which the tyre is cooled down. As in an adiabatic process no heat exchange takes place.

so entropy also remains constant. That's why the adiabatic process is also called isentropic (constant entropy) process.

To prepare dry ice (solid CO_2) carbon dioxide is suddenly expanded and consequently it converts into ice, called dry ice.

On shaking a thermos containing tea becomes warm, because on shaking the existing viscous forces among various layers of the tea do external works and these works are transformed into thermal energy. So its internal energy increases and consequently the temperature rises.

(v) **Isobaric and Isochoric process** : A thermodynamic process taking place at constant pressure is called an isobaric process.

Example—The boiling of water to steam or the freezing of water to ice taking place at a constant pressure (also at constant temperature) are isobaric processes.

A thermodynamic process taking place at constant volume is called isochoric process. Obviously, in such a process the work done on or by the process is zero ($dW = 0$).

Thus, in an isochoric process, the heat added to (or taken from) the system only increases or decreases the internal energy of the system.

If an ideal gas is assumed to be a thermodynamic system, then work done by the gas or on the gas are different for different processes and which can be compared as given below;

$W_{\text{Isobaric}} > W_{\text{Isothermal}} > W_{\text{Adiabatic}} > W_{\text{Isochoric}}$ → Thermal Expansion.

$W_{\text{Isochoric}} > W_{\text{Adiabatic}} > W_{\text{Isothermal}} > W_{\text{Isobaric}}$ → Thermal Compression

Miscellaneous topics

(I) Cooling process (Mechanism)

(a) **Evaporation (Vaporisation)** : From the outer surface of any liquid at any temperature slowly and steadily the transformation of liquid into vapour is called *evaporation*. In the process of evaporation (vaporisation) the heat energy is supplied by the inner molecules of the liquid and when a sufficient heat energy is acquired by the molecules of outer surface then these molecules start to detach from the liquid. Thus, vapour is formed and along with themselves molecules have lower heat energy and ultimately temperature falls. Thus evaporation is a process of obtaining the cooling from the liquid. The evaporation depends on various factors like amount of vapour present in atmosphere, the area of the liquid surface, the temperature of the liquid etc. If the water vapour present in the atmosphere is large then the rate of evaporation is least and vice-versa. That's why in summer wet clothes are dehydrated soon and made dry in short interval of time, while in rainy season the process of drying takes a longer time. In summer, surahi (water container made of ceramic) by the evaporation process lowers the temperature and water becomes cool. If the body temperature of a man/women due to suffering of a severe fever becomes extremely high then on keeping the wetted cloth on his/her forehead such high temperature can be lowered down through the process of evaporation.

A room/hall or any closed space (region) cannot be cooled down by opening the door of the refrigerator but ultimately it will be warmed up. As the refrigerator removes heat from its interior and expels it into the surrounding air, it ultimately warms up the room/hall or closed space. The refrigerator also produces cooling by the process of evaporation. In the process of refrigeration the liquid freon is filled up in the vapoured coil of copper and by the process of evaporation cooling is achieved.

(b) **Adiabatic Demagnetisation** : At present by the mechanical process the lowest temperature is obtained by the method of adiabatic demagnetisation. When a paramagnetic substance is magnetised, its molecules are set in the direction of the magnetising field. The necessary work done in this process is added to the internal energy of the substance which suffers a rise in temperature. If the substance is allowed to cool and then demagnetised under an adiabatic condition, the molecules return to their original random distribution and there is a corresponding fall in temperature. This effect is too much pronounced at a very low temperature.

Giauque and McDougall used gadolinium sulphate (a paramagnetic salt) and a magnetic field of 8000 Gauss in order to obtain the temperature of 0.25 K.

(c) **Joule-Thomson (Joule-kelvin) effect** : Joule and Thomson experimentally observed that when a gas under constant pressure is forced through an insulated porous plug (compressed porous material like cotton-wool or silk fibres) to a region of lower constant pressure, its pressure changes. This is called *Joule-Thomson effect*. All gases when pass through the porous plug, suffer a change in temperature and this temperature change is directly proportional to the pressure difference of two sides of the plug. At ordinary temperature all gases, except hydrogen and helium, suffer a fall in temperature (cooling effect), while hydrogen and helium suffer a slight rise in temperature (heating effect).

The temperature of inversion ($T_i = \frac{2a}{Rb}$) is characteristic of the particular gas and below this temperature cooling is observed, while above it heating is observed and at the inversion temperature neither heating nor cooling takes place.

The inversion temperatures for H_2 and He are $-80^\circ C$ and $-240^\circ C$, hence these gases show heating effects at ordinary temperature. If the initial temperatures of H_2 , He is brought below $-80^\circ C$ and $-240^\circ C$ these gases will also show cooling effect.

(d) **Adiabatic expansion** : If a compressed gas is suddenly released to the atmosphere, then it does an external work against the molecular attractions. Since the expansion is sudden and no appreciable amount of heat flows into it from the surroundings, the external work is drawn from the internal energy of the gas itself which therefore cools. Thus, in adiabatic expansion the cooling is mainly due to the external work done.

Four processes are common to achieve the cooling and the chronological order of the processes of these cooling are; adiabatic expansion, evaporation, Joule-Thomson effect and adiabatic demagnetisation in their increasing order.

$$\text{i.e. } (\text{adi. demag.})_{\text{cooling}} > (\text{Joule-Thomson})_{\text{cooling}} > (\text{evaporation})_{\text{cooling}} \\ > (\text{adi. expan})_{\text{cooling}}$$

(II) (a) **Humidity** : The amount of water vapour present in the atmosphere is called **humidity**. The amount of water vapour in atmospheric air is different for different places. Generally, the amount of water vapour near the sea-level is large thus, humidity is also large. In rainy season usually humidity is found to be more.

(b) **Relative humidity** : The relative humidity is the ratio of the amount of water vapour in the air of a given volume at a particular temperature to the required water vapour in air to saturate the same volume at the same temperature.

$$\text{Thus, relative humidity} = \frac{\text{The water vapour in air of any volume at any temperature}}{\text{The water vapour required of the same volume at the same temperature}}$$

The relative humidity is measured by a device called *Hygrometer*. On increasing temperature relative humidity is increased.

Saturated vapour : If at a given temperature air absorbs a definite amount of water vapour, then at this state air is said to be in the state of saturated water vapour.

(c) **Air-conditioning** : The climate of any place on the earth's surface is determined by various parameters like temperature, relative humidity, the wind flowing direction etc. Usually for a hygienic and comfortable climate the following conditions should be fulfilled.

- (i) The temperature should lie between 23°C to 25°C .
- (ii) The relative humidity should lie between 60% to 64%.
- (iii) The speed of wind should lie between 0.0125 m/sec to 0.01417 m/sec.

Such climate usually doesn't exist naturally specially in the urban areas. Thus it is prepared artificially and on this principle air-conditioning operates.

IV. Light

1. Nature and Speed of Light

Light: Light is an external cause due to which any object becomes visible for human eye. For the illumination or visibility of an object light incidents upon it (up to $1/6$ th second). Then after reflection it comes to the eye and then the object is seen. At present light is defined in the form of an energy which transmits (propagates) as an electromagnetic wave and whose energy is confined in the form of a small packet called photon.

Dual nature of light : In early time it was believed that light consists of a stream of corpuscles, emitted by various light sources travels outward from the sources in straight lines. This was the idea of Newton's Corpuscular theory. The corpuscles directly penetrate through the transparent materials

but reflect back from the surfaces of opaque materials. When they (corpuscles) enter the eye, they cause the sense of illumination.

But during the middle of 17th century the idea of light as a wave was perceived. Huygens in 1670 showed that the laws of reflection and refraction could be explained on the basis of wave theory. But it was objected that if the light exhibits the wave motion, then one should be able to expose it around the corners, as waves can bend around the obstacles in their path. It is well known that the wavelengths of light waves are so small that on the bending, which actually takes place is so small that it is not ordinarily observed. In fact, the bending of light waves around the edges of an object (a phenomenon called diffraction) was noted by Grimaldi before 1663 and interpreted by Hooke in 1665 in terms of wave picture, but its significance was not recognized at that time.

After 1827 the experiments of Young and Fresnel on the interference and the measurement of the velocity of light in liquids by Foucault demonstrated the phenomenon which could not be correctly explained by the corpuscular theory, and it could be explained only by the wave theory. Young's experiments enabled him to measure the wavelength of the waves and Fresnel showed that the rectilinear propagation of light as well as the diffraction observed by Grimaldi and others, could be explained if light is assumed to be waves of shorter wavelength.

The next forward step in the theory of light was taken by Maxwell who showed theoretically that an oscillating electrical circuit radiates electromagnetic waves propagating with the velocity of light. Approximately fifteen years later, Hertz succeeded in producing short-wavelength waves of electromagnetic origin and showed that they possessed all the properties of light waves like reflection, refraction, polarisation etc. Thus, Maxwell's electromagnetic theory of light was experimentally verified. But unfortunately the phenomenon of photoelectric effect (the ejection of electrons from a metallic conductor by the incident of light on its surface), Compton's effect, Raman effect etc. couldn't be explained on the basis of wave theory. Einstein explained these on the basis of Plank's quantum theory.

At present the dual nature of light (both as a wave and a particle) is acceptable. The phenomenon of propagation of light may best be explained by the electromagnetic wave theory, while the interaction of light with matter in the process of emission and absorption is a corpuscular phenomenon.

Speed of light : Firstly Romer (an astronomer) obtained the value of the speed of light with the help of motion of the satellite of the planet (Jupiter). In different media the speeds of light are different and it depends upon the refractive index of the medium. The medium which has larger refractive index has smaller speed of light.

The refractive index or index of refraction (μ) =
$$\frac{\text{speed of light in vacuum}}{\text{speed of light in medium}}$$

The speed of light is maximum in vacuum and it is 3×10^8 meter/sec. (1,86,310 mile/sec or 2,99,776 km/sec). In any denser medium the speed of light is always smaller than that of vacuum. In air the value of the speed of light is 0.03% lesser than the value of the speed of vacuum, in water it is smaller than 25% and in glass it is lesser than 35%.

Values of the speeds of light in various media

Medium	Speed of light (m/s)	Medium	Speed of light (m/s)
Vacuum	3×10^8	Glass	2×10^8
Water	2.25×10^8	Rock salt	1.96×10^8
Oil of tarpin	2.04×10^8	Nylon	1.96×10^8

Light from the sun reaches the earth's surface in 8 minutes 19 seconds and the reflected light from the moon takes 1.28 seconds to reach the earth's surface.

Rectilinear propagation of light: In an isotropical (having same density) materialistic medium the rays of light move in straight line. This is called rectilinear propagation of light. The formation of various types of shadows, the formation of image through a pin hole camera, occurrence of solar and lunar eclipses etc. are the examples of rectilinear propagation of light.

Miscellaneous

(i) Firstly Newton asserted that light is made of micro particles or corpuscles and it moves in a straight line. Newton also speculated that white light is made of all the seven colours.

(ii) Huygens propounded the wave theory of light. Which asserted that light can be displayed in the form of waves.

(iii) Young propounded the theory of Interference of light. Young's experiment was the base of the verification and confirmation of wave theory for the physicists.

(iv) Maxwell propounded the theory of electromagnetism in 1864. According to Maxwell the oscillating electric and magnetic fields generate an electromagnetic wave perpendicular to each other and its direction of propagation is perpendicular to each electric and magnetic field. This theory was verified by Hertz and later on commercial level too much work was done by Marconi in this regard.

(v) Max. Planck in 1900 gave the famous quantum theory by the help of an equation $E = hv$, where h is called Planck's constant and v is the frequency of emitted photon. He also explained that the energy in the electromagnetic wave is quantized and appears discretely in the form of packet called quantum and this energy is confined in the form of a pocket called photon. This concept became the origin of Quantum mechanics later.

(vi) Einstein on the basis of a comprehensive observation and speculation in 1905 declared that the light is quantized and the energy is divided into a small group called quanta and the corpuscle of the light is called photon.

Sources of light: The sun, stars and other celestial bodies in our universe are the natural sources of light. In stellar or solar system, hydrogen atoms regularly transform themselves into helium and tremendous amount of solar energy or stellar energy is produced.

Apart of such energy is received by our earth's surface. The sun is

energy equivalent relation ($E = mc^2$), the rate of mass decay is $4 \times 10^9 \text{ kg/sec}$. It is predicted that our sun will supply its energy upto approximately one thousand crores years. There are some artificial sources of light like electric bulbs, matches, candles etc.

Shadow : When an opaque body (body through which light rays are obstructed on passing) is placed in the front of a source of light, then behind the opaque body a black or dark region appears which is called shadow. The formation of shadows depends on the types of source of light. If the source of light is a point source, then the shadow formed is called *umbra* while for an extended source of light is called *penumbra*.

Pin hole camera : In it a rectangular wooden box whose inner walls are painted black and a pointed hole is made in the front wall of the box and rear wall has a cover of rubbed glass or a piece of oily paper are taken. Whenever an object is kept in front of a camera then an inverted image is formed near the rear wall of the box. If more than one pointed hole is made in the front wall, then a number of inverted images are formed which are equal to the number of holes.

This also proves the rectilinear propagation of light. The size of image depends on the distance between the pointed hole and screen and the distance between the object and the pointed hole. If on behalf of the screen the photographic plate is taken, a distinct and decent (perfect) image is formed.

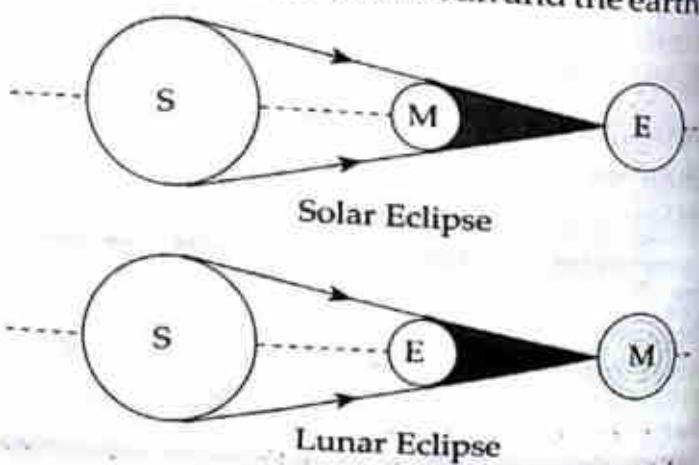
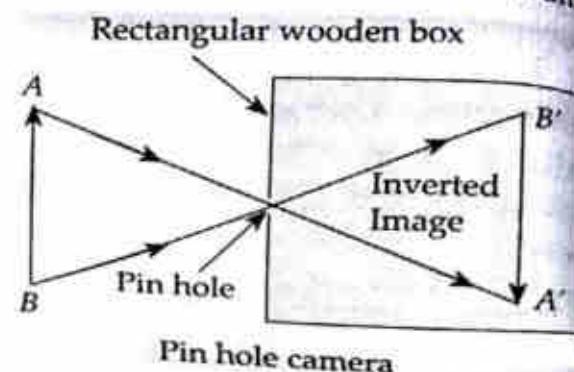
$$\begin{aligned} \text{Here, magnification} &= \frac{\text{Height of the object}}{\text{Height of the image}} \\ &= \frac{\text{Image distance from the hole}}{\text{Object distance from the hole}} \end{aligned}$$

Obviously, for a substantial magnification the object distance from the pointed hole should be small.

Eclipse :

(A) Solar Eclipse : When the moon comes between the sun and the earth, then the shadow of the moon falls upon the earth and from the shadow region the sun is not visible and this position is called *solar eclipse*. This eclipse may be full or partial. Full solar eclipse occurs on the day of *full moon*.

(B) Lunar Eclipse : When the earth comes between the sun and the moon, then the shadow of the earth falls on

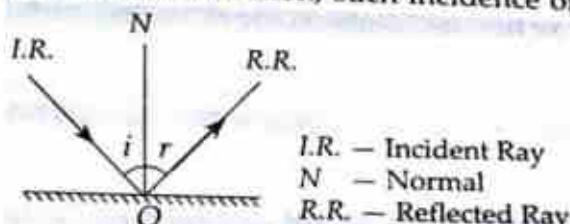


the moon then the shadow region of the moon is not visible and this position is called *lunar eclipse*. This eclipse may also be full or partial. Full lunar eclipse occurs on the day of *new moon*.

Eclipses are not visible and do not occur each and every month because the equatorial orbit of the earth makes an angle of 5° to 7° from the axial axis of the moon.

2. Reflection of light

When a light ray incidents on a smooth and polished surface, then it undergoes (comes) back almost in a different direction, such incidence of light ray is called reflection of light. A plane mirror is assumed to be the best reflector. The straight line perpendicular to the reflected surface is called normal. The angle between incident ray and normal is called angle of incidence and between the normal and reflected ray is called angle of reflection.



I.R. — Incident Ray
N — Normal
R.R. — Reflected Ray

There are two laws of reflection—

- Incident ray, normal and reflected ray all lie in the same plane.
- Angle of incidence and angle of reflection both are equal. Thus $i = r$

Plane mirror : One surface of the mirror is plane and another surface has a sharp metallic polish which is pasted. This is done to avoid the polish decay. The backside of the mirror with silver or mercury layers (metallic polish) works as reflector surface. The object and image both are located at equal distance. In a plane mirror the formed image is always imaginary and it is equal to the size of the object laterally inverted.

Some more facts related to plane mirrors

- If a body having a speed v moves forward with this speed then its image through a plane mirror appears to be moving with speed $2v$.
- For showing the full image of an object, the size of the plane mirror should be at least half of the object.
- If the incident ray is kept constant and the plane mirror is rotated by an angle θ , then the reflected ray is rotated by angle 2θ .
- If two plane mirrors are inclined to each other at an angle θ , then total number of images formed between the two mirrors $= \frac{360^\circ}{\theta^\circ} - 1$.

Thus, if two plane mirrors are inclined at right angle to each other then three images will be formed between them. Similarly, between two parallel plane mirrors infinite images would be formed.

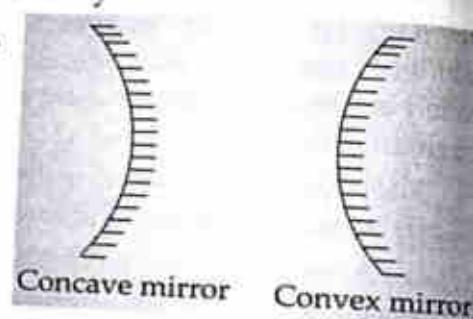
Utilities : The plane mirror is utilised in the form of kaleidoscope, periscope, looking glass etc.

- Kaleidoscope :** In it three rectangular plane mirrors of equal length and equal breadth are attached to each other in such a way that the angle between two mirrors is of 60° . The reflecting surfaces of all these mirrors are inwardly confined and in the space confined by the mirrors, the pieces of

the colour glasses are kept. These three mirrors are kept inside a thick long pipe. The spherical piece of glass is attached to the first end of the pipe and at another end the piece of rubbed glass is attached. When we look inside the pipe through the transparent glass end, then on rotating the pipe new colour images are seen. These images are of the pieces of the colour glasses, which have been formed due to the multiple reflections of the plane mirrors. On moving the pipe location of the pieces of the colour glasses and the colour of images are changed.

(ii) **Periscope** : In it two plane mirrors are attached to each other at 45° in such a way that the reflecting surfaces are oppositely directed. Light ray first incidents on the reflecting surface of the first (upward) mirror and the reflected beam now incidents upon the second (downward) mirror so that after reflection it enters the eye. That's why during war time the arms uses periscope to detect the enemies who are hidden in bunkers. Also in submarines periscopes are frequently used today.

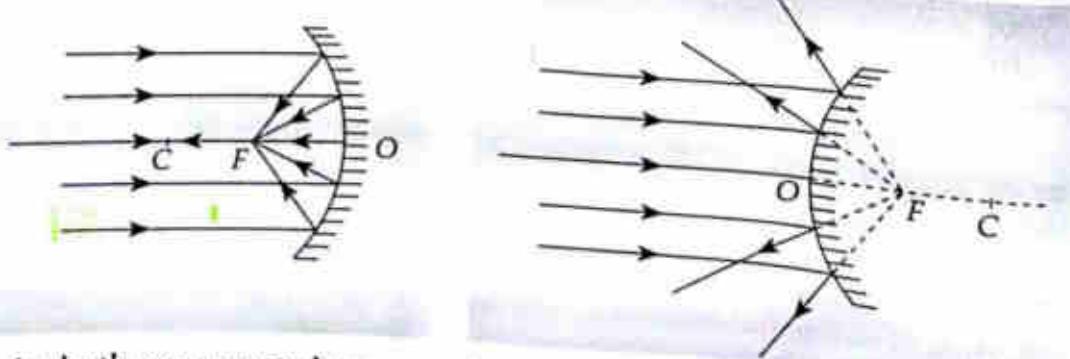
Spherical mirror : In spherical plane the constructed mirror is called spherical mirror in which one side of the mirror has a layer of mercury or coating of lead oxide. A thin layer is painted and pasted to one side and another side is used as a reflecting surface.



The spherical mirror is of two types—

(i) **Concave mirror** : The spherical mirror whose reflecting surface is inwardly leaned is called concave mirror. It is also called converging mirror because it converges the coming rays from infinity.

(ii) **Convex mirror** : The spherical mirror whose reflecting surface is outwardly leaned is called convex mirror. It is also called diverging mirror because it diverges the rays coming from infinity.



As both concave and convex mirrors are constructed through the same spherical glass. The centre of the glass sphere is called centre of curvature (C) and the middle point (O) of the spherical mirror is called pole. The line passing through the centre of curvature and pole is called principal axis. The middle point of the straight line drawn from the pole to the radius of curvature is called focus (F).

Thus $f = \frac{\text{radius of curvature}}{2}$

The focal distance (f) of concave and convex mirrors is evaluated by the following formula

$$\frac{1}{v} + \frac{1}{u} = \frac{1}{f} \quad \text{where } u = \text{Object distance}$$

$v = \text{Image distance}$

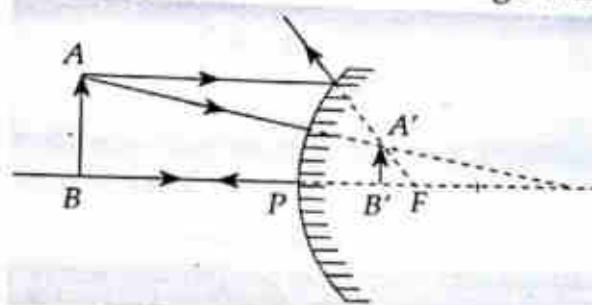
$f = \text{Focal length of the mirror.}$

Magnification : The ratio of image distance to object distance or the ratio of the length of image to the length of the object is called magnification of the mirror and is represented by m .

$$\text{Thus magnification } (m) = \frac{\text{Length of Image}}{\text{Length of object}} = \frac{\text{Image distance } (v)}{\text{Object distance } (u)}$$

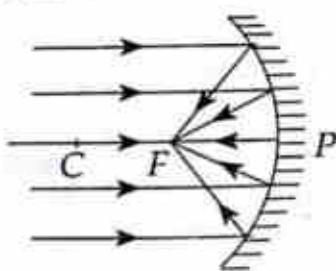
The image formed by convex mirror: In convex mirror the image of an object is formed behind the mirror between the pole and the focus and the image formed is smaller than the object and it is erect and virtual.

If the position of the object is changed and if it shifts from the pole, then the virtual erect image becomes smaller and shifts towards the focus.

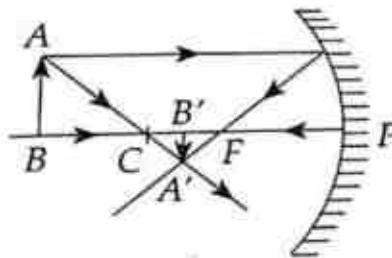


Use : Since convex mirror is diverging in nature, so the objects of a large region are being diverged into a smaller region. That's why the convex mirror has a vast field-view and so these mirrors are utilised in motor cars, trucks etc. as a rear view mirror. Due to large field view these are utilised in the reflecting lamps installed near the roads and streets.

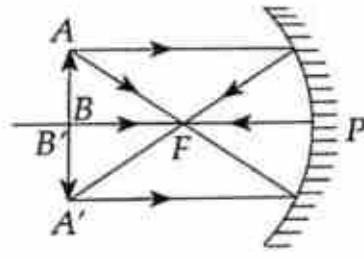
The images formed by concave mirror: The position of the object may vary according to our choice and so the images which are real and inverted can be formed at various locations tabulated as given below.



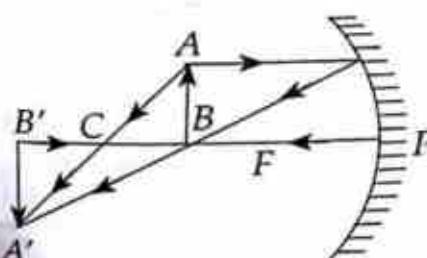
(a)



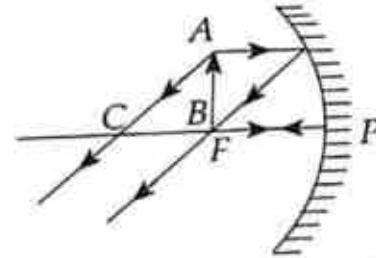
(b)



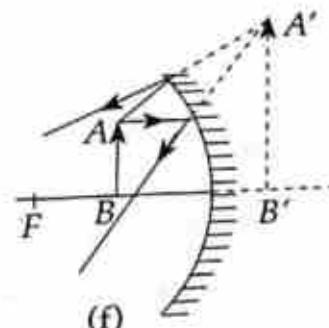
(c)



(d)



(e)

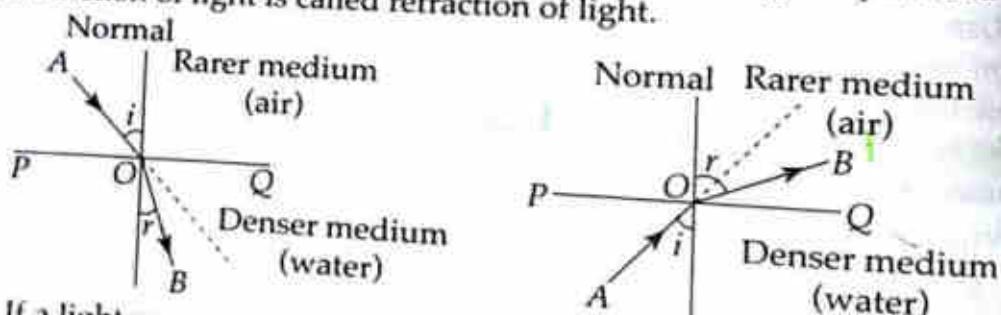


(f)

Position of object	Position of image	Size of image with comparison to object	Nature of image
(a) At infinity (∞)	At focus	Very small	real and inverted
(b) Between centre of curvature and infinity	Between focus and infinity	Small	real and inverted
(c) At centre of curvature	At centre of curvature	Equal in length	real and inverted
(d) Between focus and centre of curvature	Between centre of curvature and infinity	Large	real and inverted
(e) At focus	At infinity (∞)	Very large	real and inverted
(f) Between pole and focus	Behind the mirror	Large	virtual and erected

3. Refraction of light

When a light ray passes from one transparent medium to another transparent medium perpendicularly at any point on a line dividing both the mediums, then the ray passes directly without any deviation. But if they incident inclinedly then they deviate from the original path and this phenomenon of light is called refraction of light.



If a light ray enters from a rarer medium to a denser medium (say, air to water) then this ray leans towards the normal drawn on the dividing line of both the mediums, but in the reverse case it escapes far away from the normal. Also if a ray passes from any medium to any other medium parallel to the normal, then it also passes directly without any deviation.

Laws of refraction :

- (i) Incident ray, Normal and Refracted ray all lie in the same plane.
- (ii) For any two mediums the ratio of sine of the angle of incidence and sine of the angle of refraction is constant and it is called refractive index of second medium with respect to first and this statement is also called Snell's law.

$$\text{Thus } \frac{\sin i}{\sin r} = \mu \text{ or } \mu_1 \mu_2$$

$$\text{Now, if } \mu_2 = \frac{\sin i}{\sin r}, \mu_3 = \frac{\sin r}{\sin r'}, \text{ and } \mu_1 = \frac{\sin r'}{\sin i}$$

where; 1 → 1st medium, 2 → 2nd medium, 3 → 3rd medium

then, $\mu_2 \cdot \mu_3 \cdot \mu_1 = \frac{\sin i}{\sin r} \cdot \frac{\sin r}{\sin r'} \cdot \frac{\sin r'}{\sin i} = 1$, similarly, $\mu_w \cdot \mu_g \cdot \mu_o = 1$
 Where 1 → air (a), 2 → water (w), 3 → glass (g)

If refraction takes place from vacuum or air to any medium then the above ratio of sine of angle of incidence and sine of angle of refraction is called absolute refractive index or simply index of refraction. This is Snell's law.

Thus, absolute refractive index (μ) = $\frac{\sin i}{\sin r}$

It is also observed optically that the ratio of velocity of light in vacuum to velocity of light in any medium is equal to the absolute refractive index of the medium.

Thus; $\mu_0 = \frac{\text{velocity of light in vacuum } (c_0)}{\text{velocity of light in medium } (c_m)}$ i.e., $\mu_0 = \frac{c_0}{c_m}$

The refractive index of different colours (different wavelengths) of the light are different. On increasing wavelength refractive index decreases. That's why the red colour of visible light has the least value of refractive index and the violet colour has the largest value of refractive index, as the red colour has longer wavelength and the violet colour has shorter wavelength. Also with rise in temperature index of refraction slightly decreases.

Some interesting incidents related to refraction of light

(i) **Twinkling of stars at night**: Atmospheric air has various layers of different densities. Whenever light rays coming from stars incident on air surface (layer) then refract from various layers because air layers are not static. Thus we observe that stars are twinkling due to their various positions in different time intervals.

(ii) **The coin kept at the bottom of a container having water seems upwardly uplifted**: Whenever a coin is kept inside a water container, then the phenomenon of refraction takes place and the coin kept in the container seems upwardly uplifted.

(iii) A fish inside water seems uplifted from its original position.

(iv) A straight rod partially sunk inside water seems to be bent.

(v) Whenever the sun is below the horizon then before sunrise and after sunset the region around the sun appears red due to refraction.

4. Total Internal Reflection of light

When any light ray enters from an optically denser medium to an optically rarer medium then due to refraction the light ray bends away from the normal. But as well as the values of angles of incidence are increased, the light bending from the normal becomes more and more away. Thus, the value of angle of refraction is in increasing order. But for a definite angle of incidence the angle of refraction becomes 90° and here the angle of incidence is called critical angle.

Thus index of refraction (μ) = $\frac{1}{\sin C}$

$\Rightarrow \sin C = \frac{1}{\mu}$, where C = critical angle.

If the angle of incidence is increased by more than a certain value, then the light ray doesn't refract at all. Thus the angle of incidence can not be greater than 90° . In this situation incident light ray reflects back into denser medium and this incident in geometrical optics is called *total internal reflection*. Also the region (space) where the phenomenon of total internal reflection takes place becomes extremely bright.

Thus, for the occurrence of total internal reflection two conditions are required—

- The light ray must enter from an optically denser to an optically rarer medium.
- The angle of incidence should always be greater than critical angle.

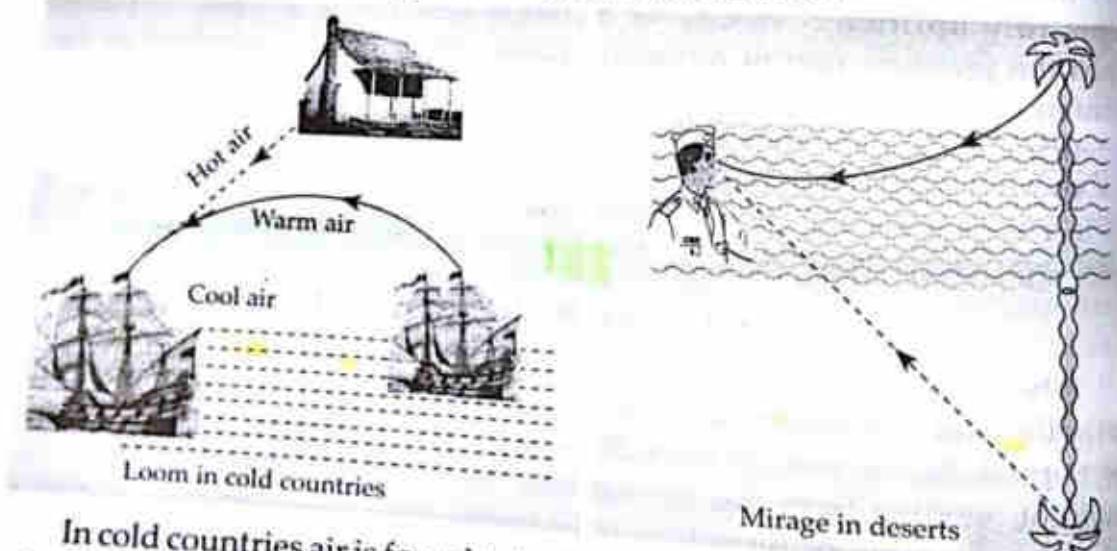
Critical angles of some important substances :

Substance	Index of refraction	Critical angles	Substance	Index of refraction	Critical angles
Water	1.33	48.5°	Flint glass	1.65	37.4°
Crown glass	1.52	41.1°	Diamond	2.42	24.4°

Some interesting incidents related to total internal reflection—

(i) **Over brightness in diamond** : The critical angle is very low (approximately 24°) for a light ray coming from diamond to air. When light rays enter into the diamond, then from various layers multiple reflections take place and if the angle of incidence of the rays becomes less than 24° then light rays come out from the diamond. Thus, light rays entering from every side into the diamond, only appear to come from certain side and that's why the diamond appears overbrightend.

(ii) **Ships hang inverted (looming) in the air in cold countries and trees hang inverted (mirage) underground in deserts :**



In cold countries air is found to be in the most densed state at the surface of sea-water and it gets gradually rarer upwards. So the rays diverging upwards from an object on the surface of sea-water say, a ship are refracted continuously away from the normal. Now it is totally reflected when the light rays begin to travel downwards with continuous refraction towards

the nor direction. That's why the ship appears inverted in air, and it is said to be the position of loom.

In deserts the situation is just the reverse. Here air is the rarest at the ground level and gets gradually denser as we go upwards. So the light rays diverging downwards from an object above the ground, say the leaf of a tree, are refracted continuously away from the vertical. Now it is totally reflected when the light rays begin to travel upwards with a continuous refraction towards the vertical and soon reach the eye of the observer in the downward direction. The leaf so appears underground and it is called *Mirage*. In fact, the ship and the tree are not inverted but they seem to be inverted. These are simply optical illusions.

(iii) **The cracked part of glass appears to be brightend :** The cracked part of glass contains air, which acts like a rarer medium with respect to it. When light rays enter through the glass (cracked) to air then they refract in which the angle of incidence becomes greater than the critical angle, and the phenomenon of total internal reflection takes place. That's why cracked part of glass appears to be brightend.

(iv) A test tube filled with water appears to be brightend due to the similar reason.

(v) **Optical fibre :** Rectilinear propagation of light which is a well known optical phenomenon and by the use of total internal reflection light can also be passed through the curved optical path. A fibre is an optical system based upon the basic principle of total internal reflection and through which light signal is transferred from one place to another without any loss (decay) of amplitude or intensity.

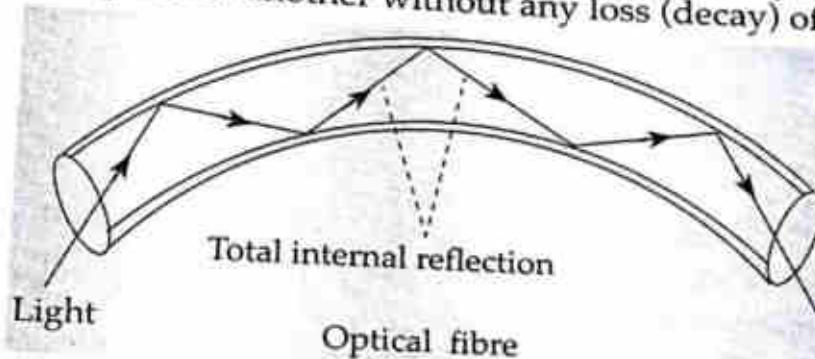
An optical fibre is basically composed through a long, large and compact quartz fibre and each fibre is 10^{-4} cm thick. Around the optical fibre a substance whose index of refraction is

about 1.6 is wrapped out. When the light rays incident on one side of this fibre by making a very small angle, then these are refracted inside it. Thus incident rays after being totally internally reflected collide with the other end of the fibre. On this limiting surface upto which optical fibre is confined again the angle of incidence becomes greater than the critical angle and total internal reflection takes place again.

Thus, the phenomenon of total internal reflection takes place repeatedly and the light ray reaches from one end to another end.

Use of optical fibre :

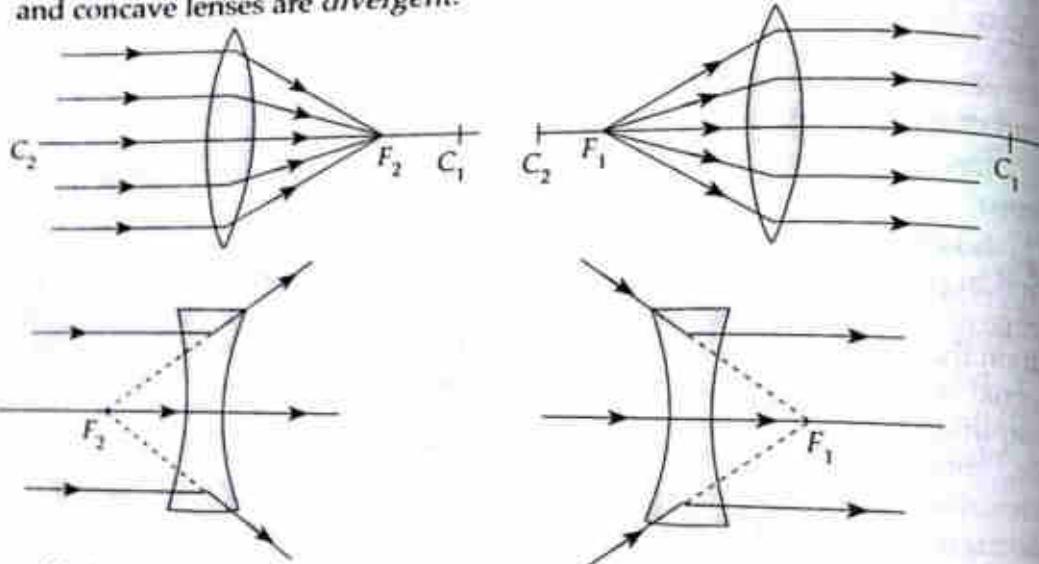
- (i) To send an electric signal by transforming it into a light signal and vice-versa.
- (ii) To send laser light rays inside the human body.
- (iii) Today optical fibres are frequently used in telecommunication. Old copper cables are being replaced today by optical fibres whose capacity is large and they are convenient in use and which are noise free.



5. Refraction of light through a lens

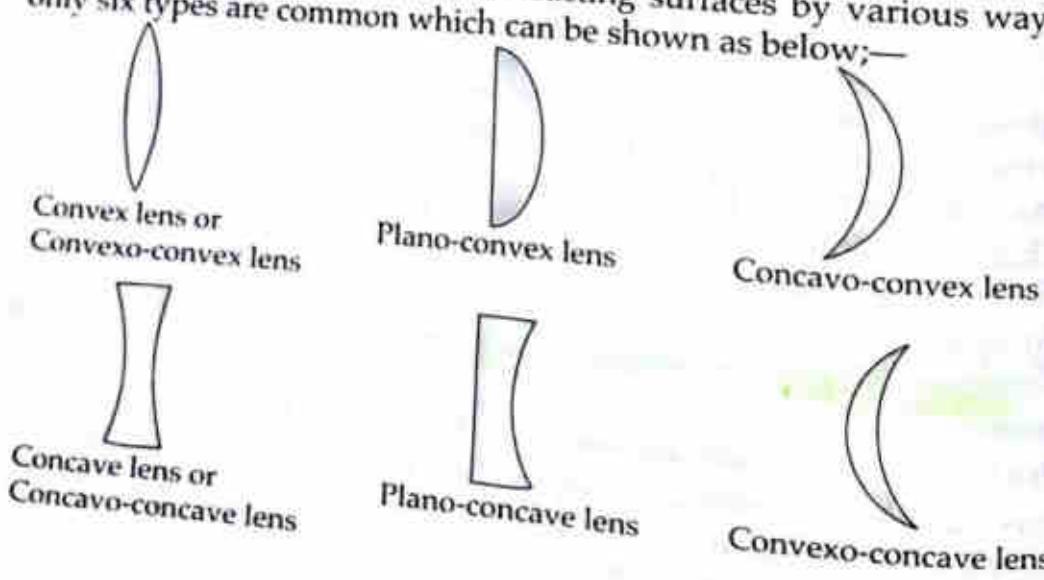
Lens : A lens is a transparent medium bounded by two spherical surfaces.

The line joining the centres of curvature of the two bounding surfaces is called principal axis of the lens. The section of a lens by a plane passing through its principal axis is called principal section of the lens. A lens is shown by its principal section. The point on the principal axis of the lens through which rays pass undeviated through the lens is called its optical centre. Lenses bound by two convex spherical surfaces are called convex lenses and those bound by two concave spherical surfaces are called concave lenses. Lenses which converge a parallel beam of rays to a point are said to be convergent in nature and those which diverge the rays from a virtual point are said to be divergent in nature. Generally, convex lenses are convergent and concave lenses are divergent.



Under co-ordinate sign convention (which is updatey acceptable) the focal length of the convex lens is taken positive and that of concave lens is taken negative.

The lenses are generally constructed by the good quality hollow spherical glasses which act like refracting surfaces by various ways but only six types are common which can be shown as below;



two spherical
bounding surfaces
of plane passing
through lens. A lens is
part of the lens
and its optical
axis is called convex
and concave
is said to be
virtual point
convergent

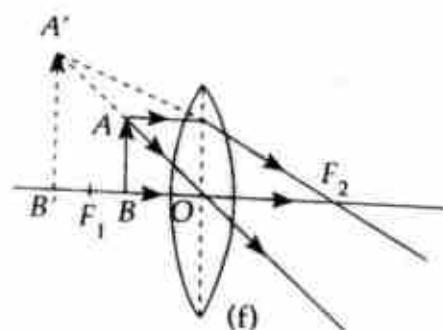
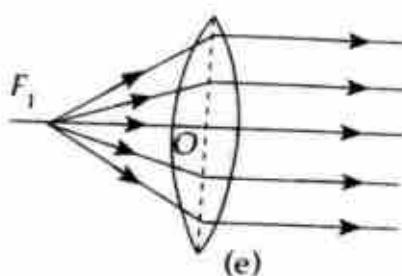
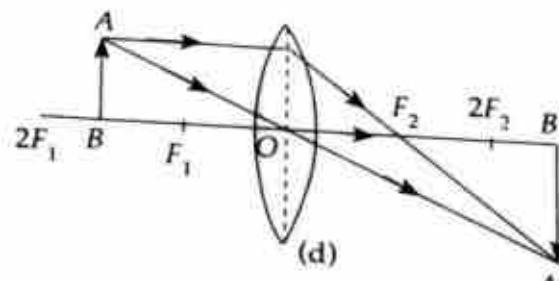
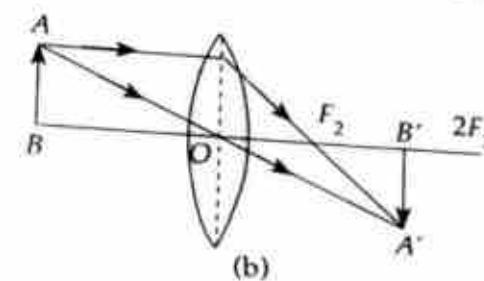
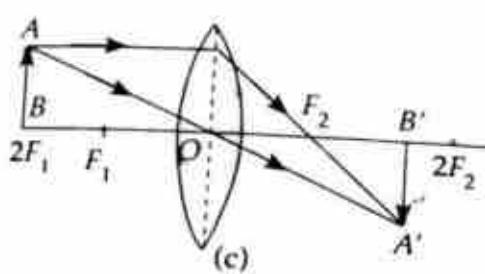
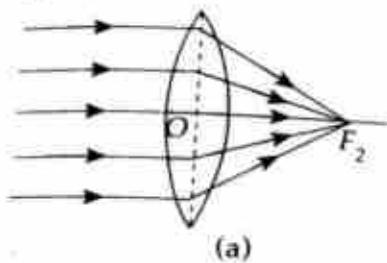
Terms related to lens

Optical centre : It is a mid point in a lens and any light ray which passes through it doesn't deviate.

Focus : The point at which the light rays coming parallel to the principal axis meet or appear to meet after refraction is called focus.

Focal length : The distance between the optical centre and the focus is called focal length.

The Image formation by convex lens : The nature of image formed, its size and position etc. depend on the distance of the object kept from the focus. There may be following positional configuration in various cases given as below—



Position of Position of image object

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (a) At infinity (∞) | At F_2 |
| (b) Left near $2F_1$ | Between F_2 and $2F_2$ |
| (c) At $2F_1$ | At $2F_2$ |
| (d) Between $2F_1$ | Right from $2F_2$ and F_1 |
| (e) At F_1 | At infinity (∞) |
| (f) Between O and F_1 | Towards objects |

Nature, Size, Position of image

real, very small and inverted

real, small and inverted

real, equal and inverted

real, large and inverted

real, very large and inverted

Virtual, erect and magnified

The image formation by concave lens
 : By concave lens often the image is formed towards the object side (left) between the focus and lens and it is virtually erected and small.

Object can be kept at various position and image can be obtained.

Relation among object distance, image distance and focal length of the lens.

$\frac{1}{v} - \frac{1}{u} = \frac{1}{f}$ is called lens formula and it is the required relation between the distance of object and image with focal length.

Here, f = focal distance, +ve for convex lens and -ve for concave lens.

u = object distance

v = image distance.

Relation among focal distance, index of refraction and radius of curvature.

$$(a) \text{Thin lens formula: } \frac{1}{f} = (\mu - 1) \left(\frac{1}{R_1} - \frac{1}{R_2} \right)$$

where μ = index of refraction of the lens.

f = focal length

R_1, R_2 are radii of curvature of two surfaces.

If the lens is a plano-convex then $R_2 = \infty$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus, by lens formula } \frac{1}{f} &= (\mu - 1) \left(\frac{1}{R_1} - \frac{1}{\infty} \right) \\ &= (\mu - 1) \left(\frac{1}{R_1} - 0 \right) = \frac{\mu - 1}{R_1} \Rightarrow \frac{1}{f} = \frac{\mu - 1}{R_1} \end{aligned}$$

(b) Thick lens formula : If t be the thickness of the lens then

$$\frac{1}{f} = (\mu - 1) \left[\frac{1}{R_1} - \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{(\mu - 1)t}{\mu R_1 R_2} \right]$$

Equivalent focal length of two lenses :

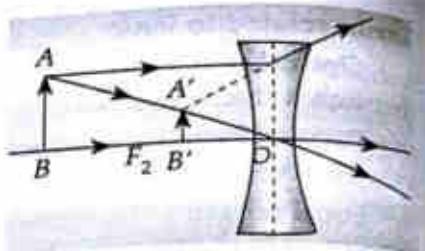
(a) If two lenses are kept in contact then equivalent focal length of these two lenses is the sum of the focal lengths of the lenses.

Thus if F is the equivalent focal length of two lenses whose respective focal lengths are f_1 and f_2 then $\frac{1}{F} = \frac{1}{f_1} + \frac{1}{f_2}$

(b) But if these two lenses are kept apart at d distance, then its equivalent focal length is given by

$$\frac{1}{F} = \frac{1}{f_1} + \frac{1}{f_2} - \frac{d}{f_1 f_2}$$

Power of a lens : The inverse of the focal length of any lens is called power of the lens. If the focal length of a lens is in meter, then its inverse which is called power of the lens is expressed in Dioptrē. Thus, SI unit of the power of the lens is dioptrē. Since the focal lengths of convex and concave



Lenses are +ve and -ve. That's why convex lens has +ve power and concave lens has -ve power.

Equivalent power of the combination of lenses : As from the formula of equivalent focal length of two lenses when these two are in contact.

$$\frac{1}{F} = \frac{1}{f_1} + \frac{1}{f_2} \Rightarrow P = P_1 + P_2$$

If first lens is concave, say $P_1 = -1.5$ (dioptrē)

and second lens is convex, say $P_2 = f = +2.5$ (dioptrē)

$$\text{then } P = -1.5 + 2.5 = +1 \text{ dioptrē}$$

Also, if d is the distance between two lenses, then $P = P_1 + P_2 - d P_1 P_2$

Variations in the power of lenses : Whenever a lens is kept inside a liquid its focal length and power both change. If a lens of refractive index μ is kept inside a liquid of refractive index μ' then here three cases arise;

(a) When $\mu > \mu'$: Here power of the lens decreases and thus focal length increases. The nature of the lens remains the same.

(b) When $\mu = \mu'$: Here focal length of the lens becomes infinite and thus power of the lens vanishes or becomes zero. Thus lens behaves like a plane parallel plate and inside the liquid lens doesn't look.

(c) When $\mu < \mu'$: Here power of the lens again decreases and thus focal length increases. Thus a convex lens acts like a concave lens and vice-versa.

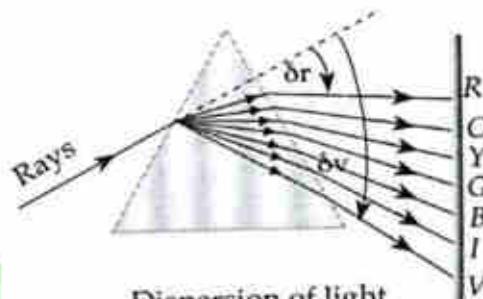
An air bubble inside the water acts like a concave lens but as usual (without water) acts like a convex lens. A convex lens of glass when kept inside the carbon disulphide appears like a concave lens and vice-versa.

6. Dispersion of light

When a light ray incidents upon a prism, it gets refracted through it and bends towards the base of the prism and this ray splits into various colours. This group of component colours is called spectrum. Also the process of splitting of a white light is called *dispersion of light*. In all the colours of white light, violet ray (colour) deviates the most and red ray (colour) deviates the least. The white light has seven colours **VIBGYOR** (Violet, Indigo, Blue, Green, Yellow, Orange and Red).

Newton observed that different colours of white light deviate on different angles. The optical dispersion takes place because different colours of white light have different speeds for any transparent material. As well as the refractive indices of various colours of the light increase correspondingly their speeds decrease.

For example : The violet ray (colour) has the largest refractive index and the least speed in glass and red ray (colour) has the least refractive index and the largest speed. Other colours have their speeds between these two colours—violet and red.



Dispersion of light

Also the wavelength of violet colour is the least and that of the red colour is the largest. The wavelength of light is expressed in Angstrom (\AA) and $1\text{\AA} = 10^{-10}\text{m}$.

Wavelength of important colours :

Colour	Wavelength (in \AA)	Colour	Wavelength (in \AA)
Violet	3969 \AA	Yellow	5893 \AA
Blue	4861 \AA	Red	6563 \AA

Rainbow : When the phenomena of refraction, reflection and total internal reflection take place coincidentally and in which a comprehensive optical dispersion also takes place then a rainbow is formed.

The rainbow is of two types—

(i) **Primary rainbow :** Whenever rainfall occurs then after its complete end some rain drops remain suspended in the sky and in the meantime if any light ray (from the sun) incidents on a particular drop in such a way that it reflects one time and refracts two times then primary rainbow is formed. In it red colour is located outwardly and violet colour is located inwardly. Inwardly located violet ray makes an angle of $40^\circ 8'$ and outwardly located red ray makes an angle of $42^\circ 8'$ at the eye.

(ii) **Secondary rainbow :** As above if the light ray (from the sun) incidents on a particular drop in such a way that reflects two times and refracts two times then secondary rainbow is formed. In it violet colour is located outwardly and red colour is located inwardly. Outwardly located violet ray makes an angle of $54^\circ 52'$ and inwardly located red ray makes an angle of $50^\circ 8'$ at the eye.

The secondary rainbow is less distinctive and clear than the primary rainbow.

Primary, secondary and complementary colours : Red, Green and Blue colours are called *primary colours*, while Yellow, Magenta and Peacock Blue (cyan) colours are called *secondary colours*. These colours are prepared by mixing two primary colours as below :

$$\text{Red} + \text{Blue} \rightarrow \text{Magenta}$$

$$\text{Green} + \text{Blue} \rightarrow \text{Peacock Blue (Cyan)}$$

$$\text{Red} + \text{Green} \rightarrow \text{Yellow}$$

If two colours mutually meet to form a white light, then the colour is called complementary colour.

$$\text{Example : Red} + \text{Peacock Blue (Cyan)} \rightarrow \text{White}$$

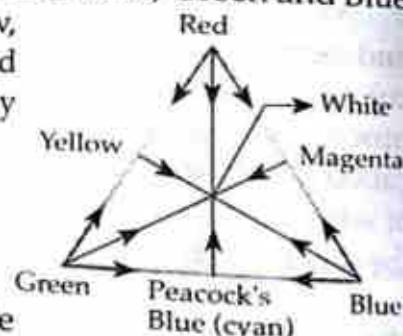
$$\text{Green} + \text{Magenta} \rightarrow \text{White}$$

$$\text{Yellow} + \text{Blue} \rightarrow \text{White}$$

Such type of colours cannot be achieved in our daily life because colours which we use are practically impure.

Colour TV utilises primary colour—red, green and blue.

Colour of Objects : The colour of any object is the reflected colour and all other colours are absorbed. The object which reflects all the incident



colours looks white but if all the incident colours the are absorbed then the object appears black. The white colour of an object is the composite effect of all the colours.

Example : When a red rose is seen through a green glass then the rose appears black because red colour is not available for reflection and green colour is absorbed by it.

The colours effect on various type of objects

Name of objects	In white rays	In red rays	In green rays	In yellow rays	In blue rays
White paper	white	red	green	yellow	blue
Red paper	red	red	black	black	black
Green paper	green	black	green	black	black
Yellow paper	yellow	black	black	yellow	black
Blue paper	blue	black	black	black	blue

7. Interference of light waves

In general interference is the phenomenon of sustained cancellation or reinforcement of two waves when they meet under certain specific conditions. When the effect of one wave is constantly neutralised by the other, two waves are said to interfere destructively and when their effects are reinforced they are said to interfere constructively. Thus, we can say that when two waves of the same frequency travel in same direction and have a phase difference that remains constant with time, the resultant intensity of light is not distributed uniformly in space. The non-uniform distribution of light intensity due to superposition of two waves is called *interference*. At some points intensity is maximum and interference at these points is called *constructive interference*. At some other points intensity is minimum (possibly even zero) and interference at these points is called *destructive interference*. Usually when two light waves are made to interfere, we get alternate dark and bright bands of a regular or irregular shape. These are called *interference fringes*.

Interference is the most fundamental characteristic of a wave and there is no loss of energy in it, there is only redistribution of energy from maxima to minima. The phenomenon of interference was firstly demonstrated by Thomas Young in his experiment called *Young's double slit experiment*.

Examples related to interference

- (i) The kerosene oil spread on the water surface seems to have a decent colour because of interference of the light.
- (ii) The soap bubbles have a brilliant colour in the sunlight because of interference of the light.

Coherence : A wave which has a pure sine wave for an infinitely large period of time or for an infinitely extended space is said to be a *perfectly coherent wave*. In such a wave there is a definite relationship between the phase of the wave at a given time and at a certain time or distance later at a given point same condition is again satisfied.

No actual light source however emits a perfectly coherent wave. Light waves which are pure sine waves only for a limited period of time or in a limited space are partially coherent waves.

Thus there are two different criteria of coherence—criteria of time and criteria of space. This gives rise to the phenomena of *temporal coherence* and *spatial coherence*.

8. Diffraction of light

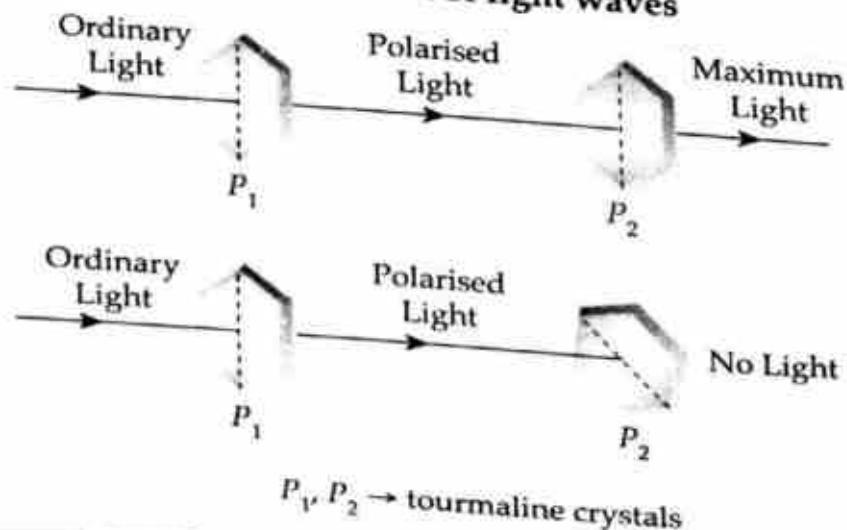
If an opaque obstacle (aperture) is kept between a source of light and a screen, a sufficiently distinct shadow (or an illuminated region) is obtained on the screen. This shows that light which travels the obstacle (aperture) is small (comparable to the wavelength of the light), there is a departure from straight line propagation and so the light bends round the corners of the obstacle (aperture) and enters in the geometrical shadow. This bending of the light is called *diffraction*. Consequently, the edges of the shadow (or illuminated region) are not sharp, but the intensity is distributed in a certain way depending upon the nature of the obstacle (aperture). Thus, if the size of the obstacle is in the order of the wavelength of light, then diffraction will be appeared which is clear and distinctive. The phenomenon of diffraction confirms the wave character of the light. Sound wave has longer wavelength, that's why acoustical diffraction takes place clearly in which sound wave bends from obstacle and we listen. While the wavelength of light wave is shorter than common barrier (obstacle) we use in our daily life, that's why the phenomenon of optical diffraction is rarely observed.

There are two types of optical diffractions—

(a) **Fresnel's diffraction** : In Fresnel's class of diffraction, the source of light or screen on which diffraction pattern is observed, are usually at finite distances from the diffraction obstacle (aperture). In this case no lenses are used and the wavefront (wave shape) is either spherical or cylindrical.

(b) **Fraunhofer diffraction** : In Fraunhofer's class of diffraction, the source of light and the screen are effectively at infinite distances from the diffracting obstacle (aperture). This is achieved by keeping the source and screen in the focal planes of two lenses. Here the incident wavefront (wave shape) is plane.

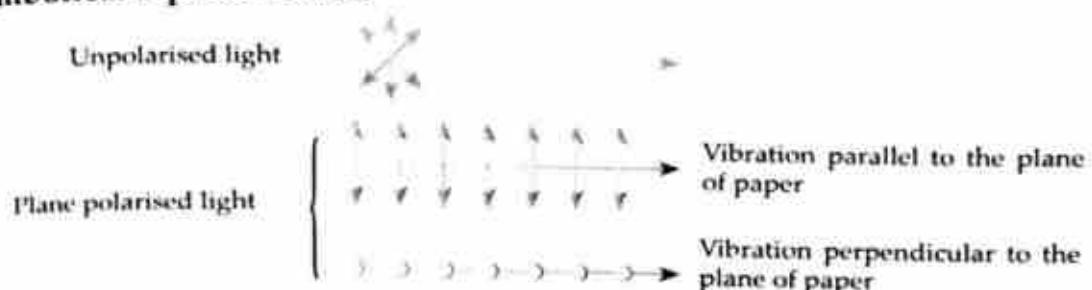
9. Polarisation of light waves



When an ordinary light incidents normally upon a pair of parallel tourmaline crystal plates P_1 and P_2 as shown in the figure which have been cut parallel to their crystallographic axis, the emergent light shows a variation in intensity as P_2 is rotated. The intensity is maximum when the axis of P_2 is parallel to that of P_1 , and minimum when it is at right angles. This shows that the light emerging from P_1 is not symmetrical about the direction of propagation of light, but its vibrations are confined only to a single line in a plane perpendicular to the direction of propagation. Such light is called *plane-polarised* or *linearly-polarised* light.

According to the electromagnetic theory of light, a light wave consists of electric and magnetic vectors vibrating in mutually perpendicular planes, both being perpendicular to the direction of propagation of light. The electric vector acts like a light vector. Hence, the plane-polarised light is a light in which the light vector vibrates along a fixed straight line in a plane perpendicular to the direction of propagation.

Symbolical representation



As in an unpolarised beam of light all directions of vibration at right angles to that of propagation of light are possible, hence it is represented by a star.

In a plane-polarised beam of light the vibrations are along a single straight line. If the vibrations are parallel to the plane of the paper, they are represented by the arrows. If they are along a straight line perpendicular to the plane of paper, they are represented by dots.

Light waves are transverse : In tourmaline experiment, the variation in intensity of the emergent light on rotation of P_2 (First section of the polarisation) shows that light waves are transverse. But if the waves were longitudinal i.e. having vibration along the direction of propagation of light, they will have passed through P_2 in all positions of it.

Thus, polarisation of light takes place with transverse waves only and doesn't occur with longitudinal waves. That's why sound (longitudinal) wave doesn't exhibit the phenomenon of polarisation.

Doubly-Refracting crystals : There are certain crystals which split a ray of light incident upon them into two refracted rays. Such crystals are called *doubly-refracting crystals*. These are of two types : uniaxial and biaxial. In uniaxial crystals there is one direction called *optic axis* along which the two refracted rays travel with the same velocity. The examples of such crystals are calcite, tourmaline and quartz. In biaxial crystals there are two optic axes. The examples of biaxial crystals are topaz and aragonite.

Double refraction : When a ray of unpolarised light incidents on a calcite (or quartz) crystal, it splits up into two refracted rays. The phenomenon is called *double refraction*.

One of these two refracted rays is found to obey the laws of refraction i.e. it always lies in the plane of incidence and its speed in the crystal is same in all directions. This ray is called an *ordinary ray* (O-ray). The other refracted ray doesn't obey the laws of refraction. It travels in the crystal with different speeds in different directions. Hence it is called an *extraordinary ray* (E-ray). Along the optic axis, however, O-ray and E-ray both have the same velocity and hence the same refractive index. An ordinary ray (O-ray) and an extraordinary ray (E-ray) obtained through the double refraction are plane-polarised.

Nicol's prism : It is an optical device made from a calcite crystal which is used in producing and analyzing the plane-polarised light.

Dichroism : Some doubly-refracting crystals have the property of absorbing strongly one of the two refracting rays, while allowing the other to emerge with a little loss. This selected absorption by the crystal is known as *dichroism*. The best example of such a crystal is tourmaline.

When a ray of unpolarised light is sent through a 1 mm thick, tourmaline plate then it splits up into plane-polarised light in which O-ray and E-ray vibrate in mutually perpendicular planes. O-ray is completely absorbed while E-ray is totally transmitted. Thus, the light emerging through the plate is plane-polarised. This is the basic principle of the commercial polarising devices called *polaroids*.

Polaroid : It is a large-sized polarising film mounted between two glass plates, and is used to obtain plane-polarized light for the commercial purposes. The film consists of a thin sheet of nitro-cellulose packed with ultra microscopic crystals of the organic compound iodosulphate quinine (also called herapathite) with their optic axes all parallel. These crystals are highly dichroic, absorbing one of doubly-refracted beams completely. Hence when a beam of unpolarised light passes through the polaroid film, the emerging light is plane-polarised.

Recently large-sized polaroids have been made by stretching a film of polyvinyl alcohol. The stretching orients the complex molecules with their long axes in the direction of stress and makes them doubly-refracting. Then the film is impregnated with iodine which makes it dichroic. Such polaroids are called *H-polaroids*. If instead of iodine impregnation, the stretched film is heated with a dehydrating agent, then it slightly darkens and becomes strongly dichroic. It is called *K-polaroid*.

Uses of polaroids

(i) Polaroids are used in the laboratory to produce and analyse a plane-polarised light. These are cheaper than Nicols.

(ii) K-polaroids are used in head-lights and wind-screens of cars to cut off the dazzling light of a car approaching from the opposite side. They are fitted in the head-light and wind-screen of the car with their vibration-planes parallel to each other but inclined at 45° to the vertical. When two cars approach each other from the opposite sides then through the vibration-plane of polaroids light is sent out to each other and hence light coming from the head light of one car is completely cut off by the wind-screen of the another car and thus the driver is able to see the other car by the light sent out from his (or her) own car.

(iii) Polaroids are used to control the intensity of light in entering trains and aeroplanes. A polaroid is fixed outside the window, while the other is fitted inside it which can be rotated and the intensity of light can be adjusted by rotating the inner polaroid.

(iv) Polaroid glasses are used in viewing three-dimensional pictures.

(v) The polaroids are today frequently used in sun-glasses to cut off the glare of light reflected from the horizontal surfaces such as moist roads, cover glasses of the paintings, polished table, pavements etc.

Plane, Circularly and Elliptically polarised light : According to Maxwell's electromagnetic theory, a light wave consists of electric and magnetic fields (vectors) vibrating in mutually perpendicular planes, both being perpendicular to the direction of propagation of light. The electric vector is responsible for the optical effect of the wave and which is also called *light vector*. In unpolarised light, light vector takes all the possible directions of vibration in a plane perpendicular to the directions of propagation. If however, light vector vibrates along a fixed straight line in the plane, the light is said to be *plane-polarised or linearly-polarised*.

When two plane-polarised waves are superimposed, then under certain conditions the resultant light vector rotates with a constant magnitude in a plane perpendicular to the direction of propagation. The tip of the vector traces a circle and the light is said to be *circularly-polarised*. If, although the magnitude of the resultant light vector varies periodically during its rotation, the tip of the vector traces an ellipse, the light is said to be *elliptically-polarised*. Thus, there are usually three types of polarised light which exist in nature.

10. Scattering of light

When light waves fall on extremely small bodies (particles) such as dust particles, very small suspended water droplets, suspended particles in colloidal solution etc then these are thrown out in all directions. This phenomenon of light is known as *scattering*. Here bodies are small in the sense of their sizes and are smaller than the sizes (wavelengths) of the incident waves. Thus, the strength of scattering depends upon the wavelength of the light beside the size of the bodies (particles) which cause scattering. If these particles are smaller than the wavelength of the incident light, then the

scattering is proportional to $\frac{1}{\lambda^4}$. This is called *Rayleigh's law of scattering*.

Thus, red light is scattered least and violet is scattered most. That's why red signals are used to indicate dangers. Such a signal appears to be visible at a larger distances without an appreciable loss due to scattering.

Incidents of the scattering of light in our daily life—

(i) **Due to the scattering of light sky appears blue :** When we look at the sky it is scattered light from the atmosphere that enters the eyes. Among the shorter wavelength the colour blue is present in larger proportion in the light. Light of short wavelengths are strongly scattered by the air molecules and the suspended water droplets and it explains the blue colour appearance of the sky.

of refraction
the crystal is
v). The other
crystal with
extraordinary
that have the
ray (O-ray)
refraction are

stal which

operty of
the other
is known

ermaline
id E-ray
bsorbed
he plate
larising

en two
mercial
i with
uinine
ystals
etely.
film,

m of
heir
bids
ilm
nes

ie-

at
y
o
—
;

(ii) At sunset and sunrise sun appears red : At such occasion the sunlight has to travel a large distance through the atmosphere. The blue and neighbouring colours are scattered away in the path and the light reaching the observer is predominantly red. Thus, at sunset and sunrise sun appears red and it occurs due to the scattering of light.

(iii) If there were no atmosphere of the earth, then the sky would appear black and stars would be seen during the day.

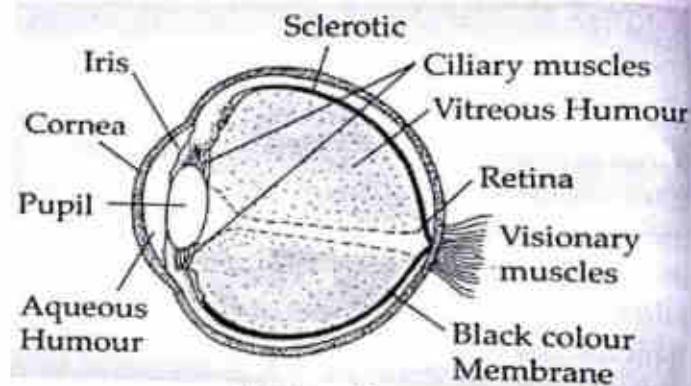
(iv) On a humid day before rains, the sky appears light blue, while on a clear day it appears deep blue. The change in the quality of colour of the sky results from the fact that the water droplets and the dust particles may have a size larger than the wavelength of light. Rayleigh's law of scattering doesn't apply in this case and colours other than blue may be scattered in larger proportion.

(v) The seas also appear blue due to the scattering of light.

11. Human eye

The human eye is like a camera with the help of which we see the objects. Human eye is externally very hard and it is covered with a opaque white membrane which is called *sclerotic*. The front part of sclerotic is concave which is called *cornea*. During eye donation this part (*cornea*) is donated.

A light ray enters the eye through cornea. Behind the cornea a colour opaque membrane is located which is called *Iris*. In the middle of the *Iris* there is a sharp hole, which is called *pupil*. *Iris* controls the amount of light which enters the eye. If more light comes into it, then automatically iris compresses itself. Also in dark or insufficient light it (iris) automatically expands. Behind the pupil the eye lens is located. The eye lens is made from many layers whose index of refraction increases from outside to inside and its mean index of refraction is approximately 1.44. The eye lens is confined within the muscular region and it is capable of adjusting its focal length. That's why human eye has a variable nature of focal length. Between cornea and eye lens a saline transparent fluid is filled up which is called *aqueous humour*, and its index of refraction is 1.336. Behind the eye lens another transparent fluid is also found which is called *vitreous humour* and whose index of refraction is also 1.336. Behind sclerotic there is a black coloured membrane which is called *choroid*. It absorbs the light and stops the process of internal reflection. Inside this membrane and in the innermost part of the eye there is a transparent membrane which is called *retina*. The retina is basically a film of optical nerves and these nerves produce the sensation of the image formed in the mind (brain). Thus, shape, size and colour of the object's image is observed by the human eye. When a light ray incidents on an object, then by reflection it passes through the cornea and aqueous humour reaches to the retina. At retina (used as screen for the glass lens) a real and inverted image of the



Human Eye

object is formed and this message is sent to the human brain by the visionary (optic) nerves and the brain realises the real erected image. There is no effect of light is found the place (point) where optic nerves by making the hole in the retina goes upto brain. This place is called *blind spot*. There is a mid-point in the retina which is of yellow colour. Here the obtained image is very sharp and distinctive. It is called *yellow spot*.

Power of accommodation of eye : To see any object distinctly (clearly) it is necessary that the light ray reflected from object be totally confined on the retina. In usual condition the light rays coming from far flung object are assumed to be confined on the retina by which the muscles of the eye is not stretched as normally and the object looks. At this position the eye lens has the maximum focal length. But if the eye looks at any nearer object, then eye muscles start to shrink and reduce the radii of curvature of the lens surfaces. Here the focal length of the eye lens is reduced and again image starts to form on the retina. This adjustment of the focal length of the eye is called Power of accommodation of the eye. As we try to look at the nearest object more and more power of accommodation of the eye is required and it has also a limit. If any object is kept very close to the eye it doesn't look distinct. Thus the maximum accommodation power of eye is applied to the nearest object which looks sharp and distinct. This distance of distinct vision is called the least distance of distinct vision and for a normal human eye it is 25 cm. But inversely the eye without applying the power of accommodation can see distinctly any object located at far point and for a normal human eye it is infinity (∞).

Colour vision : There are two types of cells found in the retina of the eye which are optically sensitive. These are called cones and rods. Cone shaped cells react according to the consistency of the colours by which we realise about the colours. Rod shaped cells react according to the consistency of the intensity of light. This is very sensitive for the dim light. That's why we also speculate (guess) about the object in the dark. When light is of shining (dazzling) type then rods cells stop to act and cones cells become active. A normal human eye's retina has three types of cones cells—

- (i) **First type**—Sensitive to the light of shorter wavelength (blue colour)
- (ii) **Second type**—Sensitive to the light of middle range wavelength (green colour)

(iii) **Third type**—Sensitive to the light of longer wavelength (red colour)

Chromatic adaptation : If a piece of glazed (shined) colour paper is taken and half part of it is covered, then on looking up to approximately 30 seconds at the rest of the piece and if the covered part is now made open then on looking at the entire piece the covered part appears more glazed. This optical incident is called chromatic adaptation.

Successive contrast: If we look at a coloured image up to approximately 30 seconds and a white surface is seen then a post-image appears, whose shape and size is equal to that of the real image, but its colour is different. If the real image is red then its post-image is green and vice-versa. If the real image is blue then its post-image is yellow and vice-versa and for the white real image its post-image is black and vice-versa. Such optical incident in technical form is called successive contrast.

Chromatic Induction or Simultaneous contrast : The distinct vision of any colour depends on the all around colours. If we look at a particular colour in various layers of the surfaces where various colours are to be confined it looks different. If any colour is seen in the background of a sharp colour, then this colour seems to be light, but in the domain (background) of light colour this colour seems to be sharp. This relative distinction in the colour is called chromatic induction or simultaneous contrast.

Phantom colour : Sometimes we look at colours in the region of black and white. These colours are called phantom colours. They can be observed in a black and white TV specially when pictures pass very quickly.

Eye defects (Defects of vision) : For a normal human eye, the least distance of distinct vision is 25 cm. Normal human eye can cast the image of an object on the retina of the eye between the least distance of distinct vision and infinity (∞). But due to late or old age and also due to some other reasons the power of the eye lens is damaged or diminished, and it is called eye defects. There are various types of eye defects—

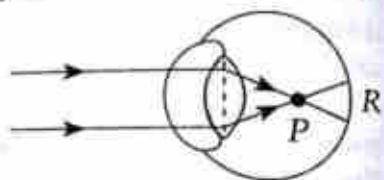
(i) **Myopia or short sightedness :** The person suffering from myopia cannot see the distant objects but easily see the near most objects.

Causes :

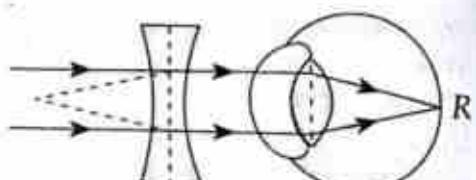
(a) The sphericity of the eye lens is increased.

(b) The focal length of the lens decreases.

(c) Power of the eye lens increases, thus here the image doesn't form on the retina but in the defective eye it forms in the front of retina.



Myopia



Remedy of Myopia

Remedial measure: The myopia-affected person uses concave lens of suitable focal length so that the image starts to form on the retina.

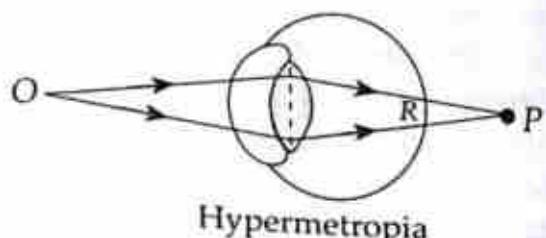
(ii) **Hypermetropia or Long-sightedness :** The person suffering from hypermetropia cannot see the near most objects but can see the objects located at remote distances.

Causes :

(a) The sphericity of the eye lens is decreased.

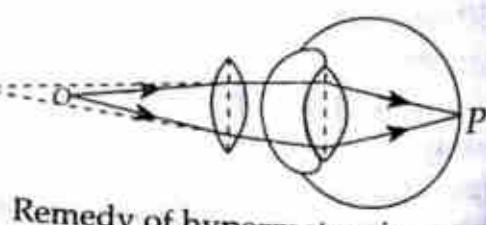
(b) The focal length of the lens increases.

(c) Power of the eye lens decreases, thus here the image doesn't form on the retina but forms just behind it.



Hypermetropia

Remedial measures : The hypermetropia-affected person uses convex lens of suitable focal length so that now the image starts to form on the retina.



Remedy of hypermetropia

(iii) Presbyopia : In old age, the power of accommodation of the eye is diminished (ended) due to which person can see neither the near object nor the far flung object.

Remedial measures : The presbyopia affected person uses *bifocal lens* of suitable focal length.

(iv) Astigmatism : The person suffering from astigmatism sees clearly horizontally but not being capable to look vertically. The person affected by it uses *cylindrical lens* of suitable wavelength.

(v) Colour Blindness : Every human eye by nature is not able to see every colour distinctly and this defect of vision is called colour blindness. Colour blindness is of many types and it occurs at various levels. The colour blindness depends on various defects of the cylindrical (conical) cells of the retina. The colour blindness is basically a hereditary disease which is not curable. The person suffering of colour blindness cannot distinguish the red and green colours distinctly.

(vi) Persistence of vision : The image of an object persists on the retina of the eye upto $1/10$ second. If the object is then removed from the eye, the object viability persists upto $1/10$ second. This special characteristic of vision is called persistence of vision. Cinema works on this principle. Due to persistence of vision various celestial phenomena occur in the sky. The blades of fast moving electric fan also appears indistinctive due to the same reason.

12. Optical Instruments

(i) Camera : The camera is an optical device with which photographs of various objects are taken on the photographic plate or film and by developing the reel permanent photos are prepared.

Ordinarily a camera is of two types—

(a) Box camera (b) Folding camera

Important parts of the camera

Light insulated box : This is made of wood or metal whose length is fixed in the box camera. But in folding camera this box is made of leather whose length is not fixed. This box is fully enclosed from every side so that no external light ray can enter inside to it. The inner part of the walls are black polished due to which light ray doesn't reflect.

Lens : In front of the light insulated box a convex lens is enclosed which is called objective. In good quality cameras the objective is made from the composition of various lenses. Due to it aberration in the image doesn't appear.

Diaphragm : Just in front of the objective a round metallic screen is enclosed in which a hole is made through which the light in the camera enters which is called diaphragm. The size of the hole is adjustable which can be increased or decreased according to requirement.

Shutter : Behind the lens an autocut plate is attached which is called shutter. Whenever a shutter is enclosed light doesn't enter inside the camera. During taking photographs it is opened and light is focused on the film or photographic plate upto a definite time interval like $1/10$, $1/50$, $1/100$,

etc and the times are called time of exposure. The time of exposure is decided by various parameters like value of aperture, speed of the film, intensity of the light etc.

Ground glass screen : It is a plate of grounded (or rubbed) glass which is enclosed in the rear part of the camera. The distance of the lens from it is adjusted in such a way that the image of the object is taken sharply and distinctly. After adjusting the distance the photographic plate or the film is attached.

Terms related to camera

Aperture : The effective diameter of the lens is called aperture.

Relative aperture : It is the ratio of effective diameter and focal length of the lens.

$$\text{Thus; relative aperture} = \frac{\text{Effective diameter of the lens}}{\text{Focal length of the lens}}$$

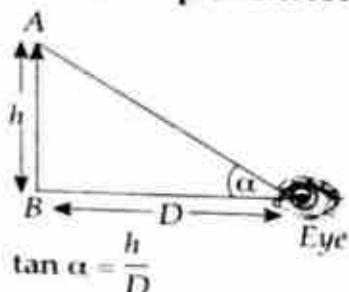
Focal ratio : The reciprocal of the relative aperture is called focal ratio.

$$\text{Thus focal ratio} = \frac{\text{focal length of the lens}}{\text{effective diameter of the lens}}$$

f - number : The numerical value of the focal ratio is called f-number.

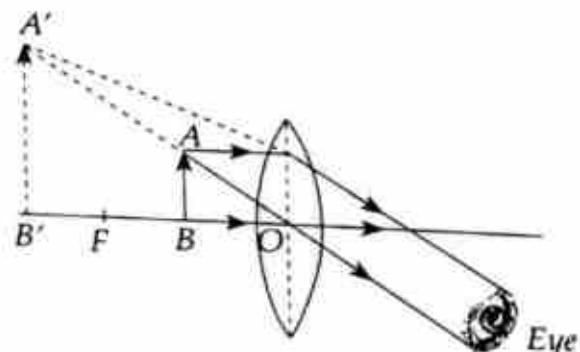
$$\text{Thus; } f\text{-number} = \frac{\text{focal distance}}{\text{effective diameter}} = \frac{f}{d}$$

(ii) Simple Microscope (Magnifying Glass) :



h – length of the object AB

D = least distance of distinct vision



The simple microscope is an optical instrument in which a convex lens of small focal length is taken and the body (object) whose magnified image is to be obtained is kept between the optical centre (O) and the focus (F) of the lens. The image obtained through the simple microscope is virtual, erect and magnified. Also as the angle made by the image at the eye is greater than the angle made by the object and thus it acts as magnifying glass. A more curved convex lens has a more magnification, due to shorter focal length of the lens the image of the object is formed nearer and consequently the angle made on the eye is large. Thus, the object appears more magnified.

Magnifying Power : The magnifying power of any lens is defined as the ratio of angle made by the image (β) at the eye to the angle made by objects (α) at the eye at the least distance of distinct vision.

$$\text{Thus; magnifying power (m)} = \frac{\beta}{\alpha}$$

ture is decided
intensity of
glass which
lens from it
sharply and
the film is

e.
al length

al ratio.

called

e

s

:

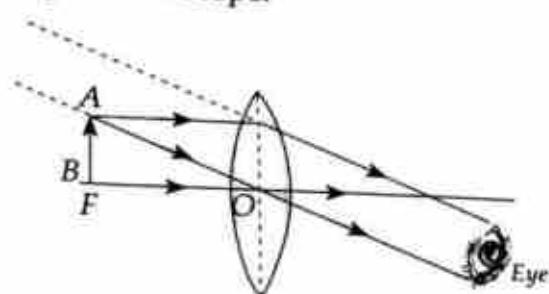
.

For a simple microscope, magnifying power (m) = $1 + \frac{D}{f}$
where, D = least distance of distinct vision.
 $= 25$ cm.

f = focal length of the simple microscope.

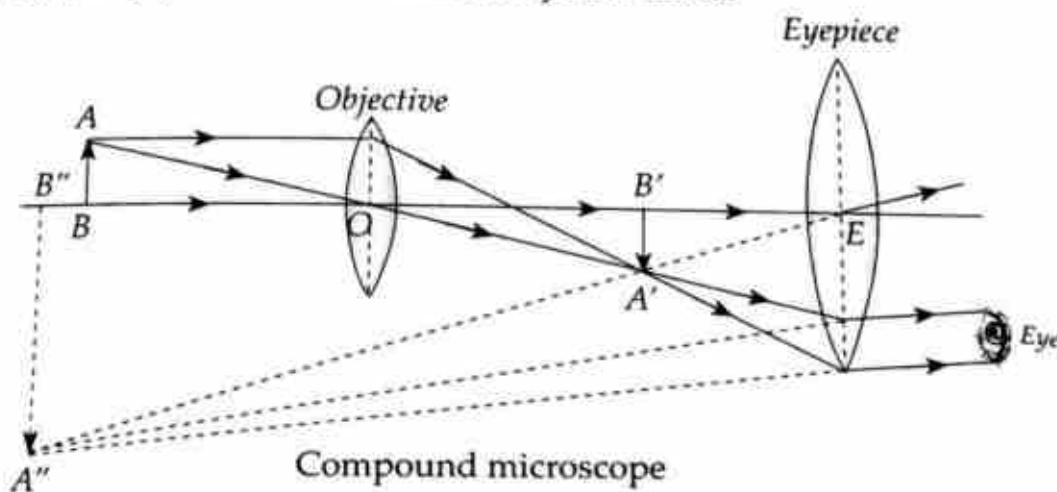
Virtual Image at infinity: If in a simple microscope the object is kept at the focus (F) of the lens then a virtual image is formed at infinity.

Here, the magnifying power of the simple microscope (m) = $\frac{D}{f}$.



(iii) Compound Microscope

: It is an optical instrument which magnifies the image of the object substantially and the magnifying power of the microscope is obtained from two parts (components) called compound microscope. The compound microscope consists of two coaxial convex lenses, one is called objective near to which object is located and the other is called eyepiece near to which the eye is located.



The aperture and focal length of the objective is smaller than that of the eyepiece in the compound microscope. The focal lengths of the objective is smaller than the eyepiece. Both objective and eyepiece are coaxially adjusted in a tube (pipe) in which the image formed by the objective acts as an object for the eyepiece and ultimately a magnified image is formed at the least distance of distinct vision.

Magnifying power: The magnifying power of the compound microscope

$$= m_o \times m_e = \left(\frac{v_o}{f_o} - 1 \right) \left(1 + \frac{D}{f_e} \right) = \frac{v_o}{u_o} \left(1 + \frac{D}{f_e} \right)$$

If L is the distance between the objective and eyepiece
then magnifying power (m) =

$$\left[\frac{L - \frac{Df_e}{D + f_e}}{f_o} - 1 \right] \left(1 + \frac{D}{f_e} \right) = \frac{D(L - f_o - f_e) + f_e(L - f_e)}{f_e f_o}$$

where m_o = magnifying power of objective.
 m_e = magnifying power of eyepiece.
 u_o = distance of the object from objective.
 v_o = distance of the image from objective.
 D = least distance of distinct vision = 25 cm.
 f_o = focal length of objective.
 f_e = focal length of eyepiece.

(iv) Telescope : An optical instrument through which the sharp and distinct images of the celestial bodies or smaller bodies (objects) located at far flung distances (remotely located) are easily seen and measured.

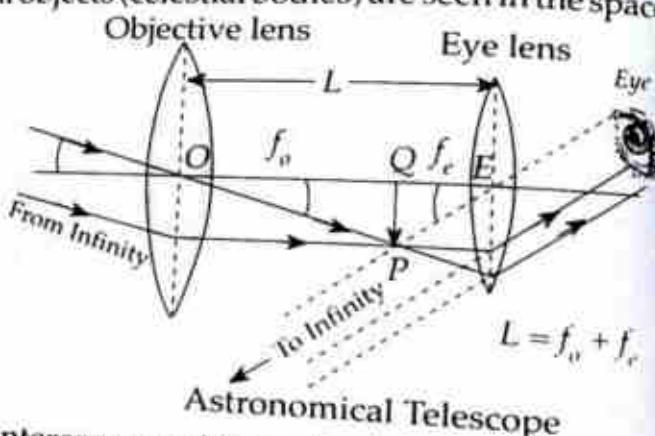
Generally telescopes are of two types—

(A) Refracting Telescope (B) Reflecting Telescope

In this book we have studied only about the refracting telescopes and the study of reflecting telescopes is beyond the extent of this book which has no significant relevancy in the book of General Science.

(A) Refracting Telescope : It is of three types :

(a) Astronomical Telescope : The astronomical telescope was firstly constructed by Denmark's astrologer Kepler in 1911. With the help of this telescope distant astronomical objects (celestial bodies) are seen in the space. This telescope consists of two convex lenses, one of which is called objective whose aperture and focal length are large and it is kept in a long flat pipe, while another is called eyepiece whose aperture and focal length are small compared to the objective. The eyepiece is kept in another small thin pipe and these two pipes are interconnected to each other. Both objective and eyepiece are kept coaxially inside in the pipe.



Astronomical Telescope

The accommodation in astronomical telescope is done by two methods :
(i) Accommodation for infinity : The final image in this mode of accommodation is formed at infinity in which the image is too much magnified. Such accommodation is called focusing at infinity.

(ii) Accommodation for the least distance of distinct vision : The final image in this accommodation is formed at the least distance of distinct vision (25 cm) and accommodation is called focusing for normal vision. Here image is inverted, magnified and distinctive.

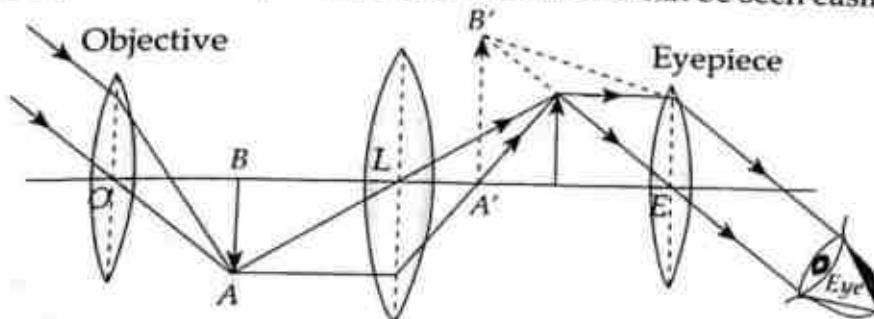
Magnifying power of an astronomical telescope :

(i) Magnifying power when image is formed at the least distance of distinct vision. The magnifying power (M) = $\frac{f_o}{f_e} \left(1 + \frac{f_e}{D}\right)$

$$\Rightarrow M = \frac{f_o}{f_e} \left(1 + \frac{f_e}{D}\right)$$

- (ii) Magnifying power when image is formed at infinity (M) = $\frac{f_o}{f_e}$
- (iii) If L is the length of the telescope then $L = f_o + f_e$ when image is formed at infinity.
- (iv) If the image is forming at the least distance of distinct vision then the length of the telescope = $f_o + u = f_o + \frac{Df_e}{f_e + D}$
- where f_o = focal length of the objective.
 f_e = focal length of the eyepiece.
 u = distance of the object.
 D = least distance of distinct vision.
 M = magnifying power.

(b) Terrestrial Telescope : As the final image formed is inverted in the astronomical telescope. That's why this telescope is not suitable to see the objects located on the earth. Thus, if an arrangement is to be made to form an erect image, then this telescope is called terrestrial telescope. Now by this telescope distant object of the earth's surface can be seen easily.



Terrestrial Telescope

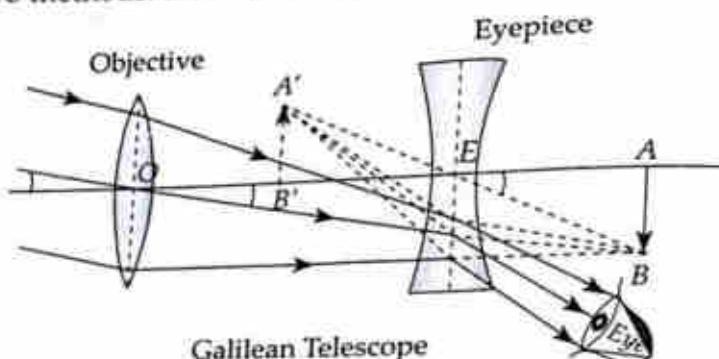
In terrestrial telescope image formed is erect and virtual. Here accommodation is also done by two methods, one at ∞ and another at the least distance of distinct vision. In this telescope there are three coaxial convex lenses in which a convex lens of larger focal length is kept between objective and eyepiece through which a virtual image is obtained in the erect form.

Magnifying power

- (i) If image is formed at infinity, then (M) = $\frac{f_o}{f_e}$,
and the length of the telescope = $f_o + 4f + f_e$.
- (ii) If image is formed at the least distance of distinct vision, then

$$(M) = \frac{f_o}{f_e} \left(1 + \frac{f_e}{D}\right); \quad \text{length of the telescope} = f_o + 4f + \frac{Df_e}{D + f_e}$$
- where; f_o = focal length of objective.
 f_e = focal length of eyepiece.
 f = focal length of the middle lens.
 D = least distance of distinct vision.
 M = magnifying power (angular magnification).

(c) Galilean Telescope : This telescope was constructed in about 1609 AD by Galileo himself. In this telescope the objective is a convex lens of larger focal length and larger aperture, while eyepiece is a concave lens of larger focal length and smaller aperture. The arrangement in this telescope is also done by two methods. Here the image formed is always erect with respect to object.



Magnifying power (M) :

- (i) When image is formed at infinity.

$$M = \frac{f_o}{f_e}; \text{ Length of the telescope} = f_o - f_e.$$

- (ii) When image forms at the least distance of distinct vision.

$$M = \frac{f_o}{f_e} \left(1 + \frac{f_e}{D}\right); \quad \text{Length of the telescope} = f_o - u = f_o - 1 + \frac{f_e D}{D - f_e}$$

Miscellaneous

Optical path : When a ray of light travels a distance d in a medium of refractive index μ , the product μd is called *optical path in the medium*. It represents the distance in air or more strictly in vacuum in which the light travels in the same time in which it travels the distance d in the medium.

Thus optical path = velocity of light in air \times travelling time.
Thus, optical path \propto travelling time.

Fermat's principle : A ray of light travelling from one point to another by any number of reflections and refractions follows a path for which compared with all other neighbouring paths, the time taken is either minimum or maximum or stationary. This is called *Fermat's principle of stationary time* or *Fermat's principle of extremum path*.

Cardinal points of a coaxial optical system : A coaxial optical system usually consists of a number of lenses placed apart and having a common principal axis. The position and size of the image of an object formed by such a system can be determined by considering refraction at each lens separately.

Gauss showed that if in an optical system the positions of certain specific points is known, the system may be treated as a single unit. The position and size of the image of an object may then directly be obtained by the same relations as used for thin lenses or single surface whatever complicated the optical system.

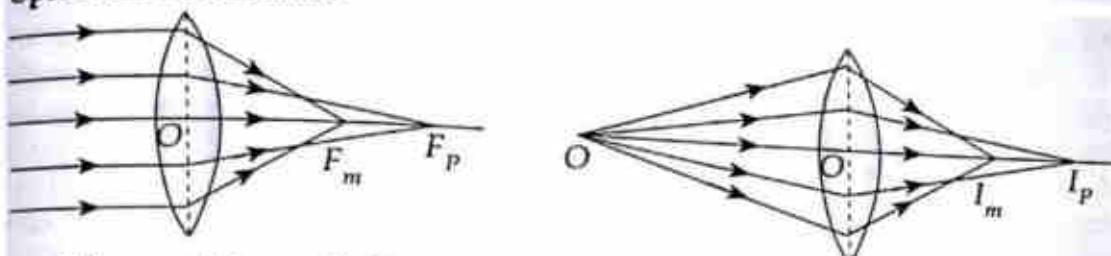
There are six cardinal points of an optical system; two focal points, two principal points and two nodal points.

Eyepiece : An eyepiece is a specially designed magnifier which gives a more perfect image than that obtained by a single lens of equal focal length. It is used in telescope and microscope to magnify the image formed by their respective objectives.

Chromatic Aberration : The image of a white object formed by a lens is usually coloured and blurred. This defect of the image is called *chromatic aberration*. It arises because the refractive index of the lens material varies with the colour (wave length) of the light.

Achromatism of lenses : When two or more lenses are combined together in such a way that the combination is free from chromatic aberration, then such a combination is called achromatic combination of the lenses or achromatism of lenses.

Spherical Aberration



When a wide parallel beam of light falls upon a convex lens in a direction parallel to the principal axis, it doesn't come to a single point focus. The paraxial rays (i.e. the rays lying close to the axis) after refraction through the lens come to a focus F_p while marginal rays (i.e. the rays lying far from the axis) come to a focus F_m which is nearer the lens than F_p . Similarly when a point object O is placed on the axis of the lens, the paraxial rays come to focus at I_p , while the marginal rays come to a focus at I_m nearer the lens. The intermediate rays are brought to focus between I_m and I_p . This failure of the lens to form a point-image of an axial point-object is called *spherical aberration*.

V. Electricity & Magnetism

Section - A Electrostatics

A famous Greek philosopher Thales in about 600 BC observed that when a glass rod was rubbed with a cat's skin, then the small paper pieces, corks etc were attracted by the glass rod and cat's skin. This implies that glass rod and cat's skin both are electrified or charged. Thales is assumed to be the founder of Modern electric era. Later, in 16th century the contemporary of Galileo Dr. Gilbert proved that like glass rod and cat's skin there are so many pairs which undergo for the process of electrification. The hard rubber (ebonite) and fur, ordinary glass and silk etc. can be electrified on rubbing and the characteristic of attraction of the small pieces of paper, corks, etc. become inherent. This is called frictional electricity or static electricity. Thus, electrostatics is that branch of physics in which we study about the electrification of the bodies and in which charges remain static.

Kinds of charges : When an electric charge is produced by rubbing, then both rubbed bodies are electrified and both have same charges but of opposite nature. Thus, one has +ve charge and other has -ve charge. This concept of +ve and -ve charges was first given by Benjamin Franklin. Thus, in frictional electricity both nature of charges appear at a time in equal magnitude.

Here, we arrange a table in which every predecessor has a +ve charge and every successor has a -ve charge.

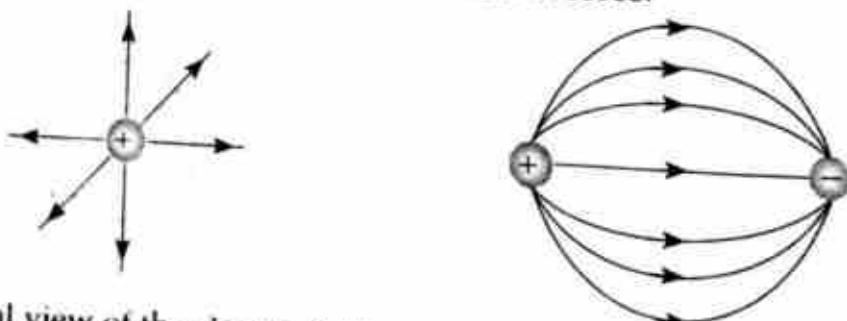
1. Fur	2. Flannel	3. Leather	4. Wax
5. Glass	6. Paper	7. Silk	8. Human body
9. Wood	10. Metal	11. Rubber	12. Resin
13. Amber	14. Sulphur	15. Ebonite	16. Gata-Parcha

It is also observed that like charges repel each other, while unlike charges attract each other.

Modern concept or principle of electricity : There were various opinions and views of scientists to explain frictional electricity but modern electronic theory had been comprehensively accepted. The outstanding contributions of Thomson, Rutherford, Millikan, Niels Bohr etc. are important in the explanation of modern electronic theory. According to this theory, when two bodies are rubbed then the electrons of the outermost orbit of the atoms of one body transfer to the atoms of the another body and thus, the first body has lesser number of electrons than the second body. Thereby, the first body becomes positively charged and the second body becomes negatively charged. This is the latest concept of electrification.

Electric field : If an isolated charge is kept anywhere then the region or space around it upto which if any other charged particle is brought then experiences a force. This region or space is called electric field. Theoretically (or ideally) this space is assumed to be infinite.

Electric lines of force : An electric field is sometimes visualised by drawing a set of lines, which are such that their direction of any point (i.e. the direction of the tangent) is the same as that of the electric field at that point, then such lines are called electric lines of force.



A pictorial view of the electric field due to a positive point charge and the pair of two equal and opposite (+ve and -ve) charges have been shown in the above figure.

These lines of force of an electric field are open and closed. They originate normally from the positively charged particle and terminate on the negatively charged particle Owing to the single valued property of the direction of the intensity of the electric field point of view two lines of force never intersect each other. Also if the electric field is stronger then there is

a greater concentration of the lines of force but for a weaker (feeble) field the electric lines of force are less concentrated.

Conductor : The body in which electric charge carriers (free electrons) are found to be mobile and due to which an electric current is generated then this type of body is called good conductor or conductor.

All metallic bodies, acids, human body etc. are good conductor of electricity. The best conductors are metallic bodies like—silver, copper, iron etc. Silver and copper are the two well known metals which have the best electrical conductivity. In all metallic bodies only free electrons are charge carriers due to which electric current generates.

Bad conductor and Insulator : The body which does not have mobile charge carriers are called bad conductor. Sometimes in a bad conductor also immobile charge carriers are activated to become free in a zig-zag way but not regularly like in wet rod of wood, thus it acts like a good conductor. But if the charge carriers are not able to make themselves free then bad conductor is called insulator.

Wood, rubber, mica etc. are examples of bad conductors but asbestos, ebonite etc. are examples of insulators.

Semiconductor: Those bodies whose electrical conductivity or resistivity lies between the conductor and insulator are called semi conductors. At 0 K all semi conductors are insulators. In semi conductors the charge carriers are both electrons and holes (+ve ions).

Germanium, silicon, selenium etc. are examples of semiconductors. On adding impurity in pure semiconductor its electrical conductivity increases too. If the temperature of a good conductor is increased, then its electrical resistance will increase, consequently its electrical conductance will decrease. But in a semiconductor with rise in temperature its resistance decreases and consequently its conductivity increases. That's why it is said that a semiconductor has negative temperature coeff. of the resistance while metallic conductor has a positive temperature coeff. of the resistance.

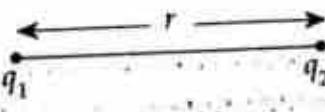
Surface charge density : The charge confined in unit area of any conductor is called surface charge density.

$$\text{Thus surface charge density} = \frac{\text{electric charge}}{\text{Area}}$$

The surface charge density of any conductor also depends on the shape and size, the presence of other conductor or on the electro resistive bodies. The surface charge density is obviously maximum at the pointed part of the conductor due to minimum surface area. Whenever the air particles come in contact with pointed charged conductor, then these are electrified and after repulsion get detached. To occupy the position of these air particles other air particles rush and this phenomenon occurs frequently. Thus, the detachment of air particles (electrified) form a phenomenon of convectional discharge and this convectional current is called electric wind.

Coulomb's law or Electrostatic force

If two stationary point charges q_1 and q_2 are kept apart at a finite distance r , then there exists a force



ibbing
but of
e. This
Thus,
equal
charge
ody

ha
ges
ons
nic
he
en
ns
st
st
y

n
1
'

of attraction or repulsion due to both point charges and this force is directly proportional to the product of charges q_1, q_2 and inversely proportional to the square of the distance r . This is called Coulomb's law.

$$\text{Thus } F \propto q_1 q_2, F \propto \frac{1}{r^2}$$

$$\Rightarrow F = \frac{1}{4\pi \epsilon_0} \frac{q_1 q_2}{r^2} \quad (\text{In air or vacuum})$$

[where; $\frac{1}{4\pi \epsilon_0}$ is called a constant $= 9 \times 10^9 \text{ N.m}^2\text{coul.}^{-2}$]

Here ϵ_0 is called the absolute permittivity of free space and its numerical value for air or vacuum is $8.85 \times 10^{-12} \text{ coul. N}^{-1}\text{m}^{-2}$.

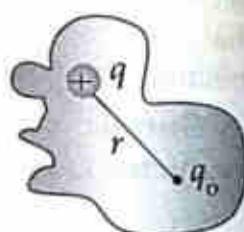
If q_1 and q_2 are the charges of like nature, then there will be a force of repulsion but for unlike nature there will be a force of attraction.

Importance of electrostatic force : In an atom the orbiting electrons and protons (part of massive nucleus) balance to each other by an electrostatical coulombian force. Thus, atoms remain neutral. The molecules are composed through these atoms and the matter through the molecules. Thus, electrostatical force is significant among interatomic and intermolecular binding of matter. Also Coulomb's force is similar to the gravitational force and this force (weakest force) is only attractive in nature by the virtue of their masses (no concept of -ve mass) while coulombian force is both attractive and repulsive and predominants from any larger distance up to 10^{-14} m . For the distance of less than 10^{-14} m coulomb's force doesn't exist but nuclear force (strongest in the all forces) becomes operative which doesn't depend on the charges and distances.

Electric field Intensity or Electric field strength or Electric Intensity :

If in the electric field of a charged particle (say, q) any other unit positive test charge (say, q_0) is kept at any point then this test charge experiences a force and it is called electric field intensity of that point and it is a vector quantity and its direction is as that of the force (coulomb force)

$$\text{Obviously } F = \frac{1}{4\pi \epsilon_0} \frac{q q_0}{r^2} \text{ Newton.}$$



$$\text{But the electric field intensity } (E) = \frac{F}{q_0} = \frac{1}{4\pi \epsilon_0} \frac{q}{r^2} \text{ N/coul.}$$

Thus, SI unit of electric field intensity is Newton/coulomb. Another SI unit of it is volt/metre.

Electric field of a hollow conductor : The electric field inside a hollow conductor is zero. In fact whenever such conductor is electrified then the charges reside on the outer surface of the conductor. Thus hollow spherical body acts like an electrostatical shield. That's why if anybody is travelling in a car on a rainy day and an electrical lighting strikes the car then this will reside on the outer surface (roof of the car) and the traveller remains safe inside the car.

Electric dipole and electric dipole moment

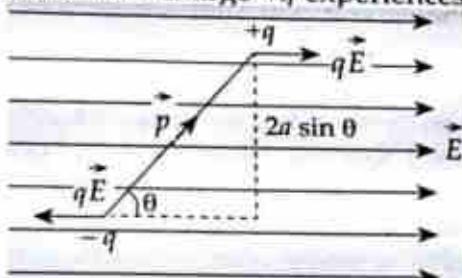
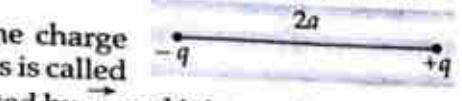
If two stationary point charges of equal magnitude but of opposite sign are kept a small (short) distance apart, then this electrical configuration is called an *electric dipole*.

The product of the magnitude of the charge and the distance between both the charges is called electric dipole moment and it is represented by \vec{p} and it is a vector quantity directed from -ve to +ve charge, along the dipole axis.

$$\text{Thus, } \vec{p} = 2aq \text{ (electric dipole moment)}$$

Electric dipole kept in an electric field

(i) If the field be uniform : If a dipole is kept in a uniform external electric field E making an angle θ with the field, then the charge $+q$ experiences a force qE in the direction of the field, while the charge $-q$ experiences an equal force in the opposite direction. Thus, there is no net force on the dipole. But these two equal and opposite forces form a couple which produces a torque and it tends to set the dipole in the direction of the field.

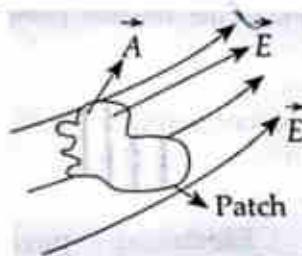


(ii) If the field be non-uniform : In a non-uniform field, the forces on the two charges will not be equal and opposite and so there will be a net force on the dipole and this force will also generate a couple and so a torque.

Thus, in non-uniform field a dipole experiences both a net force and a torque.

Electric flux : The electric flux is defined as the product of the electric field intensity and the outward normal area of any particular patch where an electric field is assumed to be confined.

It is represented by ϕ_E . Thus; $\phi_E = EA$. Its SI unit is N/coul.m² or volt-metre.



Gauss's law : Gauss's law states that electric flux ϕ_E through any closed surface is equal to $\frac{1}{\epsilon_0}$ times the net charge q enclosed by the surface.

$$\text{Thus } \phi_E = EA = \frac{q}{\epsilon_0}. \Rightarrow E = \frac{q}{\epsilon_0 A} = \frac{q}{\epsilon_0} \cdot \frac{1}{4\pi r^2} = \frac{1}{4\pi \epsilon_0} \cdot \frac{q}{r^2}$$

(For the spherical surface $A = 4\pi r^2$)

where E = electric field intensity

This law gives a relation between the electric flux and the charge enclosed through any closed hypothetical surface (called Gaussian surface).

Gauss's law is the most fundamental law instead of coulomb's law due to certain conceptual advantages. The first advantage is that Gauss's law starts with the concept of electric field, which is more fundamental than the interaction of charges with which coulomb's law deals. According to modern field theory approach, the interaction between the two charges occurs abundantly through the electric field. The second advantage is that all

those results which were given by coulomb's law after tedious calculations were too complicated but it had much simpler way by Gauss's law.

Electric potential : The electric potential at any point is defined as the work done by an external agent in bringing a unit positive test charge from infinity to that point confined in an electric field.

Thus, if W work is done in bringing a unit positive test charge q_0 from infinity to a point then electric potential at that point = $V = \frac{W}{q_0} \Rightarrow W = Vq_0$

S.I. unit of electric potential is Joule/coul. or volt. The special unit of electric potential is volt in the honour of an Italian scientist Alessandro Volta. The electric potential is a scalar quantity. If 1 coulomb +ve test charge is brought from infinity (∞) to any point and thus, does a work of 1 Joule then 1 volt potential is said to be confined at that point.

Zero potential : For the measurement of any physical quantity usually a standard parameter or reference point is taken, whose indicator reads zero level. Thus, to measure electric potential earth is taken to be a reference level and the value of electric potential at any point on the earth's surface is assumed to be zero. Our earth is a great conductor in which addition or subtraction of some charges do not change the value of its potential. That's why at every point of earth's surface electric potential is assumed to be always zero.

Potential difference or Potential drop : If in an electric field a unit positive test charge is carried out by an external agent from one point to another, then the work done in this process is called potential difference (p.d) between both the points.

The p.d. is measured in volt and it is also a scalar quantity.

The inside potential of a hollow conductor : Whenever a hollow conductor is electrified (charged), then the charges accumulate on the outer surface of the conductor and this charge doesn't enter the hollow part of the conductor. Thus there is no inside charge but the potential of this part (hollow part) is not zero. In fact every point inside the conductor has equal potential and it is equal to the potential of the conductor.

Electrical capacity and capacitor or condenser : When a conductor is given a charge, its potential rises in proportion to the charge given. Thus if a charge Q raises the potential of a conductor by V , then $Q \propto V$ i.e. $Q = CV$, where C is a constant depending upon the size and shape of the conductor, the surrounding medium and the presence of another conductors near by to it. This constant C is called electrical capacity or capacitance of the conductor.

$$\text{Thus } C = \frac{Q}{V}$$

S.I. unit of the electrical capacitance is coul./volt and its special name is **farad**.

It is also observed that farad is a too large unit and so in practice smaller units like microfarad and picofarad are used.

Thus we use:

1 microfarad (1 μF) = $10^{-6} F$
1 picofarad (1 pF) = $10^{-12} F$

Capacitance of an isolated conducting sphere : Let us consider an isolated conducting sphere of radius r placed in vacuum (or air). Suppose it is given a charge q . This charge spreads on the surface of the sphere in such a way that all points on and inside the sphere are at the same potential.

The potential is given by $V = \frac{q}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r}$

$$\text{If } C \text{ be the capacitance of the sphere then } C = \frac{q}{V} = \frac{q}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r} \\ \Rightarrow \text{capacitance } (C) = 4\pi\epsilon_0 r.$$

This concludes that the capacitance of an isolated sphere is directly proportional to its radius.

Capacitor or Condensor : An isolated conductor has a very small capacity of storing the charges i.e. only very small amount of charges given to the conductor raises its potential by a large amount. If however a second earthed conductor is placed near it, then an equal and opposite amount of charges are induced on the front surface of the second conductor which lowers the potential of the first conductor. Thus capacitance of the conductor increases. Such a pair of conductors which can store a good amount of charge is called a *capacitor or condensor*. The conductors are called the plates of the capacitor. The net charge on a capacitor means the magnitude of charge on either plate.

There are broadly three types of capacitors—where,

$$(1) \text{ Parallel-plate capacitor } \left(C = \frac{\epsilon_0 A}{d} \right)$$

$$(2) \text{ Spherical capacitor } \left(C = 4\pi\epsilon_0 \frac{ab}{b-a} \right)$$

$$(3) \text{ Cylindrical capacitor } \left(C = \frac{2\pi\epsilon_0 l}{\log_e \left(\frac{b}{a} \right)} \right)$$

A = area

d = plate separation

a, b = inner and outer spherical or cylindrical radii

l = length of the cylinder

Dielectric : A dielectric (an insulator) is a material in which all the electrons are tightly bound to the nuclei of the atoms. Thus there are no free electrons to generate the current. Hence, the electrical conductivity of a dielectric is very low. The conductivity of an ideal dielectric is zero. Glass, mica, plastic, oil etc. are examples of dielectrics.

Dielectric constant : When a dielectric material is kept between the plates of a capacitor, the capacitance of the capacitor increases. The ratio of the capacitance of a given capacitor with the material (dielectric) filling the entire space between its plates to the capacitance of the same capacitor in the vacuum is called dielectric constant or specific inductive capacity of the material. Thus, if C_d is the capacitance with dielectric material and C_0 that of without dielectric in the vacuum, then dielectric constant (k) = C_d/C_0 .

The value of dielectric constant is independent from the shape and size of the capacitor, but its value varies widely for different materials.

For vacuum; $(k) = 1$ air; $(k) = 1.006$ glass; $(k) = 6$ etc.

Nonpolar and polar molecules : The molecules of dielectrics are classified as *nonpolar* and *polar*. A nonpolar molecule is one in which the

centre of gravity of the positive charges (protons) coincide with the centre of gravity of the negative charges (electrons). In other words, a polar molecule is one in which the centre of gravity of positive charges is separated from the centre of gravity of negative charges by a finite distance. The polar molecule thus acts like an electric dipole and has an intrinsic and permanent dipole moment. A nonpolar molecule has obviously a zero electric dipole moment.

Molecules having a symmetrical structure are nonpolar. Examples - H_2 , N_2 , O_2 , CO_2 , CH_4 etc. But molecules having spherical symmetry of atoms are polar. Examples - HCl , CO , H_2O , NH_3 etc.

Electric polarization of matter: When a dielectric material is kept in an electric field, the positive and negative charges of its (non-polar) molecules or atoms, experience electrostatic forces in the opposite directions. Thus, the centre of gravity of the two charges are separated from each other. The molecules thus acquire an induced electric dipole moment in the direction of the field. This phenomenon is called electric polarization of matter.

Section - B

Current Electricity

Metallic bodies have free electrons as charge carriers and between any two points which are at different potential electric charges move from a higher to a lower potential and for these charge carriers the direction of conventional current is that of the charge carriers. Since metallic bodies do not have any +ve charges as charge carriers but only electrons (-vely charge carriers) are charge carriers. That's why the conventional current is assumed to flow from a low potential to a high potential or opposite to the direction of flow of charge carriers (electrons) in metallic conductors.

Despite the magnitude and direction of the electric current, it is a scalar quantity because it doesn't obey the triangle law of vector addition or parallelogram law of vectors. Usually in solid conductors electric current is produced by the electrons, while in liquid it is produced through the ions and electrons and in semiconductor electric current is produced through both the charge carriers electrons and holes.

If in any electrical circuit the electric current is passed unidirectionally then it is called direct current (d.c.) but if electric current passes in the sinusoidal (plusuatiing) parallel form then it is called alternating current (a.c.). The electric current is measured in ampere and its another unit is coulomb/second. If in a metallic conductor (wire) 1 ampere electric current is passed then in every second 6.25×10^{18} electrons will enter from one end and the same number of electrons will be passed out.

Thus, an isolated metallic conductor (say wire) always contains some number of free electrons which are moving at random with high speeds which are called conduction electrons. When the ends of a wire are connected to a battery, an electric field is set up at every point within the wire. This field exerts a force on each conduction electron called electro motive force (emf). Thereby, the total number of free charges passing through any cross-section per second is the electric current in the wire. If a free charge q passes

through any cross-section of the wire in time t , then the electric current i is defined as $i = \frac{q}{t}$.

Current density : The current per unit area of any cross-section of the conductor is called **current density**. It is the characteristic of a point inside a conductor (not the characteristic of the conductor as a whole). If the current is distributed uniformly across a conductor of cross-sectional area A , the current density at all points in that cross-section is given by

$$j = \frac{i}{A}$$

The current density is a vector quantity while current is a scalar quantity. Obviously, SI unit of the current density j will be ampere/metre² or coulombs/sec-metre².

Electric cell: The electric cell is an equipment which maintains a potential difference between any two points of the conducting wire so that the flow of electric current is continuously sustained. In electric cells the chemical energy which is produced by various chemical reactions transforms into electrical energy. There are two metallic rods in every electric cell which are called electrodes and which have opposite nature. The metallic rod which is +vely charged is called anode and collected ions are called anions, while the metallic rod which is -vely charged is called cathode and collected ions are called cations. These metallic rods (electrodes) are kept inside the solvent of the container called electrolyte.

Usually electric cells are of two types :

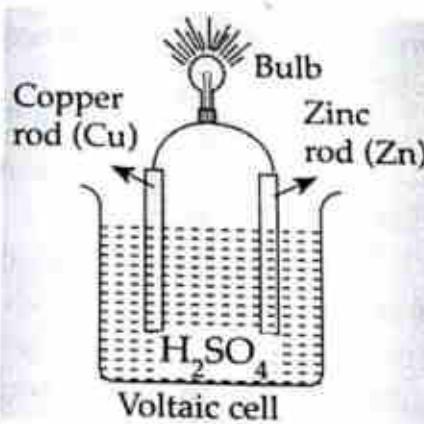
- (i) Primary cell (ii) Secondary cell

(i) Primary cell : In a primary cell chemical energy is directly converted into electrical energy and when all the chemical energy is exhausted (used up) the cell becomes dead. The volta cell, Leclanche's cell, dry cell, Daniel's cell etc. are the examples of primary cell.

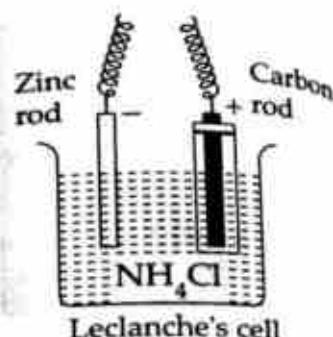
(ii) Secondary cell : In a secondary cell first the electrical energy is converted into chemical energy. Then this chemical energy is converted into electrical energy. The entire process is completed by charging and during its use it is discharged then it is again charged and this is the process (way) of its functioning. That's why all the secondary cells are rechargeable. The process of recharging is done through an external source of electrical energy. The battery or cell attached in motor vehicle, motor bike, emergency light etc. are the examples of secondary cell.

Voltaic cell : The voltaic cell was invented by Professor Alsendro Volta in 1799. In this cell a zinc rod and a copper rod are kept inside the glass container of sulphuric acid (H_2SO_4).

In this cell the copper rod acts like an anode and the zinc rod acts like a cathode. The value of emf in this cell is 1.08 volt.



Leclanche cell : In this cell in a glass container a saturated solution of NH_4Cl is taken in which zinc rod acts like a cathode and carbon rod is kept in the mixture of manganese dioxide (MnO_2) which acts like an anode the value of emf is 1.5 volt. This type of cell is used where electric current is not regularly available. Such cells are mainly used in electric alarm, siren, telephone etc.



Leclanche's cell

Dry cell : In this cell the electrolyte used is not in the form of solution but it remains in the dry form. In it there is a zinc container (vessel) in which manganese dioxide (MnO_2), ammonium chloride (NH_4Cl) and carbon are kept and in the middle of this mixture a carbon rod is kept. Here, the carbon rod acts like an anode while the zinc container acts like a cathode. The dense paste of ammonium chloride is kept inside the mixture of MnO_2 and carbon. The value of emf of this cell is also 1.5 volt. Such cells are used frequently in torch, transistor, radio etc.

Emf of the cell : Through any cell if 1 coulomb electric charge be circulated in a complete closed circuit, then the electrical energy supplied by the cell is called electromotive force (emf). The emf of the cell is measured in volt. The value of emf of the cell is always greater than the potential difference (pd) of the terminals of the cell or battery.

Internal resistance of a cell : The resistance produced by the electrolyte of the cell in the path of electric current is called internal resistance of the cell. If E , V and I are the emf , potential difference (pd) and electric current respectively, then the internal resistance of the cell is given by

$$r = \frac{E - V}{I}$$

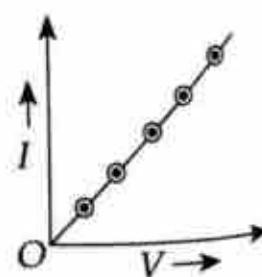
Electric Conduction; Ohm's law : Firstly, a German physicist George Simen Ohm invented a relation between electric current and potential difference between any two points of a conductor. He stated that at a constant temperature the current passed through any conductor is proportional to the potential difference of any two points and this is called Ohm's law.

If V and I are the pd of any two points of a conductor and electric current passed through it, then according to Ohm's law

$$V \propto I \quad \text{i.e.,} \quad V = RI$$

where R is a proportionally constant called resistance of the conductor.

Thus, resistance of any conductor is the internal characteristic of the conductor which appears during the flow of electric current and which opposes it. In fact the free electrons which are the charge carriers of the metallic conductor (good conductor) collide with the another



free electrons, atoms and molecules consequently the electrical resistance is produced (generated).

As from Ohm's law Resistance (R) = $\frac{\text{pot. difference } (V)}{\text{electric current } (I)}$

The S.I. unit of electrical resistance is ohm (Ω). The electrical resistance of any conductor depends on the following parameters;

(i) On the nature of the conducting materials.

(ii) On the temperature of the conductor—The resistance of the conductor increases on increasing temperature, and vice-versa. But in semiconductor the resistance decreases with rise (increase) in temperature.

(iii) On the length of the conductor—The resistance of the conductor is directly proportional to the length of the conductor. Thus resistance increases with rise of temperature of the conductor and vice-versa.

(iv) On the area of cross-section—The resistance of the conductor decreases with increase in the area of cross-section and vice-versa.

Ohmic resistance : The conductor which follows Ohm's law is called Ohmic resistor and the corresponding resistance is called Ohmic resistance.

Example—Manganese wire, copper wire, aluminium wire etc.

Non-Ohmic resistance : The conductor which doesn't follow ohm's law is called non-ohmic resistor and the corresponding resistance is called non-ohmic resistance. The non-ohmic resistor (non-linear curve) follows Child Langmuir's law.

Example—Diode valve, triode valve etc.

Child Langmuir's law (diode characteristic non-linear curve) : The diode doesn't follow (obey) Ohm's law but follows Child-Langmuir's non-linear law.

Here as shown in the curve the portion OB is the characteristic curve and Child-Langmuir's law in which the plate current (I_p) increases with the plate voltage (V_p) non-linearly and it is

$$I_p \propto V_p^{\frac{3}{2}}$$

$$\Rightarrow I_p = k V_p^{\frac{3}{2}}$$

where, k is a proportionality constant. This is Child-Langmuir's law.

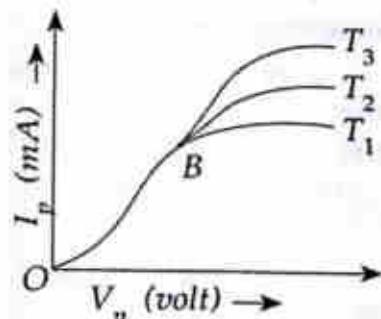
Specific resistance or resistivity : The electrical resistance of any conductor is directly proportional to the length of the conductor and inversely proportional to the cross-sectional area of the conductor.

$$\text{Thus } R \propto \frac{l}{A} \text{ i.e. } R = \rho \frac{l}{A},$$

where, ρ is a proportionality constant called specific resistance.

The value of specific resistance or resistivity depends on the nature of the substance of the conductor and on the temperature.

$$\text{If } l = 1, A = 1 \text{ then } R = \rho \cdot \frac{1}{1} = \rho$$



Thus specific resistance of any conductor is resistance of the conductor if the conductor has unit length and unit area of cross-section. S.I. unit of specific resistance is ohm-metre ($\Omega \cdot m$). The smallest value of specific resistances is of silver. That's why it is the best conductor of the electricity.

Specific resistance of some substances

Substance	Sp. resistance at $0^\circ C$ (in Ωm)	Substance	Sp. resistance on $0^\circ C$ (in Ωm)
Silver	1.6×10^{-8}	Copper	1.7×10^{-8}
Aluminium	2.7×10^{-8}	Tungsten	5.6×10^{-8}
Iron	10×10^{-8}	Platinum	11×10^{-8}
Mercury	98×10^{-8}	Manganese	44×10^{-8}
Nichrome	100×10^{-8}	Carbon	3.5×10^{-5}
Germanium	0.46	Silicon	2.3×10^3
Wood	$10^8 - 10^{11}$	Glass	$10^{10} - 10^{14}$
Mica	$10^{-11} - 10^{15}$		

Electrical conductance : The reciprocal or inverse of the electrical resistance of any conductor is called electrical conductance.

$$\text{Thus electrical conductance } (G) = \frac{1}{\text{electrical resistance } (R)}$$

S.I. unit of conductance is ohm^{-1} (Ω^{-1}) and it is also called *mho*, its S.I. unit is *simen* (*S*).

Specific conductivity : The reciprocal or inverse of the specific resistance is called specific conductivity.

$$\text{Thus, specific conductivity } (\sigma) = \frac{1}{\text{sp. resistance } (\rho)}$$

S.I. unit of specific conductivity is $\text{ohm}^{-1} \text{metre}^{-1}$ ($\Omega^{-1} \text{m}^{-1}$) or *mho* metre $^{-1}$ or *simen* metre $^{-1}$.

Combination of resistance : In order to obtain the derived current through the electrical circuit usually more than one resistors are used. If all the resistors enclosed in the circuit are replaced by a single resistor so that the same electric current be passed, then this resistance is called an equivalent resistance.

Usually in electrical circuits the grouping of the resistances take place by two ways –

(i) series grouping (combination) (ii) parallel grouping (combination)

Series grouping : If various resistors be connected in an electrical circuit in such a way that these resistors have various pd's but the same current through all the resistors then this grouping (combination) is called series grouping. By this grouping maximum resistance is obtained equivalently.

If R_1, R_2, R_3, \dots are various resistances connected in series, then the effective (resultant) resistance of the combination is

$$R_{eq.} = R_1 + R_2 + R_3 + \dots$$

Parallel grouping : If various resistors are connected in an electrical circuit in such a way that these resistors have same pd but different

electric currents. In order to obtain the minimum resistance such grouping (combination) is made.

If R_1, R_2, R_3, \dots are various resistances connected in parallel, then the effective (resultant) resistance of the combination is

$$\frac{1}{R_{eq}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3} \dots$$

Electric power : The rate of loss of the electrical energy in the electric circuit is called electric power. Electric power is defined as the product of electric current and pd of the two end points of any conductor.

Thus, electric power (P) = current (I) \times pd (V)

$$\Rightarrow P = IV$$

SI unit of power is watt. Other larger units of the power are *kilo Watt* (kW) and *Mega Watt* (MW).

kW Hour or unit : 1 kWh (kilo Watt Hour) or 1 unit is that amount of electrical energy which is consumed in 1 hour through any electrical system (circuit).

Thus, 1 unit is the amount of electricity required which is obtained by utilizing a bulb of 100 watt in switching mode up to 10 hours.

If on any electric bulb there is a mark of 60W- 220 V then this implies that if the bulb is switched on 220 volt, then 60 watt power will be consumed every hour.

Example- 1 : If a 200 watt bulb is switched on upto 5 hrs. everyday then how many units power will be consumed everyday ?

Solution : Obviously power consumed = $\frac{200 \times 5}{100 \times 10} = 1 \text{ unit.}$

Example- 2 : If an electric heater of 220 volt draws the current of 5 ampere, then in 5 hrs how many units power will be consumed ?

Solution : Here the required power consumed

$$= \frac{V.I.t}{100 \times 10} = \frac{220 \times 5 \times 5}{1000} = 5.5 \text{ units}$$

Effect of electric current : The electric current has various types of effect like magnetic effect, chemical effect, thermal effect etc.

Magnetic effect : Whenever an electric current passes through any conductor, then a magnetic field is produced (generated) around the conductor. In 1820 an observation was made by Oersted who saw that when a magnetic needle is brought near a current carrying wire (conductor), then it is deflected. But this needle only deflects in magnetic field which obviously confirms that current carrying conductor produces magnetic field. This is called magnetic effect of the current. The direction of magnetic field is given by Maxwell's Cork-Screw rule, Fleming right hand rule etc.

Maxwell's Cork-Screw rule (law) : If a cork-screw be taken in right hand and rotated in such a way that electric current is passed forward in the direction of the tip, then the direction of the thumb of the hand is along the positive direction of the magnetic lines of force.

Fleming's right hand rule: If the right hand is kept on a current carrying wire in such away that thumb, forefinger and middle finger are mutually perpendicular to each other and if forefinger is along the electric current and middle finger is along the deflection of the magnetic needle then the thumb of the hand is along the direction of the magnetic lines of force.

Lorentz force : When free charge carriers activate in a conductor, then an electric field is produced while if these free charge carriers start to move then electric current is produced and every current carrying conductor has a magnetic field. Thus, a moving charge particle has both electric and magnetic field and here, force experienced by the charge particle is both electric and magnetic which is called Lorentz's force.

$$\text{Thus Lorentz's force } (F) = qE + qB \sin \theta$$

where, q = charge on the particle

E = electric field intensity

v = velocity of the charged particle

B = magnetic field intensity.

θ = angle between the velocity of charged particle and electric field intensity.

The direction of Lorentz's force can be determined by Fleming's left hand rule.

Electromagnet: If an insulated wire is wound around a cylindrical object, it is called a solenoid. The cylindrical object is called core. The solenoid whose core is made of soft iron is called electromagnet. The electromagnet is utilised in dynamo, transformer, electric alarm, telegraph and telephone etc. The temporary magnetism can only be achieved by soft iron. The magnetic field intensity of an electromagnet depends on the following parameters—

(i) **No. of turns of the solenoid :**

The magnetic field intensity of the solenoid (B) = $\mu_0 i n$.

where, $\mu_0 = 4\pi \times 10^{-7}$ (absolute permeability)

i = current

n = No. of turns per unit length.

Thus, if there is more no. of turns then magnetic field intensity will be large and vice-versa.

(ii) **The nature of the core substance :** If the core of the solenoid is made of soft iron then the magnetic field intensity will be large.

(iii) **The magnitude of the electric current :** The magnetic field intensity is directly proportional to the magnitude of the electric current. Thus, magnetic field intensity will increase with increase of electric current and vice-versa.

The force acting on a current carrying conductor in a uniform magnetic field : If I current is passed through a conductor of length l which is placed in a uniform magnetic field intensity B , then the force experienced by the current carrying conductor = $F = lIB \sin \theta$.

where, θ = angle between current carrying conductor and the magnetic field intensity.

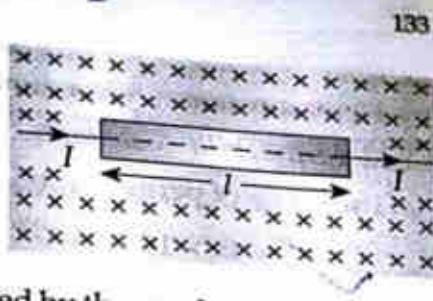
Obviously if $\theta = 0^\circ$

then $F = 0$ i.e if current carrying conductor is in the direction of magnetic field intensity then no force would be experienced by the conductor.

But if $\theta = 90^\circ$

then $F = IIB$

Thus, maximum force will be experienced by the conductor if magnetic field is perpendicular to the conductor.



Magnetic Flux : If any surface be kept in a uniform magnetic field then the magnetic lines of force originating from that surface normally outward is called magnetic flux. It is represented by ϕ_m . S.I. unit of magnetic flux is weber (wb)

Mathematically, $\phi_m = BA$ weber

where, B = magnetic field intensity.

A = normal vector area.

Magnetic field : The region (space) around a magnet which has the magnetic effect is called magnetic field. A magnetic field is said to be existing at a point if it can exert a force on a current carrying conductor. The magnetic field has a unit normal area.

Units of magnetic field intensity (strength) : SI unit of the magnetic field intensity(strength) is *Tesla*. The magnetic field is also expressed in weber/metre². Thus, 1 Tesla = 1 weber/m². C.G.S. unit of magnetic field intensity is *Gauss* [1 Tesla = 10^4 Gauss]

SI unit of magnetic field strength.

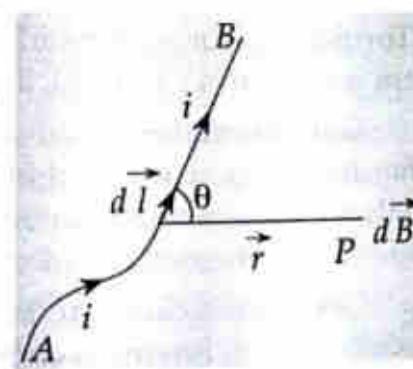
$$1 \text{ Tesla (T)} = 1 \text{ NA}^{-1} \text{ m}^{-1} = 1 \text{ weber/m}^2 = 10^4 \text{ Gauss.}$$

Biot-Savart law : As Oerested observed a current carrying conductor produces a magnetic field around it. The magnitude and direction of this field at any point can be expressed by means of a law determined experimentally by Biot and Savart and it is called *Biot-Savart law*.

If AB is any conductor of an arbitrary shape carrying current i and P is any point in vacuum at which the field is to be determined. Here we divide the conductor into infinitesimal current element. Let $d\vec{l}$ be the length of one such element. Let \vec{r} be the displacement vector from the element to the point P . Then according to Biot-Savart's law, the magnetic field induction $d\vec{B}$ at P due to the current element $d\vec{l}$ is given by

$$d\vec{B} \propto \frac{i d\vec{l} \times \vec{r}}{r^3} = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \frac{i d\vec{l} \times \vec{r}}{r^3}$$

$$= \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \frac{i d\vec{l} \sin \theta}{r^2}$$



Here, constant $\frac{\mu_0}{4\pi}$ is a dimensional proportionality constant, and μ_0 is called **permeability constant**.

The value of permeability,

$$\checkmark \mu_0 = 4\pi \times 10^{-7} \frac{\text{weber}}{\text{ampere-metre}}, \text{ or, } \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} = 10^{-7} \frac{\text{weber}}{\text{ampere-metre}}$$

$$\Rightarrow d\vec{B} = 10^{-7} \frac{i dl \sin \theta}{r^2} \quad \text{where, } \theta = \text{angle between } d\vec{l} \text{ and } \vec{r}.$$

(i) Magnetic field due to a long straight conductor

$$\text{Magnetic field induction } (B) = \frac{\mu_0 i}{2\pi R} = 2 \times 10^{-7} \frac{i}{R} \text{ weber/meter}^2$$

where i = current through the conductor

R = distance from the current element to the magnetic field.

(ii) Magnetic field due to a current carrying circular coil : The magnetic field induction due to a circular coil of radius r at point O (centre of the coil)

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 i}{2r} \text{ weber/meter}^2$$

where, i = current through the coil,

r = radius of the coil



(iii) Magnetic field due to a solenoid : If there is a long solenoid of radius r meter carrying a current of i ampere in which n be the no. of turns per unit length then magnetic field induction at the mid point.

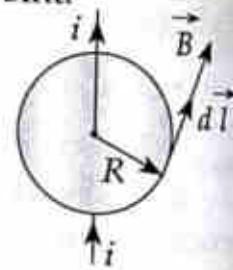
$$= B = \mu_0 i n \text{ weber/meter}^2$$

where, μ_0 = permeability constant

$$= 4\pi \times 10^{-7} \text{ weber/amp-m}$$

i = current

n = no. of turns per unit length



Ampere's law : Ampere's law is the counterpart of the Gauss's law in magnetism. It states that the line integral $\int \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l}$ for a closed curve is equal to μ_0 times the net current i through the area bounded by the

$$\text{Thus; } \int \vec{B} \cdot d\vec{l} = \mu_0 i$$

Toroid : If a long solenoid is wrapped around in the form of a closed ring then it is called a toroid. Thus a toroid acts like an endless solenoid.

Galvanometer : Galvanometers are the electrical devices used for the detection or measurement of the electric currents. The action of these Galvanometers is facilitated by the torque experienced by a magnetic needle due to the magnetic field of a current loop.

One of this class galvanometer is a tangent galvanometer consisting of a circular coil having a compass needle at its centre. The frame containing the coil can revolve about the vertical axis. The compass box consisting of a small magnetic needle is pivoted at the centre of the coil. A long aluminium pointer is attached at right angles to the needle, which moves over the

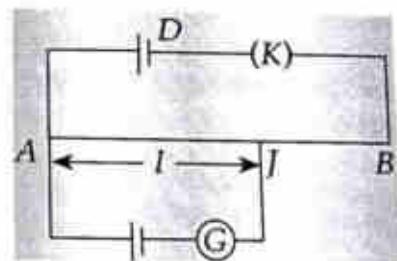
graduated circular scale. The scale is divided into four quadrants reading from 0° to 90° . The needle and scale are enclosed in a flat casing provided with a glass top so that the scale needle and pointer may be visible from outside.

Shunt : Shunt is an electrical system of configuration of the electric conductor or wire of small resistance. Sometimes it is not desirable to send heavy electric currents through a sensitive Galvanometer and thus in order to protect such Galvanometer a low resistance wire or conductor is attached in parallel to the coil. Shunt decreases the effective resistance of the instrument. It increases the current measuring range but decreases the sensitiveness of the instrument.

Ammeter : Ammeter is a current measuring device and can measure a high current. Basically it is a low resistance moving coil galvanometer. It is always connected in series in the electrical circuit in which the current is to be measured. An ideal ammeter is one which has zero resistance. In fact an ammeter of low resistance is more accurate although it is less sensitive.

Voltmeter : Voltmeter is a potential difference (pd) measuring device and basically it is a high resistance moving coil galvanometer. It is always connected in parallel to the resistance across which p.d. is to be measured. Its reading is not accurate because it draws current so the p.d. across the resistance decreases (since the current through it decreases). Hence a voltmeter of high resistance is more accurate. In fact an ideal voltmeter is one which has infinite resistance and it measures accurately, although no current is passed through it.

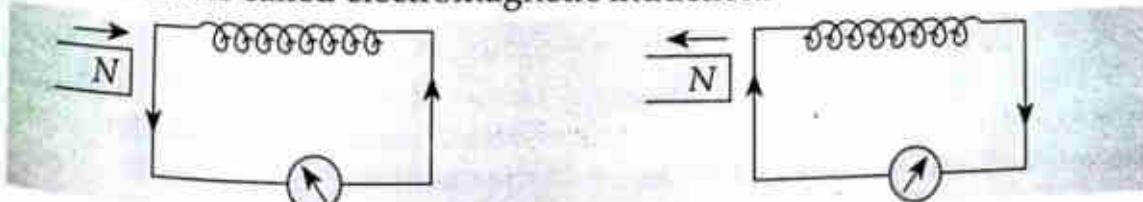
Potentiometer : Potentiometer is a device to measure the *emf* of a cell or p.d. between the ends of a current-carrying conductor without drawing any current from the circuit. It operates on the principle that an *emf* or p.d. can be balanced against another *emf* or p.d. which produces a zero current.



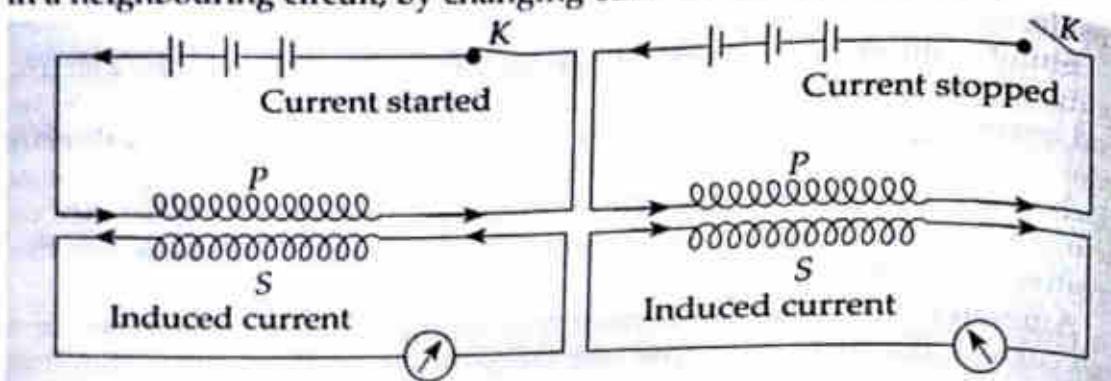
In a potentiometer the *emf* of a battery *D* (called the driving battery) is distributed over a long uniform wire *AB* of high resistivity and p.d. between any two points of it (one fixed at the left end *A* and other is sliding) is applied against *emf* or p.d. to be measured. The sliding point *J* is then moved over the wire, until both are balanced to each other. A sensitive galvanometer indicates whether the current in the circuit is zero or not.

When there is no deflection in the galvanometer then p.d. between *A* and *J* = *emf* of the test cell.

Electromagnetic induction : Faraday in 1831 discovered that whenever the magnetic flux (number of lines of induction) passing through a circuit changes, an *emf* is produced in the circuit. If the circuit is closed, a current flows through it. The *e.m.f.* and current so produced are called *induced emf* and induced current, while the magnetic flux regularly changes. This phenomenon is called electromagnetic induction.



The magnetic flux through a circuit may be changed in a number of ways, e.g. by moving a magnet relative to the circuit, by changing current in a neighbouring circuit, by changing current in the same circuit.



Faraday's laws of electromagnetic induction :

First law : When the magnetic flux through a circuit is changing, an induced *emf* is setup whose magnitude at any instant is equal to the negative rate of change of magnetic flux. This is also called Neumann's law.

Thus if ϕ_B be the magnetic flux linked with the circuit at any instant and e the induced *emf*, then

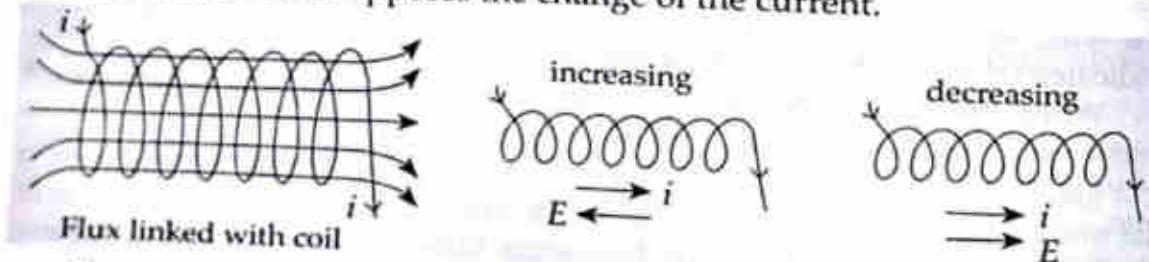
$$e = -\frac{d\phi_B}{dt} = -\frac{d(BA)}{dt} = -Blv$$

where, B = magnetic field, l = length of the conductor.
 v = velocity of induced charge.

Second law : The direction of the *induced emf* of the electric current is such as to oppose the change that produces it. This is called *Lenz's law*.

The phenomenon of electromagnetic induction is frequently used in various devices like in artificial pacemaker, Dynamo, transformer etc.

Self-induction : When an electric current flows through a coil, it produces a magnetic flux which is linked with the coil. If the current through the coil is changed, the flux linked with the coil also changes. An induced *emf* E is therefore set up in the coil. By Lenz's law the direction of the induced *emf* is such as which opposes the change of the current.



Thus, the induced *emf* is against the current when the current is increasing and it is in the direction of the current when the current is decreasing. This phenomenon is called *self induction* and the *induced emf* is called *back emf*.

Thus, when the current in a coil is switched on, the self induction opposes the growth of the current, and when the current is switched off, the self-induction opposes the decay of the current.

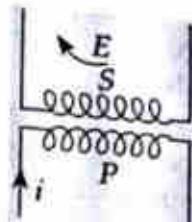
If ϕ_B be the magnetic flux (flux linkage) of the coil then current induced in the coil is directly proportional to it.

$$\Rightarrow \phi_B \propto i \text{ i.e. } \phi_B = L i$$

Here L is a constant called coeff. of self-inductance.

SI unit of self-inductance is henry. Also another unit of self-inductance is volt-sec/amp.

Mutual Induction : Whenever the current passing through a coil changes, the magnetic flux due to the current, which may be linked also with a neighbouring coil, changes. Hence an induced emf is set up in the neighbouring coil. This phenomenon is called *mutual induction*. The coil in which the current changes is called *primary coil*, while the other in which the emf is set up is called *secondary coil*.



Also for the two given coils situated in a fixed relative position, flux linkage through the secondary is proportional to the current i in the primary.

$$\text{Thus } N_s \phi_B \propto i, \text{ i.e., } N_s \phi_B = Mi$$

Here proportionality constant M is called coeff. of mutual induction.

SI unit of mutual induction is also *henry*. Another SI unit of mutual induction is volt-sec/amp.

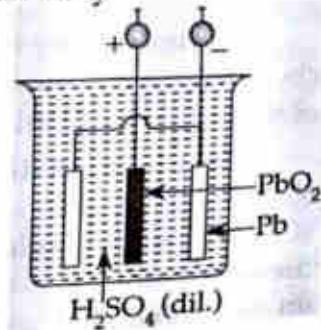
Chemical Effect : Pure water is a bad conductor of electricity, but if some metallic salt, acid or alkali are dissolved in it then water becomes good conductor of electricity. Thus, those solutions in which electric current can pass are called electrolytes. Thereby, whenever in any aqueous solution of salt, acid or alkali an electric current is passed and if these solutions decompose into +ve and -ve ions then this is called chemical effect of the electric current and the phenomenon is called electrolysis. The equipment in which electric decomposition occurs is called voltameter. Two metallic conductors which are kept at the entrance and exit of the voltameter are called electrodes. The electrode through which electric current enters inside the voltameter is called anode, while the electrode through which electric current comes out is called cathode. Thus +ve electrode is anode and -ve electrode is cathode. Whenever an electric current is passed through the any electrolyte, cations flow towards the cathode and anions flow towards the anode during the electrolysis.

Accumulator or secondary cell : In accumulator cell electrical energy is stored up in the form of chemical energy and when this accumulator cell is connected through any circuit then the stored chemical energy is being start to transform into electrical energy, slowly and steadily.

The accumulator cell is of two types—

- (i) Lead accumulator cell
- (ii) Alkaline accumulator cell

(i) Lead accumulator cell : There are two lead plates which are kept inside a dilute H_2SO_4 . On supplying electric current the water is decomposed and H_2 accumulates on the cathode and O_2 at the anode. Oxygen (O_2) on being mixing with the lead



of anode forms lead peroxide (PbO_2) which has a sharp brown colour. After sometime the electric current is stopped and at this moment the cell is electrified (charged) and its p.d. is of 2 volt. When this cell is connected with any conductor then in the external circuit current flows from anode to cathode. Consequently H_2 moves towards the plate of lead peroxide (PbO_2) and it transforms lead peroxide into lead monoxide (PbO) which reacts with sulphuric acid and forms lead sulphate and water. By the formation of water the specific gravity (density) is decreased. That's why cells become discharged.

A fully charged cell has the value of *emf* as 2.2 volt while discharged cell has its value as 1.8 volt. The position of the discharged cell is called sulphating.

(ii) **Alkaline accumulator cell** : In this cell potassium hydroxide (KOH) in concentrated form is kept inside a glass container. The anode of this cell is made in the form of pointed holes frame of steel in which Nickel hydroxide and the filings of nickel are accumulated in a crossed way. Another plate of porous steel in which powder of Iron-oxide is kept and this plate acts like the cathode. This cell is also called *Adison's cell* or *Nife (Ni-Fe) cell*.

Whenever an electric current is passed through an external source then an electric decomposition takes place and finally K^+ is accumulated on the cathode while OH^- is accumulated on the anode. Thus, cell is liquefied and an oppositely produced *emf* becomes effective and stable. Now if this cell is kept inside an electric circuit then the current flows and K^+ and OH^- liberate on the anode and cathode respectively. A fully charged cell has the value of *emf* as 1.35 volt while a discharged cell has the value of *emf* as 0.9 volt. The value of the internal resistance of the cell is $0-1\Omega$.

Efficiency of a cell : The efficiency of a cell is defined as the ratio of total beneficial work and total work done.

$$\text{i.e. efficiency of a cell} = \frac{\text{beneficial work}}{\text{total work}}$$

Thus if in any cell the value of *emf* is E and in a closed circuit if p.d. of the terminals of the cell is V then

$$\text{efficiency of the cell} = \frac{V}{E}$$

Applications of electrolysis

(i) **Extraction of metals** : The metals like aluminium, sodium, calcium, magnesium etc. are extracted from their respective salts by the process of electrolysis. The electrodes are made of these metals and when an electric current is passed through the salts of these metals then pure metals are deposited on the cathode.

(ii) **Analysis by electrolysis** : By the basic principle of electrolysis some chemical compounds are analysed. The structure and chemical composition of the compounds like HCl , HCN , HBr etc are investigated.

(iii) **Electroplating** : On the basis of the principle of electrolysis electroplating (thin layer of any metal is coated on another metallic body) is done. The metallic body which is to be coated acts like an anode and the metal whose layer is to be coated on another acts like a cathode. Thus an electrolyte cell is formed and the process of electrolysis occurs. When

brown colour
component the cell
is connected
from anode to
oxide (PbO_2)
which reacts
the formation
cells become
discharged
cell is called
ide (KOH)
this cell is
hydroxide
er plate of
acts like
ll.
urce then
d on the
fied and
us cell is
liberate
e value
0.9 volt.
of total
p.d. of

the electric current flows through the electrolyte then the metal from the anode starts to dissolve in the solution and deposits on the cathode. Thereby, after sometimes a thin layer is to be coated on the cathode and ultimately metal is coated. For electroplating (coating) usually metals like gold, silver, platinum, nickel, zinc, chromium etc are used.

(iv) **Electro-typing** : Today in a large printing press by the use of copper voltmeter on behalf of the cathode printing papers are kept and after a short time a thin layer of copper is coated. Thus excellent prints appear on these copper coated papers.

(v) **Electrolytic capacitor (condenser)** : In such capacitor (condenser) both electrodes are made from aluminium. The mixture of boric acid, glycerine and aqueous ammonia act like an electrolyte and when an electric current is passed through it then a layer of aluminium hydroxide deposits on the anode. This layer acts like a dielectric for both the electrodes.

(vi) **Purification of metals** : For the purification of metals the anode is made of impure metal and the cathode is made of pure metal. The electrolyte is made through a liquified impure metal. When an electric current is passed through it then pure metal starts to deposit on the cathode of pure metal and thus purified metals are obtained. By this process copper can be purified upto 99.99%.

Thermal effect (heating effect) : When charge carriers (free electrons) move in the metallic conductor, then the electric current is produced in the conductor. These charge carriers move and collide with the atoms present in the conductor and transfer some of their kinetic energy to the atoms and these atoms collectively raise the temperature and the conductor becomes heated. Also the atoms of the conductor retard the speed of charge carriers. Thus, resistance is generated inside the conductor. This phenomenon of raising the temperature of the conductor is called thermal (heating) effect of the electric current. This phenomenon was fully explained and observed by Joule, so it is also called Joule's heating effect. He explained that if I electric current is passed through any conductor of electric resistance R up to t time, then Joule's heating energy of the conductor is

$$H = I^2 R t \text{ Joule (SI unit)}$$

Thermo electricity : If some metallic wires (conductors) are heated under some specific conditions, then electric current is generated. This is called thermoelectricity. There are various parameters and circumstances under which thermoelectricity is studied.

Seeback's effect : When two different metallic wires (conductors) are connected to each other and two junctions are formed by a differential heating or a temperature difference is maintained, then an electric current is generated (produced) through this couple, which is called seeback's effect. The current produced is called thermo-electric current. The corresponding emf is called thermo electromotive force.

Seeback's effect was displayed by making thermo couple of different metals of differential heating or by maintaining a constant temperature difference.

Seebeck formed the following series of metals for thermoelectric couple by two different metals.

- | | | | | | |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|------------|-------------|--------|
| 1. Antimony | 2. Iron | 3. Zinc | 4. Silver | 5. Gold | 6. Tin |
| 7. Lead | 8. Copper | 9. Platinum | 10. Nickel | 11. Bismuth | |

In a thermoelectric couple there are two junctions from where thermoelectric current passes. For example—thermoelectric current flows from antimony to bismuth through cold junction (*abc*) but from copper to iron (*Fe*) through hot junction (*Hot CoFe*). Thus from bismuth to antimony thermoelectric current will flow through hot junction, while from iron to copper it will flow through cold junction.

Peltier effect : It is the inverse of the seebeck effect. When two different metals are joined to form a thermoelectric couple in such a way that an electric current is passed, then on the junction either heat is emitted or absorbed. Through any junction if the electric current flowing in a particular direction produces the heat, then in the opposite direction through the same junction heat is absorbed. This is called peltier effect.

Thomson effect : When a current flows through an unequally heated metal, there is an absorption or evolution of heat throughout in the metallic body. This is called Thomson effect.

In case of a copper or antimony rod whose ends are maintained at a temperature difference, heat is absorbed when the current flows from a cold to a hot end, and is evolved when the current flows from a hot to a cold end and here the Thomson effect is said to be positive. But in the case of an iron or bismuth rod, heat is involved when the current flows from a cold to a hot end and vice-versa and Thomson effect is said to be negative.

Applications of thermal effect : The thermal effect of the electric current are intensively used in electric heater, electric press, electric bulb, tube-lights etc.

Electric Heater : In an electric heater an alimant (thick coil) of nichrome (alloy of nickel and chromium) is kept inside the frame like plate which are made of plaster of paris. When an electric current is passed through the thick coil of nichrome, then due to the large electrical resistance the current remains confined for a longer time within the alimant and due to Joule's heat it becomes red heated and supplies a tremendous amount of thermal energy. In the position of red heated condition the temperature of the thick coil goes upto 800°C to 1000°C . Thus for a good electric heater the alimant must have a large electrical resistance and at such high temperature oxidation must be avoided.

Electric Iron : In an electric iron the nichrome wire or coil is wound upon a thick mica sheet. As the mica has good electrical resistance and doesn't melt at high temperature consequently this sheet or plate enclosing nichrome coil is kept on the upper surface of a steel slab. On the whole mica sheet-steel slab system, a hand keeper is attached which is made of wood or good quality fibre or of any others which are bad conductors. Whenever an electric current is passed through the nichrome coil, the base of the steel slab is heated and the clothes and garments are pressed.

Electric Bulb : The electric bulb was firstly invented by Thomas Alva Edison. The bulb is evacuated (vacuum created) and a filament of tungsten metal is attached to it. Along with evacuation a small amount of inert gases like argon or krypton is kept inside the bulb. Doing so the filament of the tungsten doesn't burn or vapourises. At high temperature tungsten vapourises and sometimes the inside walls of the bulb is blackened which is called blackening. Those metals are used in making the filaments of the bulb which have high melting point and high atomic weight. Since tungsten has very high melting point as 3500°C , the filament of a bulb is made of it. On passing the electric current normally the bulb's filament acquires the temperature from 1500°C to 2500°C . In ordinary bulbs only 5% to 10% electrical energy is converted into light energy, while the rest is destroyed in the form of thermal energy.

Tube light : Basically it is a long tube of glass and the inside wall of the tube is coated with a thin layer of fluorescent material. The tube glass has mercury which is mixed up along with some inert gas like argon inside it. The two ends of the tube have two terminals on which a thin layer of barium oxide is coated. Whenever these two terminals of the tube are activated to pass an electric current, then electrons are emitted which are directly responsible to ionise the gas present inside the tube. Consequently through ionisation of the gas, ions generate a flow of current inside the tube. The mercury confined inside the tube gets sufficient thermal energy and it (mercury) starts to vapourise and finally due to the electron emission UV-rays are emitted. When these UV-rays incident on the inside wall of the tube on which fluorescent material is coated, then UV-rays are absorbed by the wall and a visible ray or light of lower frequency seems to appear.

The fluorescent material coated is used in such a way that light produced from the tube light appears similar to a white visible sunlight. In the tube light thermal energy is produced in smaller amount, so 60% to 70% electrical energy transforms into light energy. That's why the power of tube light is more sharp than an ordinary bulb. A 40 watt tube light provides 6 to 8 times more light than an ordinary bulb of 40 watt.

Alternating current (A.C.) : An alternating current is one which periodically changes in magnitude and direction. It increases from zero to a maximum value, then decreases to zero and reverses in direction, increases to a maximum in this direction, and then decreases to zero. The complete set of variations is known as a *cycle*. Thus, during one half of the cycle the current flows in one direction, and following the half-cycle it flows in opposite direction.

The simplest type of alternating current is one which varies with time simple harmonically. It is represented by the equation

$$I = I_0 \sin \omega t :$$

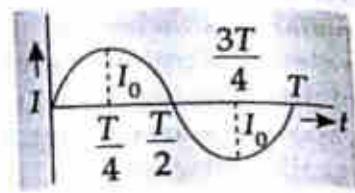
where I is the instantaneous value of the current at time t and I_0 is the maximum or peak value of the current.

This type of A.C. is called sinusoidal alternating current. It is represented by a sine curve.

The time taken by an A.C. to go through one cycle of changes is called its *period T*.

Thus time period T of an A.C. is $\frac{2\pi}{w}$. The number of cycles gone through an A.C. per second is called its *frequency*.

Here the frequency n is given by $n = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{w}{2\pi}$



Peak value of an Alternating current : An alternating current varies periodically from a maximum in one direction through zero to a maximum in the opposite direction and so on. The maximum value of the current in either direction is called *peak value I_0* .

Root mean square (rms) value or virtual value or effective value of the current : The root-mean square value of an alternating current is defined as the square root of the average or of mean of the I^2 during a complete cycle, where I is the instantaneous value of the alternating current.

The root-mean square value of the alternating current is given by

$$I_{rms} = \sqrt{I^2} = \frac{I_0}{\sqrt{2}} = 0.707 I_0$$

Thus the *rms* value of the alternating current is 0.707 times or 70.7% of the peak value I_0 of the current.

Similar to the above the *rms* value of an alternating voltage or alternating pd (*emf*) will be

$$V_{rms} = \sqrt{V^2} = \frac{V_0}{\sqrt{2}} = 0.707 V_0 \quad \text{where } V_0 = \text{peak value of the voltage.}$$

Mean or average value of an alternating current : As an alternating current is represented by $I = I_0 \sin \omega t$

So the mean value of the current over a complete cycle is zero and it has no significance. Hence the mean value of an alternating current is defined as its average over half a cycle.

$$\text{The average or mean value of an alternating current} = I_{mean} = \frac{2}{\pi} I_0.$$

Thus the average current during one positive or negative half cycle of an alternating current is $\frac{2}{\pi}$ times the peak value of the current I_0 .

Similar to the above average or mean value of an alternating voltage or alternating pd (*emf*) will be $V_{mean} = \frac{2}{\pi} V_0$.

Miscellaneous

In an A.C. circuit *rms* values of the electric current and voltage are used frequently and thus *rms* value or virtual value has its practical aspect.

In India the peak value of domestic supply is ± 311 volt and its frequency is 50 Hz.

In comparison to the direct current (dc) alternating current (ac) is more dangerous at the same voltage because real value of 220 V A.C. supply is ± 311 volt while 220 volt d.c. remains 220 volt only.

A.C. Ammeter & Voltmeter : Since in an alternating current (a.c.) for a complete cycle or time period value of current is zero. Thus if an alternating current is passed through the d.c. devices, ammeter or voltmeter, then indicators of these devices will remain on zero. That's why to measure alternating current or voltage hot wire instruments like ammeter and voltmeter are used. By the indicator reading of hot wire ammeter we get the rms value directly. Similar to it by hot wire voltmeter rms value of alternating voltage is obtained.

Power, Power factor and wattless current

Power in A.C. circuit : The power in an electrical circuit is the rate at which the electrical energy is consumed in the circuit, and is equal to the product of the voltage and current. In A.C. circuit the instantaneous values of the voltage and current are given by

$$V = V_0 \sin \omega t \text{ and } I = I_0 \sin (\omega t - \phi)$$

where ϕ is called phase difference between the current and voltage.

The power in A.C. circuit = $I_{rms} V_{rms} \cos \phi$.

Thus average power (\bar{P}) = virtual current \times virtual voltage $\times \cos \phi$.

Power factor : As above $\cos \phi$ is the factor through which the product of the rms values of the voltage and current must be multiplied to give the power dissipated and it is called power factor of the circuit.

Wattless current : The current in A.C. circuit is said to be wattless when the average power consumed in the circuit is zero. Thus it is possible when the power factor ($\cos \phi$) is zero.

This implies that $\cos \phi = 0$ i.e. $\phi = \frac{\pi}{2}$ (90°)

Thereby, current will be wattless if the current and voltage differ in phase by $\frac{\pi}{2}$ or 90°.

In pure inductor the current lags behind the voltage by $\frac{\pi}{2}$ or 90°, that's why average power absorbed in a pure inductor is zero. Similarly in pure capacitor the voltage lags behind the current by $\frac{\pi}{2}$ or 90° and so in a pure capacitor average power absorbed is also zero.

Comparison of an alternating current (A.C.) with respect to a direct current (D.C.)

(i) The phenomenon of electrolysis cannot be performed through an a.c. current, so for the extraction of metals in metallurgy and other works in the industrial workshops are not to be done by a.c., and only d.c. is used.

(ii) In electroplating a.c. is not used and it can also be done by d.c. only.

(iii) The a.c. cannot be stored like d.c. in accumulator cell.

(iv) Electromagnets can only be prepared through d.c. and through an a.c. no electromagnet can be prepared.

Choke-coil : Often in a.c. it is required to reduce the current in a circuit fed by a.c. mains. This can be done through a d.c. circuit by inserting a

resistance in the circuit. Although there is a wastage of energy (i^2R per second) in the form of a Joule's heat. In an a.c. circuit the current can be alternatively be reduced by inserting a coil of thick copper wire wound closely in a large number of turns over soft-iron laminated core. Such a coil offers a large reactance ($L\omega$) and contributes to the impedance (resistance in a.c.) of the circuit. Hence it reduces the a.c. appreciably. Such a coil is called Choke-coil.

The average power dissipated in the choke coil is $\bar{P} = \frac{1}{2} V_0 I_0 \cos\phi$
and the power factor is $\cos\phi = \frac{R}{\sqrt{R^2 + L^2 \omega^2}}$

Here the inductance L of the choke coil is quite large on account of its large number of turns and the high permeability of iron core, while its resistance R is very small. Here $\cos\phi$ is nearly zero. So the power absorbed by the coil is extremely small and thus choke coil reduces the strength of the current without appreciable wastage of energy. The only waste of energy is due to the hysteresis loss in the iron core. The loss due to eddy currents is minimised by making the core laminated. The choke-coils are used in electrical appliances like in tube light, radio, electric fan etc.

Preference of a choke-coil over an ohmic resistance : The current in an a.c. circuit can also be diminished by using an ordinary ohmic resistance (rheostat) in the circuit. But such a controlling method of a.c. is not economical as much of the electrical energy (i^2Rt) supplied by the source is wasted as heat. Hence a choke coil is preferred over the ohmic resistance.

Transformer : A transformer is an electrical device which converts a large alternating current (a.c.) into a small alternating current (a.c.) at high voltage (a.c.) and vice-versa. The transformers which convert a low voltage into a higher ones are called *step up* transformers, while those which convert a high voltage into a lower ones are called *step down* transformers.

A simple transformer consists of two coils— called *primary* and *secondary*, which are insulated from each other and which are wound on a common soft-iron laminated core. The alternating voltage to be transformed is connected to the primary, while the load is connected to the secondary. In a step-up transformer the primary coil consists of a large number of turns of thin insulated copper wire, while reverse is the case in a step-down transformer.

When an alternating voltage is applied to the primary, an alternating current (a.c.) flows in the coil. This sets up an alternating magnetic flux in the core. This magnetic flux is linked up with both the primary and secondary. Hence an induced alternating *emf* is produced in the primary as well as in the secondary.

If in a transformer, the no. of turns in primary and secondary coils are N_p and N_s and V_p , V_s are the induced *emf*'s in primary and secondary coils then for an ideal transformer.

$$\frac{V_s}{V_p} = \frac{N_s}{N_p} = r \text{ (say), called transformation ratio.}$$

Obviously, if $N_s > N_p$ ($r > 1$), then $V_s > V_p$.

f energy ($I^2 R$ per unit length) can be per wire wound core. Such a coil is called a coil with resistance in it.

$$V_0 I_0 \cos\phi$$

nt of its large
its resistance
d by the coil
the current
is due to the
minimised by
appliances

current in
resistance
conomical
wasted as

nverts a
at high
voltage
convert

Y and
d on a
formed
ary.
er of
the
ary.
s in

ire
ils

At this position transformer is called step-up transformer.

But if $N_p > N_s$ ($r < 1$), then $V_p > V_s$.

At this position transformer is called step-down transformer.

Also, if I_p and I_s is the induced alternating current (a.c.) in primary and secondary coil

$$\text{then } \frac{V_s}{V_p} = \frac{N_s}{N_p} = \frac{I_p}{I_s}$$

Energy losses in a transformer : The power output of a transformer is necessarily less than the power input because of unavoidable energy losses. There are three to four types of losses—

(i) **Copper losses :** As an alternating current flows through the primary and secondary, heat is developed inside the copper turns. This wastage of energy is called copper losses.

(ii) **Eddy current losses :** Eddy currents are set up in the iron core of the transformer, and these generate heat, with a consequent loss of energy. To minimise these losses the iron core is laminated by making it of a number of thin sheets of iron insulated from each other, instead of making it from one solid piece of iron.

(iii) **Hysteresis losses :** During each cycle of a.c. the core is taken through a complete cycle of magnetisation. The energy spent in this process is finally converted into heat and so wasted. This loss is minimised by being using the core of a magnetic alloy for which the area of the hysteresis loop is the minimum.

(iv) **Losses due to flux linkage :** In an actual transformer all the flux linked with the primary doesn't pass through the secondary, but some returns through air (that part of the flux which links both primary and secondary) is called mutual flux. The part linking the primary only is the primary linkage flux and the part linking the secondary only is the secondary linkage flux. The loss due to this is minimised by eliminating the air gaps in the magnetic circuit, by using core of a particular shape, and by having special forms of coil windings.

Uses of transformers :

(i) The step-up and step-down transformers are extensively used in A.C. electrical power distribution for domestic and industrial purposes.

(ii) An audio frequency (20 - 1600 Hz or cycles / sec) transformer which is essentially a step-up transformer is used in radio receivers, radio telephony, radio telegraphy and in television.

(iii) A radio-frequency transformer is used in radio-communication at frequencies of the order of mega-cycles.

(iv) Impedance transformers are used for matching the impedance (resistance of a.c.) between two circuits in radio communication.

(v) Pressure transformers are used for measuring very large alternating currents. The current to be measured is passed through the primary of a step-up transformer, the secondary being connected to an A.C. ammeter.

(vi) Current transformers are used in measuring a very high voltage. The voltage to be measured is stepped-down by means of the transformer, the secondary of which is connected to an A.C. voltmeter.

(vii) The constant pressure and constant voltage transformers are designed to give a constant output current and voltage respectively even when input voltage varies considerably.

Dynamo (A.C. generator) : Dynamo (A.C. generator) is a device by which mechanical energy is converted into electrical energy and it operates (works) on the principle of electromagnetic induction. If the coil of wires is rotated through a permanent magnetic field, then an induced current is produced. The dynamo supplies alternating current (a.c.) to the external circuit. If in dynamo (A.C. generator) on behalf of slip rings split rings are used, then it acts like a D.C. generator and in the external circuit direct current (dc) flows out.

Microphone : Microphone is an acoustical device which transforms sound energy into electrical energy and consequently voice or sound is reached from one to another place. The microphone works on the principle of electromagnetic induction. In its basic composition carbon granules are attached in the middle of two metallic plates. In two metallic plates one is fixed and another is flexible and it is called diaphragm. Whenever any vocalist speaks, then diaphragm starts to vibrate and along with diaphragm an attached coil with itself which is kept inside a magnetic field also vibrates. Consequently an electromotive force (*emf*) produces and the value of this feeble *emf* is strengthened by a step-up transformer. Now this electrical energy (due to strengthen *emf*) is converted into sound energy by the help of a loudspeaker or telephone receiver at the suitable places wherever required.

Loudspeaker : Loudspeaker is also an acoustical device through which the electrical energy is compressed and induced by the microphone which is converted into the sound energy in amplified and loud form. Simply in a loudspeaker there is a coil which is kept in the powerful magnetic field, and this field is generated by an electromagnet. The coil of the loudspeaker is attached with a cylindrical thick paper or with a metallic cylinder and it is called diaphragm. When the induced current from the microphone is passed through the coil, then the diaphragm whose shape and size is large starts to vibrate (oscillate) with a larger amplitude. That's why we hear a sharp sound.

Electric Motor : An electric motor is a device which converts electrical energy into mechanical energy. The magnetic field is produced by the electric current passing through the conductor only and by this magnetic field a motion is generated in the conductor. On this principle the electric motor works. This concept was first propounded by Michael Faraday. In an electric motor a rectangular coil of wire is wound on an armature and this armature is free to rotate on the axis of the poles of the magnet. Whenever an electric current is passed through the coil, then the magnetic field forcibly pushes the coil of opposite sides up and down. Consequently the coil rotates towards the right hand but due to directional polarity the coil changes the direction of rotation after completing half the rotation, and now forces operative on the sides of the coil are reversed. Thus, a couple (moment of force) is generated and electric motor remains operationalized. Thus, here we observed that electric motor doesn't work on the principle of electromagnetic induction.

Electric power plant : At an electric power plant, power (electricity) is generated by the rotation of a turbine in which blades are attached. In a hydro electric power plant water is continuously dropped on the blades of the turbine through storing water by constructing barrage. In a thermal power plant and in nuclear (atomic) power plant the turbines are rotated by vapour. In wind power plant turbine is rotated by the atmospheric pressure. In thermal power plant vapour is prepared by burning the coal or natural gas. But in atomic power plant the vapour is prepared by nuclear energy. Through the axis of turbine a coil or a core is attached which on the rotation of turbine (in a permanent magnetic field) starts to rotate and electricity begins to be generated.

At primary electric power plant alternating current (a.c.) is generated and it has alternating voltage of 22,000 volt or of beyond. This alternating current (a.c.) is sent to the consumers through the transmission line. At the grid sub-station step-up transformers are installed which can increase the alternating voltage up to 132000 volt. At this order of alternating voltage during the transmission less amount of electrical energy is lost. Ultimately at various sub-station this alternating voltage is decreased by step-down transformer and normally 220 volt (a.c.) is supplied to the domestic consumers.

Domestic power supply : The power is supplied for the domestic use of 220 volt (a.c.) which has the frequency of 50 Hz. This implies that its polarity in each second changes 100 times. Thus, in a complete cycle the alternating current (a.c.) changes its direction two times. Domestically supplied current is called main line, and the wire through which this current is passed out is called *mains*. Domestically supplied power has two types of current : one is of 5 ampere and other is of 15 ampere. The current of 5 ampere is called *domestic* and the current of 15 ampere is called *power line*. The current of 5 ampere is used in electrical appliances like electric bulbs, T.V., tube light, radio etc. But the current of 15 ampere is used in electrical appliances like electric heater, electric iron, refrigerator etc.

Domestic wiring : In domestically supplied current three types of wires are utilised which are live, neutral and connected to the earth (earthing). Ordinarily live wire is of red colour, neutral wire is of black colour and earthing wire is of green colour. Through the live wire electric current is passed, while through the neutral wire current goes back. In home usually two types of circuits are installed in which one circuit is for 5 ampere appliances and another for 15 ampere appliances. Earthing wire directly goes to the earth and it is a means or way of safety. In every circuit the electrical appliances are attached between the live wire and neutral wire. For the regulation of every appliance (equipment) there is a switch which is attached in every circuit from the live wire.

In home the distribution of power is made through an *electric meter*. The electric meter measures the power in kilo watt hour (kWh) which is expressed in unit. The power distribution through the *meter* is done by two pairs of wires grouped in parallel combination. In every pair of wires a *fuse* is attached. The fuses of all wires are attached at one place on the switch board. The home electrical appliances like fan, bulb, heater etc. are attached

with parallel combination of wires, while switches of these appliances are attached in the series combination of the wires.

Electric fuse : For the safety point of view electric fuses are utilised in various electrical circuits and thus electrical appliances are safeguarded. For the electric fuse those materials are used which have less melting point and easily melt on passing high electric current in the circuit. Whenever an overloading or a short circuiting occurs anywhere in the circuit, the current of a very large magnitude starts to flow in the wire and the wire of the electric fuse melts so that the concerned appliances are prevented to damage. Always electric fuse is attached through the live or hot wire. Normally electric fuse is made of tin but good quality of fuse is made from the alloy of copper, tin and lead. Usually the electrical circuit from where the current of 15 ampere is permissible to flow then thick wire is used for the fuse and through it maximum current passing capacity is of 15 ampere. Similarly for the electrical circuit from where the current of 5 ampere is permitted to pass a thin wire fuse is used and its maximum current passing capacity is of 5 ampere.

Socket : The socket is a three cylindrical holes fibre structure device from where three wires pass. In the socket, the uppermost hole is large from which earthing wire passes and from the lowermost right small hole live wire passes, while from the lowermost left small hole neutral wire passes.

Plug : In the plug there are three cylindrical needles which can be completely enclosed in the socket. When any plug fits directly with a socket then corresponding appliance is connected to mains (circuit) directly.

Regulator : The regulator acts (works) like a current controller in the electrical circuits. This is used normally to increase or decrease the speed of electric fan. Whenever the knob of the regulator is rotated then the electric resistance of the wire increases or decreases by which the quantity of electric current decreases or increases.

Electric switch : Through an electric switch the current in the circuit is either stopped or surpassed. With the electrical appliances like bulb, fan etc. switches are connected in series. While the switch is always connected between the phase wire and the appliance, but the neutral wire is directly connected to the appliance. Since the voltage of the phase wire is about 220 volt and during the off time or when appliances be not in action, phase wire must be detached from the appliances. If this is not to be done then appliance even in the absence of its action can provide a sharp electric shock to anybody who will touch the appliance. This detachment of the phase wire with the appliances are completed by installing the electric switches at suitable places in the electric circuits.

Important units of electricity : (A) Electrostatics

Physical quantity	Units (SI)	Symbol
Electric charge	Coulomb	C
Electric potential	Volt	V
Potential difference	Volt	V
Electric field intensity	Newton/coulomb	N/C
Electric capacity or capacitance	Farad	F

(B) Current electricity :

Physical quantity	Units (SI)	Symbol
Electric current	Ampere (amp)	A
Electric resistance	Ohm	Ω
Specific resistance or resistivity	Ohm Metre	ΩM
Electric conductivity	Ohm^{-1} or Mho or simen	$\Omega^{-1} S$
Specific conductivity or	$\text{Ohm}^{-1} \text{ Metre}^{-1}$ or Mho	$\Omega^{-1} M^{-1}$
Conductance	Metre ⁻¹ or Simen Metre ⁻¹	SM^{-1}
Electric power	Watt	W

Section-C Magnetism

About 600 century B.C. a natural substance (mineral) was found in Asia Minor which had the characteristic to attract its iron pieces. Such substance was called magnet and its characteristic (property) to attract was called magnetism. As magnetite occurs naturally, that's why it was called Natural magnet. The chemical composition of magnetite is Fe_3O_4 and it has no definite shape. If a magnet is suspended freely then it remains confined in North-South direction. Also it is observed that natural magnet has smaller power of attraction. Today artificial magnets are constructed which have a large power of attraction. The materials utilised for the magnet are iron, cobalt, nickel etc. and various shape of magnets like bar magnet, horse shoe-magnet, magnetic needle etc. are designed artificially.

Properties of magnet :

(i) **Property of attraction** : Pieces of iron, steel are easily attracted by a magnet and this power of attraction is found to be sharper near the ends of the bar magnet which are called poles of the magnet. In the middle of the magnet the power of attraction is very weak (feeble).

(ii) **Property of directionality** : If any magnet say a bar magnet is suspended freely, then the magnet remains confined in North-South direction. Here the end of the suspended magnet pointing towards North is called North pole and similarly to that South is called South pole. The imaginary straight line passing through both poles is called magnetic axis. The distance between both the poles is called magnetic length. If a freely suspended bar magnet is at rest, then the plane passing vertically upward from the magnetic axis is called magnetic meridian.

(iii) **Property of attraction and repulsion of poles** : Two unlike poles (North-South) attract each other while two like poles (South-North, South-South) repel each other. An isolated charge has its existence but an isolated pole of the magnet has no existence. If any magnet is broken then poles of the magnet do not become separate but a new magnet (broken part) is formed.

(iv) **Property of magnetic induction** : The magnetic induction is produced by the magnet in the magnetic substance. If a rod of soft iron is brought near the pole of a powerful magnet, then this rod also becomes a magnet. Also a pole of the opposite nature is induced in the rod of that pole of the powerful magnet. This is called magnetic induction.

Appliances are utilised in safeguarded, melting point whenever an the current vire of the damage. Normally the alloy current fuse and similarly for 1 to pass y is of 5

device e from de live asses. an be ocket

n the ed of etric etric

ruit fan ed ly ut se n k ;

Magnetic field : The region or space around a magnet through which any other magnetic material experiences a force of attraction or repulsion is called magnetic field. The direction of the magnetic field of any magnet is determined by a magnetic needle.

Magnetic field intensity or magnetic field induction : In any magnetic field if a charged conductor of unit length is kept transverse inside it and the electric current of unit ampere is passed through the conductor, then the force experienced by the conductor is called magnetic field intensity or magnetic field induction. If \vec{F} be a magnetic force, \vec{l} be the length of a conductor, i be an electric current and \vec{B} be the magnetic field induction then

$$\vec{F} = i \vec{l} \times \vec{B} = i l B \sin\theta \hat{n}$$

Thus mathematically

if $i = 1$ amp

$l = 1$ metre

$\theta = 90^\circ$; then $F = B$

Obviously magnetic field intensity \vec{B} is a vector quantity. C.G.S unit of \vec{B} is Gauss. S.I. unit of \vec{B} is N/amp-m or weber/metre² or Tesla.

Magnetic lines of force : There is a way of interpretation of magnetic field by drawing imaginary lines which are hypothetical field and it is simple indication of the direction of field and these lines are called magnetic lines of force.

The characteristic of the magnetic lines of force :

- (i) The magnetic lines of force always originate from the North pole of the magnet and terminate at the South pole by tracing curve and return back from South pole to North pole internally.
- (ii) Two magnetic lines of force never intersect each other.
- (iii) At a stronger or sharper magnetic field the magnetic lines of force are closed to each other, while weaker (feeble) magnetic field is represented by magnetic lines of force far apart.
- (iv) A uniform magnetic field is represented by equi-distant parallel lines drawn in the space.

Magnetic Permeability : If a magnetic substance say iron is kept, in any magnetic field then more and more magnetic lines of force cross through it in comparison to the air. In other words we can say that magnetic substance like iron, cobalt or nickel are good conductors of magnetic lines of force. This characteristic of the magnetic substance is called magnetic permeability.

As in the figure if an Iron slab is kept in a magnetic field then very sharp and concentrated magnetic lines of force appear to be confined within the slab, which is the representation of the permeability existence. The symbol of the permeability is μ and its value for air or vacuum is $4\pi \times 10^{-7}$ weber/amp-m.

through which
on or repulsion
of any magnet
any magnetic
inside it and
inductor, then
eld intensity
length of a
d induction

S unit of
magnetic
simple
ic lines

ole of
back

orce
ited

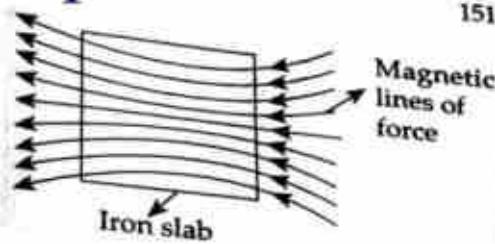
llei

ny
it
re
is

,

If B is the magnetic lines of force through unit area of the magnetic substance and H is the magnetic lines of force through unit area in air, then permeability is defined as;

$$\text{Permeability } (\mu) = \frac{B}{H}$$



An another unit of the permeability is henry / metre

Magnetic susceptibility: It is observed experimentally that soft iron can be easily magnetised in comparison to steel, then it is said that susceptibility of soft iron is more than that of steel. But the soft iron piece loses its magnetism easily as compared to the steel. Thus, susceptibility of a substance (material) is defined in such a way in which a magnetic substance can be magnetised. But the retentivity of the soft iron is less as compared to the steel because the retaining power of the magnetism of soft iron is less as compared to the steel.

If the intensity of magnetisation developed in a material is I , then the

$$\text{Susceptibility } (\chi) = \frac{\text{Intensity of magnetisation}(I)}{\text{Magnetising force}(H)}$$

Types of magnetic substances : Normally every substance in a strong magnetic field has some magnetic effect thus, broadly on the basis of magnetising behaviours it is categorised into three classes—

(i) **Paramagnetic substance :** The paramagnetic substances are those which, when kept in a strong magnetic field, become weakly magnetised in the same sense as the external field. Platinum, chromium, manganese, copper sulphate, liquid oxygen and solution of the salts of iron and nickel are examples of paramagnetic substances.

When a bar of paramagnetic substance is kept in an external magnetic field, then the flux density (field intensity) of it is slightly greater than the flux density in the free space. Thus, relative permeability $\mu_r (= \mu/\mu_0)$ becomes slightly greater than 1.

Characteristics

(a) If a bar of paramagnetic substance is suspended between the poles of a magnet, it shows poles at its ends which are opposite to those of the magnet and turns until it lies along the field.

(b) In a non-uniform field paramagnetic substances tend to move from a weaker to a stronger parts of the magnetic field. If a paramagnetic liquid is kept in a watch glass resting on two pole-pieces very near to each other, the liquid accumulates in the middle where the field is the strongest. If on the other hand the pole-pieces are far apart, the field is the strongest near the poles and the liquid moves away from the centre producing a depression in the middle.

(c) When a paramagnetic gas is allowed to ascend between the pole-pieces of a magnet it spreads along the field.

(d) The susceptibility of a paramagnetic substance decreases with the rise in temperature.

(ii) **Diamagnetic substance** : The diamagnetic substances are those which become weakly magnetised in a direction opposite to that of the applied field. Bismuth, antimony, gold, water, alcohol, quartz, hydrogen etc. are the examples of such substances.

When a bar of diamagnetic substance is kept in an external field, flux density of it is less than the flux density of the free space. Thus, relative permeability μ , for diamagnetics is less than 1.

Characteristic

(a) If a bar of diamagnetic substance is suspended between the poles of a magnet, it shows poles at its end which are similar to those of the magnet and turns until it is at right angle to the applied field.

(b) In a non-uniform field a diamagnetic substance tends to move from a stronger to a weaker parts of the field. If a diamagnetic liquid is kept in a watch glass resting on two pole-pieces very near to each other, the liquid is accumulated on the sides where the field is weaker, producing a depression in the middle. The reverse effect is observed when the poles are far apart.

(c) A diamagnetic field shows a depression in the limb of a U-tube kept between the pole-pieces of a magnet.

(d) When a diamagnetic gas is allowed to ascend in between the poles of a magnet across the field it spreads.

(e) The susceptibility of the diamagnetic substance is independent of temperature.

(iii) **Ferromagnetic substance** : The ferromagnetic substances are those which are strongly magnetised by a relatively weaker magnetic field and it has the same sense as the applied magnetic field. Iron, cobalt, nickel, gadolinium and their alloys etc. are the most important ferromagnetics.

Ferromagnetics show all the characteristics of a paramagnetic to a much higher degree. The ferromagnetic substances have relative permeabilities of the order of the hundreds and thousands. The flux density in them may be hundreds and thousands times as great as that of the free space due to the same magnetising force. The flux density B in a ferromagnetic substance is not directly proportional to the magnetising force H . Thus the permeability $\mu = \frac{B}{H}$ is not constant.

The permeability (μ) of a ferromagnetic substance decreases with rise in temperature and becomes practically equal to μ_0 at a certain temperature, which is called *curie temperature*. Above the curie temperature the ferromagnetic substance becomes paramagnetic. The curie temperature for iron is about 770°C .

If a ferromagnetic substance is heated then its magnetic susceptibility (χ) is inversely proportional to the absolute temperature T , i.e. $\chi \propto 1/T$. Thus $\chi = C/T$ where C = a proportionality constant and T is called curie temperature and this relation is called curie's law. The value of the magnetic susceptibility (χ) decreases with the rise of temperature. At a point and at a particular temperature which is called curie's temperature a ferromagnetic substance is converted into a paramagnetic substance. The values of curie's temperatures for cobalt, nickel and iron are 373 K, 673 K and 1043 K.

nces are those
to that of the
rtz, hydrogen
nal field, flux
thus, relative

the poles of
the magnet

move from
is kept in a
he liquid is
depression
far apart.
-tube kept

the poles

endent of

are those
field and
t, nickel,
etics.

a much
ilities of
may be
e to the
tance is
ability

ith rise
rature,
re the
are for

bility
1/T.
curie
netic
d at a
netic
rie's

Types of magnet : Normally the magnet is of two types :—

(I) **Temporary Magnet :** Temporary magnets are those in which magnetic substance magnetises easily and demagnetises quickly. That's why these magnets are also called electromagnets. Usually for constructing temporary magnet soft irons are used.

Electromagnets (temporary magnets) are used frequently in the electric alarm, in the core of transformer, in the dynamo in which soft irons are magnetised.

(II) **Permanent Magnet :** Permanent magnets are those in which magnetic substance magnetises by slowly and steadily in a long span of time and demagnetises also not easily. The stainless steel is frequently used for its construction and in order to obtain a good quality of permanent magnet.

In loudspeaker, needle indicator, Galvanometer etc. permanent magnets of the steel are used.

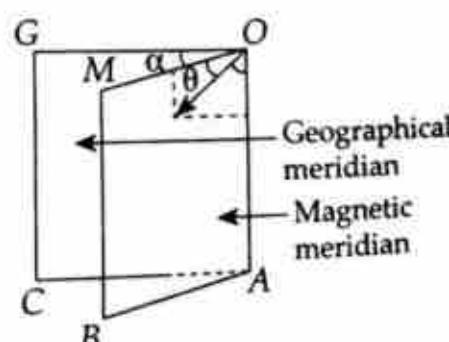
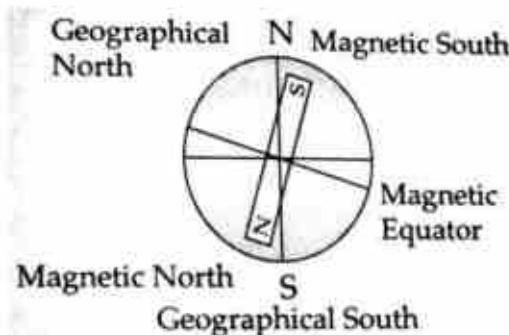
Domains : In ferromagnetic substance every atom of it behaves like a tiny magnet and this substance has a large number of atoms in the group, which is called domain. In every domain about 10^{18} to 10^{21} atoms exist. Due to the collective contribution of these atoms a ferromagnetic substance has a sharp magnetism.

Terrestrial magnetism : When any magnetic compass (needle) is freely suspended through its centre of gravity (c.g.); then the compass remains confined in the North-South direction. Thus, magnetic compass to remain static in a particular direction tells us about the presence of magnetic field on the earth's surface. This is called terrestrial magnetism.

By the study of magnetic lines of force the behaviour and character of the earth appears like a great magnet, in which the magnetic North pole is oriented towards the geographical South pole and the magnetic South pole is oriented towards the geographical North pole.

If the magnetic needle is suspended freely through its c.g. and which is able to rotate in a vertical plane, then it doesn't remain horizontal but makes some angle with the horizontal.

Also if the freely suspended magnetic needle is taken away from North to South, then there are two places where the direction of the needle becomes vertical. Of these two places at one place the North pole of the vertical needle leans towards the earth is called magnetic North pole of the earth. At another place the south pole of the vertical needle also leans towards the earth is called magnetic South pole. If an imaginary straight line is drawn through the centre of the earth joining magnetic North pole and magnetic South pole of the earth, then this straight line is called magnetic axis of the



earth. The angle between the magnetic axis with the geographical axis is of about 17° . Ultimately we can conclude that the magnetic and geographical poles are different and separate.

Here two terms become significant to understand the terrestrial magnetism in some more specific way.

Magnetic meridian : It is a vertical plane containing the direction of magnetic force at a place of a freely suspended magnetic needle. Thus plane $OABM$ represents *magnetic meridian*.

Geographical meridian : It is a vertical plane through the geographical north and south direction at a place. Thus plane $OACG$ represents geographical meridian in the figure.

At any place of the earth, the magnetic field of the earth depends on the three parameters called magnetic elements. These are—

(i) **Angle of declination :** At any place of the earth the angle between the geographical meridian and the magnetic meridian is called angle of declination. Obviously from the figure α is the angle of declination.

(ii) **Angle of dip or angle of inclination :** At any place of the earth the angle between the direction of the total earth's magnetic field intensity and the horizontal line in the magnetic meridian is called angle of dip or angle of inclination. Obviously from the figure θ is angle of dip. Also at the poles of the earth angle of dip is 90° , while at the equator the angle of dip is 0° .

(iii) **Horizontal component of earth's magnetic field :** The horizontal component of the entire magnetic field of the earth has different values at different places of the earth, but its average value at any particular place is assumed to be 0.4 Gauss or 0.4×10^{-4} Tesla.

Causes of earth's magnetic field : The cause of the earth's magnetism is still a vague (unsettled) question. So many theories regarding it were propounded time to time and over all contributions of all are relevant and significant only upto very small extent.

Gilbert in 1600 stated that the earth is a *great magnet*, but the experimental facts are not in the favour of this theory because the earth is not completely made up through the magnetic materials. Bond in 1676 suggested that the earth was surrounded by a magnetic sphere whose axis was inclined at $8^\circ 30'$ to the axis of rotation of the earth. Similar theories were put forward by Halley and Hansteen. Gauss in 1839 came to conclusion that the magnetism of the earth is due to the materials within the earth. In 1849 Grove explained the earth's magnetism by assuming that it is due to an electric current circulating around the earth and this electric current is generated inside the earth due to the sun. The warm air ascends in the equatorial region, and moves towards the North and South in upper regions and get electrified. In 1870, Schuster came to a conclusion that the daily variation of the earth's magnetic elements is due to some external variations in the atmosphere.

Thus, the magnetic character of the earth cannot be explained clearly on any above ground and all the above logic and reasons may collectively make a mysterious perception.

Miscellaneous :

1. Kirchoff's laws : Kirchoff in 1842 gave two laws which enable us to find out the distribution of current in any electrical network of conductors. In fact Kirchoff's laws are the consequences of two fundamental principles; the principle of conservation of charge and the principle of conservation of energy. These two laws are :

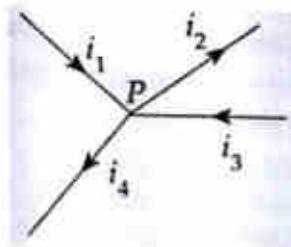
(i) In an electric circuit the algebraic sum of the currents meeting at any junction in the circuit is zero.

$$\text{Thus, } \sum i = 0$$

$$\text{i.e. } i_1 - i_2 + i_3 - i_4 = 0$$

where, Σ (sigma) = sum

$$\text{i.e. } i_1 + i_3 = i_2 + i_4$$



Thus the total current flowing toward a node (or junction) is equal to the total current flowing away from that junction. This is simply the charge conservation principle. When the currents in a circuit are steady, there can be no accumulation of charge at any point in the circuit.

(ii) In any closed loop (closed conducting path in the circuit) of a circuit, the algebraic sum of the products of the current and the resistance in each part of the loop is equal to the algebraic sum of emf's in that loop.

$$\sum i R = \sum E \quad \text{where } \Sigma \text{ (sigma) is the notation used for the sum.}$$

Thus, it is simply a statement of the law of conservation of energy.

Application of Kirchoff's laws

Wheatstone bridge : Wheatstone bridge is an arrangement of four resistances P, Q, S and R , which are joined in a closed chain $ABCDA$.

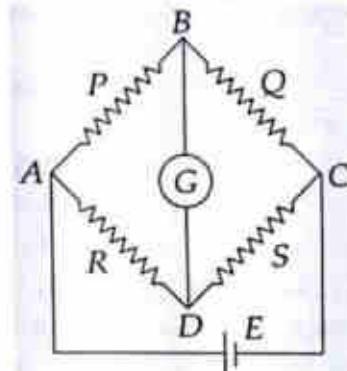
A galvanometer of resistance G is connected across the diagonal BD and a cell E of emf e and internal resistance r is connected across AC . This whole arrangement is called a *Wheatstone bridge*.

Condition for a balance in Wheatstone bridge : A wheatstone bridge is said to be balanced, when no current through the galvanometer is passed out.

$$\text{At the balance position } \frac{P}{Q} = \frac{R}{S}$$

Usually the wheatstone bridge is used for a rapid and accurate measurement of resistance. The post office box (P.O. box) and the meter bridge are the practical applications of the wheatstone bridge.

2. Internal resistance of a cell : The resistance offered by the chemical solution between the electrodes of the cell is called *internal resistance* of the cell. It depends on the nature of the solution, and upon the current which is given to the cell. The car battery consists of an accumulator whose internal resistance is very small (about 0.01Ω) and resistance can not be measured by a wheatstone bridge, because of occurrence of insensitivity. That's why we use meter bridge to measure such small resistance.



3. Some more devices (instruments)

(i) Van de graph generator : It is an instrument to produce a very high voltage (in million volts) and it is designed on the basic principle in which when a charged conductor is brought into the internal contact with a hollow conductor, then all of its charges transfer to the hollow conductor.

(ii) Cyclotron : A compact machine devised by Lawrence and Livingston in 1932 to accelerate the positive ions like protons, neutrons and α -particles is called cyclotron (or cyclic accelerator). But by this machine (device) negatively charged particle (electron) cannot be accelerated because relativistic mass starts to increase abruptly with increase of velocity.

(iii) Betatron : The Betatron is a device through which a negatively charged particle (electron) is accelerated and gets sufficient energy even higher than the electrons (β -particles) emitted from a radioactive substance. The betatron-accelerated electrons can produce X-rays so short in wavelength and so penetrating in character as to surpass the gamma rays (γ -rays) from a radioactive substance.

(iv) Thermopile : It is one of the best known applications of the thermo-electric effect and it is a device through which small amount of thermal radiations are detected.

(v) Bolometer : The basic principle and function of the Bolometer is the same as that of a thermopile but it consists of a piece of resistance wire forming one arm of a bridge. When it receives energy its temperature rises, consequently its resistance rises and the balance of the bridge is disturbed. The current so flows through the galvanometer and a relation between this current and the rate of the absorption of energy is usually formed by calibration.

4. Some more terms related to the electrical circuits :

(i) Load : Load is a device or element which draws the current from a voltage source and thus the connection of a load reduces the voltage. A short circuit between two points has a direct connection and to short out a component a thick wire is connected and is parallel with it. Load has an infinite resistance for an open circuit.

(ii) Impedance : The impedance is the quantity used in a.c. circuit and is similar to the ohmic resistance used in d.c. circuit and it is represented by Z .

(iii) Admittance : The reciprocal of the impedance in a.c. circuit is called admittance and it is represented by Y . Thus, admittance plays the same role in a.c. circuit as conductance plays in the d.c. circuit.

VI. Modern Physics (Atomic & Nuclear Physics)

Composition of matter : Since the primitive days it was assumed that every matter is the composition of small particles but there was no experimental evidence at that time regarding to it. In 1803 Dalton asserted and propounded that every matter around us is made of small particles and these are said to be atoms. Dalton also speculated that the atom is the basic constituent of all the matters and cannot be divided by any physical or chemical means. But later atom was also divided into electron, proton and

introduce a very high principle in which it act with a hollow conductor. and Livingston and α -particles in device) negatively relativistic mass

which a negatively ent energy even active substance rtin wavelength sys (γ -rays) from s of the thermo- unt of thermal

e Bolometer is resistance with perature rises, e is disturbed ition between lly formed by

current from he voltage. A to shortout a Load has an

\therefore circuit and presented by

circuit is called ie same role

s assumed ere was no on asserted ll particles atom is the physical or proton and

neutron and these are called fundamental (elementary) particles. Of lately these are also assumed to be made from quarks. Some more micro particles also appeared along with the research and development activities of Atomic & Nuclear physics which have been kept in the class of elementary particles and at present there are nearly 30 elementary particles.

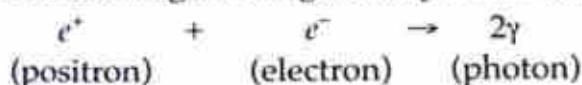
(i) **Electron**: Firstly invented fundamental particle is electron. In 1897 the electron was invented by J. J. Thomson. The electron is basically a negatively charged particle which rotates around the central massive part of the atom called nucleus and it is distributed in various energy levels and sub-levels of the atom.

The electron has a negative charge of 1.6×10^{-19} coulomb, while electronic mass (mass of the electron) is 9.1×10^{-31} kg. The electron is a stable fundamental particle.

(ii) **Proton** : The proton is another fundamental particle which was invented by Goldstein in 1919. It is basically a positively charged particle and it has a positive charge of 1.6×10^{-19} coulomb and the mass of the proton is 1.6×10^{-27} kg. The proton is confined to the nucleus of the atom. The proton is also another stable fundamental particle.

(iii) **Neutron** : This was invented in 1932 by James Chadwick. It is a neutral fundamental particle (no charge) confined to the nucleus. The mass of the neutron is approximately equal to that of the mass of the proton. Neutron is an unstable fundamental particle whose half life period is nearly of 17 minutes. It is utilised in life sciences and medical sciences frequently. Since it has no charge it is used in nuclear fission.

(iv) **Positron** : It is a fundamental particle which has the same mass, anti-spin as that of the electron and opposite charge of the electron. Thus positron is also called positive electron. Also positron was the first fundamental particle in the form of anti-particle of the electron which was discovered in 1932 by Anderson in a cloud chamber experiment exposed to the cosmic rays. When a positron comes to rest in matter, it is quickly annihilated by an electron resulting in two gamma photons (γ -photons)



(v) **Neutrino** : This fundamental particle was invented in 1930 by Pauli. This is a massless and chargeless fundamental particle. The antiparticle of the neutrino is called antineutrino which has anti-spin.

(vi) **Pi-meson (π -meson)** : It was invented in 1935 by H. Yukawa a Japanese physicist when he was propounding, Yukawa's meson theory of nuclear forces. The mechanism responsible for the strongly-attractive, non-electrical and non-gravitational, short-range nuclear forces between nucleons (protons + neutrons) remained a mystery for a long time. In this regard Yukawa predicted the existence of a new fundamental particle called pi-meson (π -meson) whose rest mass is about 230 times the rest mass of the electron (9.1×10^{-31} kg). He proposed a theory of nuclear forces which involves these π -mesons. According to this theory all nucleons (protons and neutrons) consists of identical cores surrounded by a cloud of one or more pi-mesons. The mesons may be neutral or may carry either a positive or a

negative charge equal to the electronic charge and are designated as π^0 , π^+ and π^- respectively. But π -meson is also a unstable fundamental particle whose average life time is 10^{-8} second.

(vii) Photon : The photon is a basic constituent of all the electromagnetic wave and has a discrete energy of $h\nu$ in each quanta and each photon moves with velocity of light whose rest mass is zero.

Miscellaneous :

Elementary particles : These are fundamental particles whose internal structure cannot be described as a combination of the other particles.

Anti-particles : Fermi-Dirac's relativistic quantum theory of electron predicted the existence of an anti-particle. The anti-particle of a given particle has exactly the same mass, spin and life time (if unstable) but of the opposite charge if any. Further, the alignment between the spin and magnetic moment of an anti-particle is opposite to that of the corresponding particle. Also when an anti-particle meets its particle, they mutually annihilate (destroy).

Electron-volt : The electron-volt is a unit of energy in Atomic physics (or particle physics) and it is expressed as below,

$$1 \text{ eV (electron-volt)} = 1.6 \times 10^{-19} \text{ Joule.}$$

Cosmic rays : Cosmic rays are highly penetrating radiations consisting of high energy atomic nuclei which are continuously coming from outer space. Every second about 10^{18} cosmic rays reach the earth's surface and they have a wide range of energy from 10^9 to 10^{18} electron-volts.

Elster and Geital in 1899 and Wilson in 1900 firstly detected the cosmic rays. They found that the charge on very well insulated electroscope always leaked away in time although there was no ionising agent nearby which could make the air conducting. It was then thought that the leakage of charge was due to the ionising radiation from the radioactive minerals in the earth. Victor Hess, in 1911 sent an electroscope in balloon and found that intensity of the unknown ionising radiation was larger at high altitudes of the surface of the earth. He therefore proposed that radiation has originated from somewhere outside the earth's atmosphere. The radiation was finally called *cosmic rays* by Milikan in 1925. Until a mystery has been sustained about the origin of the cosmic rays in the outer atmosphere.

Planck's Quantum theory : Planck in 1900 introduced a totally new idea to explain the distribution of energy among various wavelengths of the black body (cavity) radiation. He assumed that the atoms of the walls of the cavity radiator behave like oscillators, each with a characteristic frequency of oscillation. These oscillator emit electromagnetic radiant energy into the cavity and also absorb the same from it and maintain an equilibrium state.

Thus assumptions in this regard are —

(i) An atomic oscillator can have only discrete energies given as

$$E = n h\nu$$

where, ν = frequency of the oscillator.

h = a constant called Planck's constant.
 n = an integer called quantum number.

This implies that the oscillator can have only energies $h\nu$, $2h\nu$, and no energy between any of the two. Here the energy of the oscillator is said to be quantized.

(ii) The oscillators do not emit or absorb energy continuously but only in jump and in discrete way in the form of a packet of photon (quanta) and each packet carries an amount of energy $h\nu$.

So the energy of a single quanta (photon) = $E = h\nu = hc/\lambda$. ($\because c = \nu\lambda$)

where, c = velocity of light in vacuum

λ = wavelength of the photon

h = Planck's constant = 6.625×10^{-34} joule-second.

Photoelectric effect

The emission of electrons from a metallic surface illuminated with light (photon) of appropriate wavelength or frequency is called photoelectric effect.

In other words photoelectric effect is a phenomenon in which, when the light (photon) of appropriate wavelength or frequency incidents on the metallic surface called photo cathode, then due to the production of photo electrons, photo current is generated. By the use of visible light, only certain alkali metals like sodium, potassium etc can exhibit the phenomenon of the photoelectric effect but using high frequency electromagnetic radiations (X-rays or γ -rays) almost metal can show the photoelectric effect. The photoelectric effect can also be exhibited by liquids and gases. But in liquid it is called electrolysis, while in the gas it is called ionization. It is also observed that the number of photoelectrons emitted per second (photo current) varies directly with the intensity of the incident light, but the energy (maximum) of the photo electrons is independent of the intensity of the incident light. The maximum energy of the liberated photo electrons only depends on the frequency of the incident light or its wavelength. Also this energy varies linearly with the frequency or inverse linearly with the wavelength of the incident light (photon).

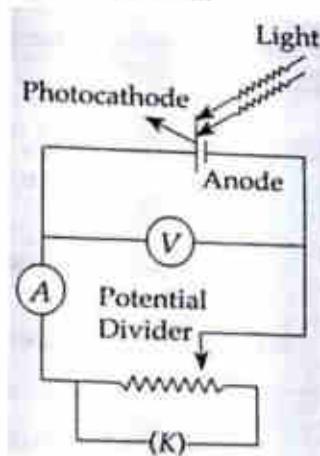
Some terms related to photoelectric effect :

(i) **Work function (ϕ)** : The minimum energy of the incident photon required to liberate an electron from a metallic surface is called photoelectric work function (ϕ).

Thus for a photoelectric effect— Energy of radiation of photon \geq work function (ϕ).

(ii) **Threshold frequency (ν_0)** : The minimum frequency of the incident radiation of the photon which is just sufficient to liberate an electron from the metallic surface is called threshold frequency (ν_0) for that metal.

Thus, threshold frequency is nothing new but the frequency of the work function.



mated as π^0, π^+
 ental particle
 electromagnetic
 photon moves

ose internal
 articles.
 of electron
 of a given
 stable) but
 en the spin
 hat of the
 rticle, they
 iic physics

consisting
 om outer
 rface and

ie cosmic
 troscope
 t nearby
 that the
 ioactive
 balloon
 s larger
 ed that
 sphere.
 Until a
 in the

ly new
 s of the
 ; of the
 uency
 y into
 brium

So for a photoelectric effect— frequency or maximum photon threshold frequency (v_0)

(iii) **Threshold wavelength (λ_0)**: The wavelength corresponding to the threshold frequency is called threshold wavelength (λ_0). It represents the longest wavelength above which the phenomenon of photoelectric effect is not possible.

Thus, for the occurrence of a photoelectric effect, the wavelength of radiation of photon \leq threshold wavelength (λ_0).

(iv) **Stopping potential (V_s)**: That negative potential or voltage which just makes the photo current (through photo cell) zero or no photo electron emitted from the photo cathode be reached on the anode if anode be made more and more negative then the electrons are repelled. This potential is called stopping potential (V_0) and repelled electrons have the maximum kinetic energy.

Thus, this K.E. of a repelled electron is given by $\frac{1}{2} mv_{\max.}^2 = eV_s$

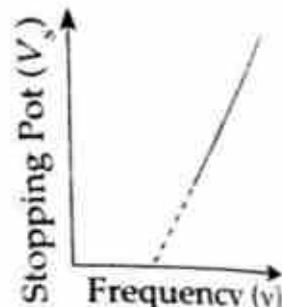
$\Rightarrow v_{\max.}$ = maximum velocity of the

$$\text{repelled photo electron} = \sqrt{\frac{2eV_s}{m}}$$

where; e = electronic charge (1.6×10^{-19} coulomb)

m = mass of the electron (9.1×10^{-31} kg.)

V_s = stopping potential



Einstein's theory of photoelectric effect : Before Einstein's theory various attempts were taken by the scientist to explain the phenomenon of photoelectric effect on the basis of the wave-theory. But the predicted time-lag between the light exposure and emission of electrons was not confirmed experimentally and so these explanations of wave theory were rejected.

After the failure of the wave-theory Einstein propounded his theory with the help of Planck's quantum theory.

He explained that when a photon of appropriate frequency (or wavelength) incidents on a metallic surface (photo cathode), then the energy of the corresponding photon is completely absorbed by the electron of the metallic surface in which the partial energy is utilised in ejecting the electron from the rest of surface and rest energy appears as kinetic energy of the photo electron.

Thus, Einstein's photo electric explanation is totally based upon the quantum theory and the phenomenon of photo electric effect cannot be explained by the wave-theory.

Mathematically,

Energy of incident photon ($h\nu$)

= work function (energy needed to eject the electron) + maximum

$$\Rightarrow h\nu = \phi + \frac{1}{2} mv_{\max.}^2 = h\nu_0 + \frac{1}{2} mv_{\max.}^2 \quad \text{K.E. of the electron}$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{1}{2}mv_{\max}^2 = h(v - v_0)$$

This equation is called Einstein's photoelectric equation.

where; v_0 = threshold frequency

v = frequency of incident photon

ϕ = work function

$$= hv_0 = hc/\lambda_0$$

Photoelectric cells : The device which converts light energy (photo energy) into electrical energy through the phenomenon of photoelectric effect is called photo electric cell or photo-cell. Depending upon different photoelectric effects employed, the photo cells are mainly of four types :

- (i) Photo-emissive cells. (ii) Photo-voltaic cells.
- (iii) Photo-conductive cells. (iv) Photo-multiplier tubes.

Applications of photoelectric cells :

(i) The photoelectric cells are frequently utilised in the reproduction of sound in the cinema and TV.

(ii) In the street light vapour lamps photoelectric cells are used which are automatically switched off during the day and switched on during the night.

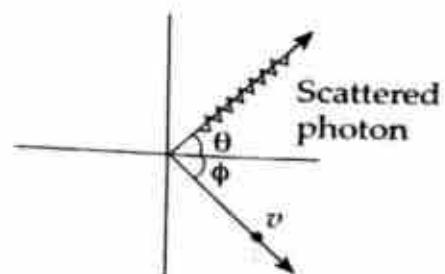
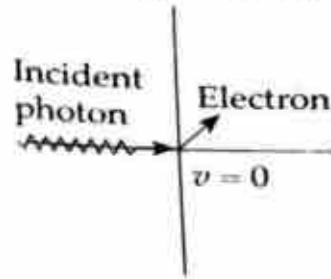
(iii) Automatic doors in the modern multiplexes and palatial complexes operate through the photo cells.

(iv) In the strong room of banking institutions the photo cells are installed to identify the unwanted person.

(v) In the space satellites photo cells are used which are charged in the day by solar energy, while at night the charged electricity is used up.

Compton effect : When a monochromatic (light or wave having same frequency and constant phase difference) beam of photon (say X-ray) is scattered by a substance, then the scattered X-rays have the radiation of not only the same wavelength as that of the original rays but also the radiation of longer wavelength. The former is called unmodified radiation and that of the later is called modified. The classical electromagnetic theory explained the unmodified radiation but it totally failed to explain the presence of the modified radiation.

Compton gave a satisfactory explanation on the basis of quantum theory for the modified radiation. Compton assumed that during the scattering process, the incident photon collides with a free electron (initially at rest) in the scattering material.



Incident photon transfers some of its energy to the electron which moves with a velocity v in a direction making an angle ϕ with the direction of the incident photon. The photon itself with reduced energy is scattered in a direction θ with the original direction. This scattered photon constitutes scattered modified radiation.

X-rays: X-rays are the short electromagnetic waves which are produced when rapidly moving electrons are stopped by the heavy metallic target like tungsten, molybdenum, platinum etc. The metallic targets are made from those which have high melting point, high atomic number and high thermal conductivity.

X-rays were firstly observed and produced by Prof. W.C. Roentgen in 1895. X-rays were also referred to as Roentgen rays. Within three months after Roentgen's discovery, X-rays were being put to use in a hospital in Vienna in connection with major surgical operations.

The device through which X-rays are produced is called X-ray tube. There are two main types of the X-rays tube—

(i) **Roentgen X-rays tube :** This is also called gas filled X-rays tube designed by Roentgen himself. Roentgen X-ray tube is the oldest and the first-made tube.

(ii) **Coolidge X-rays tube :** Almost all the defects of Roentgen tube have been successfully removed in Coolidge-tube designed by W.D. Coolidge in 1913. At present practically all the X-rays tubes used for surgical works and others are of Coolidge type and that's why Coolidge X-rays tube is called modern X-rays tube.

Intensity and Quality of X-rays : The intensity of emitted X-rays is directly proportional to the number of electrons striking the target. This in turn depends upon the filament temperature, which can be controlled by the heating current. Thus by the variation of heating current, the intensity of X-rays beam can be controlled.

The quality or penetrating power of X-rays depends upon the energy of the electrons bombarding the target. This energy (eV) is determined by the applied potential difference (V) between the cathode and the target. The larger the applied voltage, the larger the energy of bombarding electrons and hence the larger the penetrating power of X-rays.

Origin of X-rays : X-rays are produced by bombarding high energy electrons on some heavy metals. Due to very large velocity, electrons penetrate well inside the atom of target metal and knock out one of the electrons of its innermost orbit like K, L -orbit. The vacant space is filled by the electron from the neighbouring outer shell and the balance of energy is emitted out as X-ray photon. Such X-rays are called characteristic X-rays, since these have discrete wavelengths depending on atomic number of the target atom.

X-rays are also produced due to a sudden stoppage (deceleration) of the electrons which give rise to continuous or white X-rays, whose wavelength varies from a certain minimum (λ_{minimum}) to all possible values up to $\lambda = 250 \text{ \AA}$.

Properties :

- X-rays are electromagnetic waves of very short wavelengths from 0.1 Å to 250 Å. Thus, the wavelength of X-rays has the order of 1 Å.
- X-rays having smaller wavelength up to about 10 Å are more energetic and it is called hard X-rays, while X-rays having larger wavelength above than 10 Å are less energetic and it is called soft X-rays.
- X-rays photon is electrically neutral and travels with the speed of light (3×10^8 m/second), as no deflection takes place on passing through the electric and magnetic field.
- X-rays exhibit wave and particle both aspect very prominently.
- The penetrating power of X-rays is very high so they can pass through many substances such as paper, cardboard, flesh, blood, leather, wood, metal sheet, concrete walls etc.
- Although X-rays are strongly absorbed by the lead and bones, absorption of X-rays increases with increase in the thickness and the increase in the atomic number of atoms in the medium.
- X-rays show optical phenomena like interference, diffraction, refraction and polarisation etc. very easily like the visible light.
- X-rays are used in the research work and in the study of the structure of the crystals, arrangement of the atoms and molecules of the matter and their general behaviour.

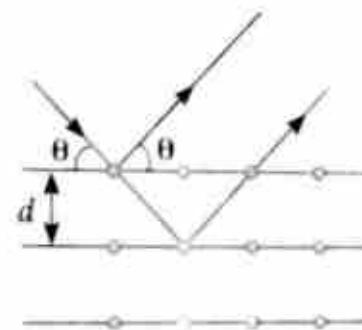
Moseley's law : It states that the frequency of the characteristic X-rays varies directly to the square of the atomic number of the element emitting it.

Thus frequency (v) $\propto (Z - b)^2$

$$\text{i.e. } v = a(Z - b)^2$$

where, Z is the atomic number and a, b are constants.

Bragg's law : A very specific study of X-rays diffraction from the crystals of the solid was done by British scientist team of father and son, Sir W. H. Bragg and Sir Lawrence Bragg. They pointed out that atoms of the crystalline solid are arranged in a regular pattern and that a set of equidistant planes can be drawn through the crystal. Such planes are called Bragg's planes and their separation as Bragg's spacing.



Bragg's law explains the condition for X-rays reflected by the crystals to cause constructive interference.

Applying the usual condition for constructive interference Bragg obtained the relation;

$$2d \sin\theta = n\lambda ; \text{ where}$$

d = separation between two consecutive planes.

λ = wavelength of X-rays beam.

θ = glancing angle.

n = order of interference maxima.

in which recoil
direction of the
scattered ion
constitute the

are produced
illistic target like
re made from
high thermal

Roentgen
three months
1 hospital it

X-ray tube

X-rays tube
est and the

tube have
Zoohidge it
works and
e is called

X-rays is
et. This is
trolled by
intensity

ie energy
nined by
target. The
electrons

1 energy
electrons
ie of the
filled by
energy

X-ray
er of the

1) of the
elengt
s up to

During the X-rays production nearly 99.8% energy of the incident beam of the electrons on the target is converted into the heat which is given to the metallic target, and only 0.2% energy appears as X-rays. Roentgen is the unit of X-ray dose.

de-Broglie hypothesis of matter waves : The wave theory of light successfully explained the phenomena like interference, diffraction etc, but failed to explain the phenomena like photo electric effect, compton effect etc. These phenomena although explained on the basis of Planck's quantum theory. According to the quantum theory a beam of light of frequency ν is composed through the tiny discrete packets called *photons*, each having an energy $h\nu$, where h is Planck's constant. Thus, light possesses a dual character, behaving as a wave as well a particle (photon).

Similar to the dual character of light, de-Broglie in 1924 introduced the hypothesis that all the material particles in motion possess a wave character also. According to de-Broglie micro subatomic particles like electron, proton, neutron etc. can be associated or interpreted as waves. These waves are called matter waves or de-Broglie waves.

de-Broglie wavelength of matter waves is expressed as $\lambda = \frac{h}{p}$

where, h = Planck's constant

p = momentum of the photon

If an electron is accelerated through a p.d V from rest, then velocity acquired by the electron say, v (non-relativistically)

$$\Rightarrow \frac{1}{2} m_0 v^2 = eV ; m_0 = \text{rest mass of the electron}$$

$$\text{i.e. } v = \sqrt{\frac{2eV}{m_0}}$$

$$\text{But de-Broglie wavelength, } \lambda = \frac{h}{p} = \frac{h}{mv} = \frac{h}{m_0 v}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus } \lambda &= \frac{h}{m_0 \sqrt{\frac{2eV}{m_0}}} = \frac{h}{\sqrt{2m_0 eV}} \\ &= \frac{6.625 \times 10^{-34}}{\sqrt{2 \times 9.1 \times 10^{-31} \times 1.6 \times 10^{-19} \times V}} \\ &= \frac{12.27}{\sqrt{V}} \text{ Å} \approx \sqrt{\frac{150}{V}} \text{ Å} \end{aligned}$$

The Davisson-Germer experiment gave the direct verification of de-Broglie hypothesis of the wave nature of the moving particles.

Heisenberg's uncertainty principle : This principle was described by Heisenberg in 1927 and it states that we can measure either the position or the momentum of a particle with any desired degree of accuracy (within the limits of experimental equipment) but it is impossible to measure both the position and momentum simultaneously with unlimited accuracy.

Heisenberg said that if we design even an ideal experimental device to measure simultaneously the position x and the corresponding component

of momentum p_x of a particle, there will be an uncertainty of Δx in the position and an uncertainty of Δp_x in the momentum such that $\Delta x \Delta p_x = h/4\pi$ where h = Planck's constant.

thus, uncertainty principle states :

The product of the uncertainty Δx in the position of a body at some instant and the uncertainty Δp_x in its component of momentum at the same instant is equal to or greater than $h/4\pi$.

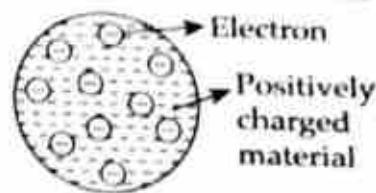
If one quantity is tried to be measured exactly, then other will become completely uncertain and vice-versa.

Atomic models : Matter despite its appearance of being continuous, possesses a definite particle structure on a microscopic level and the ultimate particles of matter are called atoms. Today an atom is assumed to be constituted through electrons, protons and neutrons.

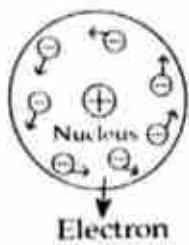
The first information about the structure of atom came from the discovery (invention) of electron in 1897, when it became known that all atoms contain the negatively charged electrons. Since matter is electrically neutral, it was inferred that atoms must also contain positively charged material. Also an electron was found to be thousands of times lighter than the entire atom. This implies that the positive charge of an atom carries nearly the entire mass. The radius of the atom was estimated to be of the order of 10^{-10} meter from the kinetic theory of matter.

Thus, to know the entire aspect of the atom, various models were propounded as given below :

(i) **Thomson's atomic model :** Thomson in 1904 suggested that an atom is a uniform sphere of a positively charged material in which electrons are embedded in such number as to balance and neutralize the positive charges. The model though was soon discarded as it was in complete disagreement with experiments on the large-angle scattering of α -particles by the matter.



(ii) **Rutherford's atomic model :** Rutherford suggested that in an atom the entire positive charge and nearly all of its mass are concentrated at the centre of the atom in a small volume known as the nucleus of the atom. The electrons revolve around the nucleus in the planetary orbits at a larger distance compared with the size of the nucleus. The orbital motion was assumed because without it the electrons will fall into the nucleus under the electrostatic attraction and the atom will collapse.



This model was in fact based upon the results of α -particles scattering experiment. Most of the α -particles falling upon the metallic foil go through the atoms practically undeviated because the atoms are largely hollow and the electrons due to their little mass do not appreciably affect the motion of the incident α -particles. Those particles which pass close to the (positively charged) nucleus however experience strong electrostatic repulsion and are scattered through a large angle.

But Rutherford's model despite the strong experimental support, faced certain difficulties. The revolving electrons are constantly accelerated (centripetal) towards the nucleus. Such electrons according to classical electromagnetic theory will constantly radiate energy in the form of electromagnetic waves. Hence the electrons will be rapidly spiralled out and will fall into the nucleus and the atom will collapse. But in practice, atom doesn't collapse. Also in Rutherford's model the electron can revolve in orbits of all possible radii and so they should emit continuous radiations of all the frequencies. But the experimental fact is that atoms like hydrogen emit line spectra of radiation of only certain fixed frequencies in discrete form. Thus this model was also discarded.

(iii) Bohr's (Quantum) atomic model : In 1913, Niels Bohr gave a new and bold idea of atomic structure in order to explain the stability of the atom and the emission of sharp spectral lines. He proposed the following two modifications in Rutherford's model which were contrary to the classical electromagnetic theory.

(a) The electrons can revolve around the nucleus only in certain fixed orbits and they do not radiate energy while they remain in these permitted orbits, and the atom is stable. The permitted orbits are those in which angular momentum of the electron is quantized and this angular momentum (mvr) of the electron is an integral multiple of $\frac{h}{2\pi}$

$$\text{Thus, } mvr = \frac{nh}{2\pi}, \text{ where } n = \text{quantum number}$$

h = Planck's constant

(b) The emission (or absorption) of the radiation by the atom takes place when an electron jumps from one quantized (permitted) orbit to another. The radiation is emitted (or absorbed) as a single photon (quantum) whose energy hv is equal to the difference in energy ΔE of the electron in the two orbits involved.

$$\text{Thus, } \Delta E = hv,$$

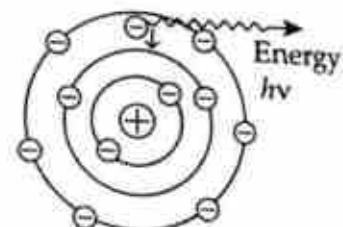
where, v = frequency of emitted or absorbed radiation

Hence, the spectrum of the atom will have certain fixed frequencies.

The main objection against the Bohr's model was that its assumptions were entirely arbitrary and could only be justified by the experimental results.

Bohr's atomic model is the first model which was accepted but due to lack of explaining the intensity of the spectral lines, fine structure of spectral lines, spectra of complex atom etc. a new atomic model which was called Vector model was developed and in it everything were explained which were lacked in the Bohr's model.

Zeeman Effect : Zeeman in 1896 observed that when a light source providing line spectrum is kept in an external magnetic field, the spectral lines emitted by the atoms of the source are split into a number of polarised components. This effect of magnetic field on the atomic spectral lines is called Zeeman effect.



Raman Effect: When a strong beam of visible or ultraviolet line-spectral light illuminates a gas, a liquid or a transparent solid, then a small fraction of the light is scattered in all directions. The spectrum of the scattered light is found to have the lines of the same frequencies as the incident beam (called Rayleigh lines) and also certain weak lines of the changed frequencies. This production of additional new lines is called Raman effect, and lines are called Raman lines. The Raman lines corresponding to each exciting (Rayleigh) line occur symmetrically on both sides of the exciting line. The lines on the low-frequency side of the exciting line are called Stokes lines, while those on the high-frequency side are called anti-Stokes lines. The anti-Stokes Raman lines are much weaker than Stokes Raman lines.

The displacement (in cm^{-1}) of the lines are independent of the frequencies of the later. If another light source with a different line-spectrum is used, then another Raman lines are obtained for the same scattering substance. However, the displacements from the exciting lines are the same. For different scattering substances, the displacements have different magnitudes. Thus, the Raman displacements are the characteristic of the scattering substance.

Pauli's exclusion principle : The electrons in an atom are distributed in a definite way among various shells and sub-shells. This distribution is governed by a principle given by Pauli in 1925. This is called *Pauli's exclusion principle*. This states that no two electrons in an atom can exist in the same quantum state. This concludes that no two electrons can have the same set of the four quantum numbers. There are certain numbers whose specification actually explains in detail configuration of the electrons in the shell and sub-shell which are called quantum numbers. There are four quantum numbers - principal quantum number (n), orbital or azimuthal quantum number (l), spin quantum number (s) and magnetic quantum number (m_l).

Radioactivity : Radioactivity is in fact a chance discovery by Henry Becquerel, a French scientist. In 1896 he found that a photographic plate wrapped around three folds in the black paper was affected by a piece of mineral uranium kept over it for some time. Some rays were thought to be emitted by the uranium piece which could pass through the black paper and subsequently affected the plate. Intensive research work were carried out by Becquerel, Madam Curie and Pierre Curie which confirmed that this type of radiation was not only limited to uranium but a number of other elements like thorium, radium, polonium etc. and their salts also emit similar penetrating radiations. Such elements are said to be radioactive and the spontaneous emission of the radiation is called radioactivity (natural). Such spontaneous invisible radiations also penetrate through the opaque substances which ionise the gases and affects the photographic plates.

The property associated with the emission of this types of penetrating radiations are called radioactive rays or Becquerel rays (α , β and γ -rays). Soddy was the first to suggest that this type of radiation is a result of the transformation of an unstable nucleus to a more stable nucleus. Rutherford studied the effect of electric and magnetic fields on the radiation emitted by different radioactive substances. He observed that the radiation has three

(ii) The emission occurs spontaneously and cannot be speeded up or slowed down by the physical means such as change of pressure, temperature etc.

(iii) The disintegration occurs at random and which atom would disintegrate first is simply just a matter of chance.

(iv) The rate of disintegration of a particular substance (i.e. number of atoms disintegrating per second) at any instant is proportional to the number of atoms present at that instant.

If N be the number of atoms present in a radioactive substance at any instant t , and dN be the number that disintegrates in a short interval dt . Then the rate of disintegration is $-\frac{dN}{dt}$ which is proportional to N i.e.

$-\frac{dN}{dt} = \lambda N$, where; λ is called decay constant. (-ve sign indicates that atoms decay with time).

$$\Rightarrow \frac{dN}{N} = -\lambda dt.$$

On integration and simplification,
where, N_0 = number of atoms in
the begining.

N = number of atoms at the
time t .

This equation shows that the number of atoms of a given radioactive substance decreases exponentially with time (i.e. more rapidly at first and slowly afterwards). This is called Rutherford-Soddy law of the radioactive decay.

Half life period : The atoms of a radioactive substance undergo continuous decay so that their number goes on decreasing. The time-interval T in which the mass of a radioactive substance or the number of its atoms is reduced to half its initial value is called the half-life period of that substance.

The half life period of a radioactive substance is constant, but it is different for different substances.

As by Rutherford-Soddy law;

$$\checkmark N = N_0 e^{-\lambda t}$$

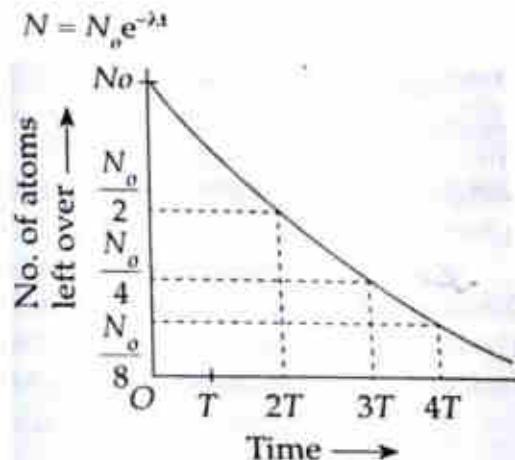
where, λ is the decay constant.

Now, let T be the half life period of any substance then $N = \frac{N_0}{2}$

$$\text{Thus } \frac{N_0}{2} = N_0 e^{-\lambda T}$$

$$\Rightarrow \lambda T = \log_e 2 \quad (\because t = T)$$

$$\Rightarrow T = \frac{\log_e 2}{\lambda} = \frac{0.693}{\lambda}$$



(ii) The emission occurs spontaneously and cannot be speeded up or slowed down by the physical means such as change of pressure, temperature etc.

(iii) The disintegration occurs at random and which atom would disintegrate first is simply just a matter of chance.

(iv) The rate of disintegration of a particular substance (i.e. number of atoms disintegrating per second) at any instant is proportional to the number of atoms present at that instant.

If N be the number of atoms present in a radioactive substance at any instant t , and dN be the number that disintegrates in a short interval dt . Then the rate of disintegration is $-\frac{dN}{dt}$ which is proportional to N i.e.

$-\frac{dN}{dt} = \lambda N$, where; λ is called decay constant. (-ve sign indicates that atoms decay with time).

$$\Rightarrow \frac{dN}{N} = -\lambda dt.$$

On integration and simplification, where, N_0 = number of atoms in the begining.

N = number of atoms at the time t .

This equation shows that the number of atoms of a given radioactive substance decreases exponentially with time (i.e. more rapidly at first and slowly afterwards). This is called Rutherford-Soddy law of the radioactive decay.

Half life period : The atoms of a radioactive substance undergo continuous decay so that their number goes on decreasing. The time-interval T in which the mass of a radioactive substance or the number of its atoms is reduced to half its initial value is called the half-life period of that substance.

The half life period of a radioactive substance is constant, but it is different for different substances.

As by Rutherford-Soddy law;

~~$$N = N_0 e^{-\lambda t}$$~~

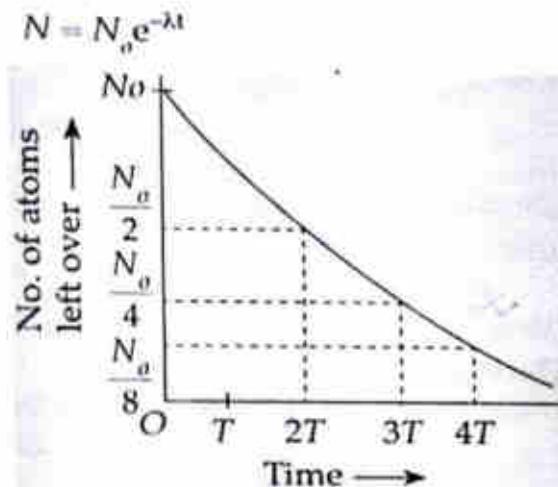
where, λ is the decay constant.

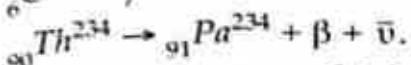
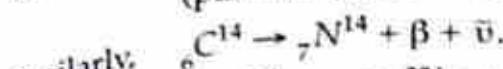
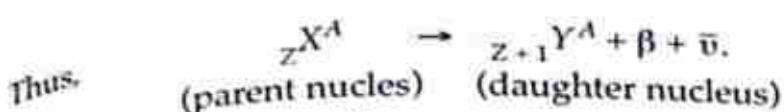
Now, let T be the half life period of any substance then $N = \frac{N_0}{2}$

$$\text{Thus } \frac{N_0}{2} = N_0 e^{-\lambda T}$$

$$\Rightarrow \lambda T = \log_e 2 \quad (\because t = T)$$

$$\Rightarrow T = \frac{\log_e 2}{\lambda} = \frac{0.693}{\lambda}$$





Nuclei having excess neutrons (high value of n/p ratio) are found to decay by β -emission.

(iii) γ -decay : When a parent atom emits gamma rays, no charge is involved as these are neutral rays, so no change in mass number and atomic number during γ -decay takes place. In fact γ -rays are electromagnetic waves having energy in the form of photon and its emission changes the nucleus from an excited state (high energy state) to a less excited (lower energy state) state.

The above mechanism of radioactive transformations (α , β and γ -decays) are called *Soddy-Fajan's group displacement laws*.

Radioactive series : Practically all the natural radioactive elements lie in the range of atomic numbers from $Z = 83$ to $Z = 92$. The nuclei of these elements are unstable and disintegrate by ejecting either an α -particle or a β -particle. By ejection of α , β -particles new atoms are formed and if these atoms have also unstable nuclei then further emission also takes place, until a stable nuclei is not to be found and a series of radioactive elements are obtained called radioactive series.

There are four radioactive series (UTAN)—

(i) **Uranium Series :** In this series the parent element is uranium- ${}_{92}^{238}U$ and the end product of this series after the emission of six α -particles and five β -particles is obtained as radium lead (${}_{82}^{206}Pb$) which is indistinguishable chemically from the ordinary lead and it is a stable isotope of the lead.

(ii) **Thorium Series :** The parent element of this series is Thorium - ${}_{90}^{232}Th$. It goes through a series of transformations in many respects similar to the uranium series and ends with a stable isotope of lead (${}_{82}^{208}Pb$).

(iii) **Actinium Series :** The parent element of this series is an isotope of Uranium called Actino-Uranium- ${}_{92}^{235}U$ and its end product is again a stable isotope of lead (${}_{82}^{207}Pb$).

(iv) **Neptunium Series :** With the discovery of the unstable transuranic elements (the elements of atomic number greater than 92) are called transuranic elements, another radioactive series was traced out. This is called Neptunium series after its longest-lived member Neptunium. Its origin is traced back to plutonium and it doesn't end in a stable isotope of lead but in the stable isotope of Bismuth (${}_{83}^{209}Bi$).

Activity of radioactive substance and its units : The activity of a sample of any radioactive material is the rate at which its constituent atoms disintegrate. Thus if dN be the number of atoms which disintegrate during a time-interval dt , the activity of the sample will be given by

$$\text{activity} = -\frac{dN}{dt}$$

The negative sign indicates that the number of atoms is decreasing with time.

The traditional unit of the activity is curie and 1 curie (Ci) = 3.7×10^{10} disintegrations/second.

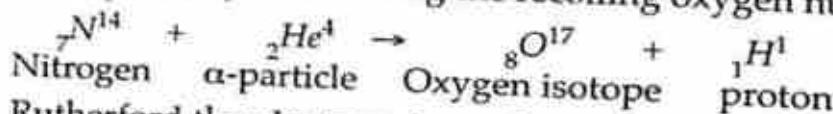
An another unit of the activity is Rutherford and 1 Rutherford = 10^10 disintegrations/second.

SI unit of the activity is the becquerel (Bq) and 1 becquerel (Bq) = 1 disintegration/second.

Thus $1 Ci = 3.7 \times 10^{10} Bq$.

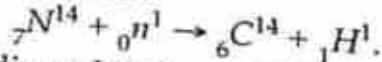
Artificial radioactivity : The idea of artificial radioactivity was firstly conceived by L Curie and F. Juliet. Hence L. Curie & F. Juliet were assumed to be the real inventor of artificial radioactivity. The radioactive elements in which natural disintegration of nucleus occurs are heavier elements. Rutherford took the attempt and became successful in making a stable nucleus of ordinary nitrogen by the bombardment of fast moving α -particles. This phenomenon of making a stable nucleus into an unstable nucleus by the artificial means is called artificial radioactivity or induced radioactivity or man-made radioactivity.

Thus, when a nitrogen nucleus ($_7N^{14}$) is struck by an α -particle ($_2He^4$), a proton ($_1H^1$) is ejected leaving the recoiling oxygen nucleus ($_8O^{17}$).



Rutherford thereby transformed ordinary nitrogen into a rare isotope of oxygen. This was the first artificial nuclear transformation.

Carbon dating : The idea of the carbon dating was suggested by Prof. Libby, an Atomic scientist of Chicago. Our atmosphere contains a large number of stable isotopes. When cosmic rays strike these isotopes, a number of radio isotopes are produced. One of these radio isotopes is carbon-14 ($_6C^{14}$) which is produced by the bombardment of atmospheric nitrogen with high energy neutrons.



Radio carbon is unstable and decays (by emitting β -particle) to nitrogen with half-life of 5600 years. The carbon-14 is incorporated into the atmospheric carbon dioxide molecules which are taken inside by the plants when they breathe CO_2 . Animals which eat the plants also take carbon-14 inside theirself. Ultimately the concentration of $_6C^{14}$ in all living organisms reaches at an equilibrium value of nearly 15 decays/ minute. When an organism dies, it stops taking $_6C^{14}$ from the atmosphere and the concentration of $_6C^{14}$ present in organism decreases with the time. By measuring the ratio of the concentration of $_6C^{14}$ to $_6C^{12}$ in any ancient organism, say tree one can estimate the real date and time when the organism was died ?

Nuclear sizes and shapes : The Rutherford α -particle scattering experiment established that the mass of an atom is concentrated within a small positively-charged region at the centre which is called *nucleus* of the atom. Since during Rutherford's time many scattering experiments, using highly energetic electrons and neutrons as the scattering particles, have been

performed to determine the size of the nucleus. An electron interacts with a nucleus only through the electrical forces, while a neutron interacts only through the nuclear forces. Thus, the electron scattering tells us about the distribution of the charge in a nucleus and neutron scattering tells us about the distribution of the nuclear mass. These experiments have shown that the volume of a nucleus is directly proportional to the number of nucleons present in it, which is its mass number A .

If the nuclear radius of any nucleus be R then the volume will be $4/3\pi R^3$ and so R^3 will be proportional to A .

$$\text{Thus, } R = R_0 A^{1/3}.$$

The value of the constant R_0 is experimentally found which is given by $R_0 = 1.2 \times 10^{-15} \text{ m}$

Here, the length 10^{-15} m is described as 1 femtometer (fm) or 1 fermi.

So $R = R_0 A^{1/3} = 1.2 A^{1/3} \text{ fm}$, for the all nuclear radii. The radius varies from nucleus to nucleus but their order is of 10^{-15} meter or 1 fm. For most purposes atomic nuclei are assumed to be spherical.

Packing fraction : The masses of the all atomic isotopes are very close to the whole numbers, but not exactly the whole numbers. The difference between the actual atomic mass M of an isotope and its mass number is defined as the packing fraction P of the isotope.

$$\text{Thus, } P = \frac{M - A}{A}$$

The packing fraction is positive for the isotopes of very low and very high mass numbers and negative for the rest. It is zero for ${}^6\text{C}^{12}$.

Mass defect and Binding energy : The masses of all the stable nuclei are less than the sum of the masses of their constituent particles (protons and neutrons) in the free state. This means that when the protons and neutrons combine to form a nucleus, a loss of mass results. The missing mass is released in the form of energy when the nucleus is formed.

If Δm be the missing mass in the formation of a nucleus, the energy released ΔE will be given by Einstein's mass energy equivalent relation;

$$\Delta E = \Delta m c^2.$$

where, c is the speed of light.

The missing mass (Δm) is called the mass defect and its energy equivalent (ΔE) is called binding energy of the nucleus. Here ΔE would be the actual energy that must be supplied to the nucleus to break into its constituent particles. More binding energy means the energy required to break the nucleus is larger. Thus binding energy is a measuring parameter of the stability of the nucleus.

Practical units for mass energy equivalence : In nuclear physics, the mass of the fundamental (elementary) particles is generally expressed in terms of unified mass unit (u), defined as one twelfth ($1/12$ th) of the mass of the normal carbon atom (${}^6\text{C}^{12}$).

$$\text{Also } 1 u = 1.67 \times 10^{-27} \text{ kg.}$$

The energy of an electron on-volt is the potential difference of one volt.

Also, $1 \text{ eV} = 1.6 \times 10^{-19} \text{ joule}$.

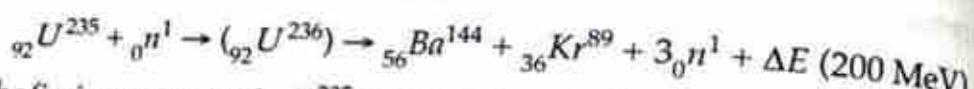
The equivalent energy for 1 unified mass unit is expressed as

$$1 \text{ u} = 931 \text{ MeV} = 931.5 \text{ MeV. (exactly)}$$

Nuclear fission : In 1939 two German scientists Otto Hahn and Fritz Strassman discovered a new type of nuclear reaction. They found that when any uranium nucleus ($_{92}U^{235}$) is bombarded with a neutron then, the nucleus splits up into almost equal fragments with the release of some free neutrons and tremendous amount of energy (about 200 MeV) per $_{92}U^{235}$ nuclei. Such a nuclear reaction is called nuclear fission.

Thus, the process in which a heavy nucleus splits up into the two nuclei of nearly comparable masses with a tremendous release of energy and some free neutrons is called nuclear fission.

One of the typical fission reaction is—



In the fission process of $_{92}U^{235}$ slow neutrons take part and their products are not always barium and krypton, so many possible pairs of the fragments occur. The average number of neutrons which are released in the uranium fission is 2.5.

Nuclear chain reaction : As 2.5 neutrons are produced per fission through each uranium atom and these neutrons produced in the nuclear fission under the favourable condition cause further atoms of uranium to undergo fission and in turn emit more neutrons which will cause further fission explosion. Thus, a chain reaction is established in a short span of time releasing an enormous amount of energy. One gram of $_{92}U^{235}$ on fission releases nearly 2×10^7 kilo calorie of energy.

The ratio of the rate of production of neutrons to the rate of their disappearance is called the reproduction factor (k). If k is less than 1, the chain reaction will not be sustained, at $k=1$, the reaction will just be sustained and if k is greater than 1, the reaction will sustain.

Types of nuclear fission : The fission chain reaction is of two types namely;

(a) **Controlled chain reaction :** A fission chain reaction which proceeds slowly and in balanced manner without any explosion and in which the energy released can be controlled is called controlled chain reaction.

Nuclear reactors operate on this principle, which are the main sources of the nuclear power and in which controlled nuclear chain reaction takes place. In a nuclear reactor the energy released through the fission is used to generate electricity. Several nuclear power plants for the generation of electricity are operating in India and in various countries of the world.

Basic components of the nuclear reactor :

(i) **Nuclear fuel :** The elements undergoing fission in a reactor are called nuclear fuel. Some common fuels are uranium isotopes U^{233} , U^{235} , thorium isotope Th^{232} and plutonium isotope Pu^{239} .

(ii) **Moderator :** Moderators are used to slow down the emitted neutrons which have a high velocity range. Some common moderators are graphite, heavy water, beryllium, beryllium oxide and some organic liquids. Slowing down of neutrons is also called thermalisation of the neutrons. Heavy water (D_2O) is one of the best moderator.

(iii) **Coolant :** A coolant removes the tremendous amount of heat developed inside the reactor core. Through a heat exchanger, the coolant transfers heat to the secondary thermal system of the reactor. Water, steam, helium, CO_2 , air, molten metals etc. are used as coolants.

(iv) **Control rods :** The control rods are used in initiating and stopping the nuclear fission reactions of the nuclear reactor. Due to large absorption cross-section area, cadmium and boron rods are used as control rods. When control rods are inserted in the reactor unit, they absorb the fast moving neutrons and the chain reaction ceases.

(v) **Radiation protective arrangement :** In a nuclear reactor large amount of penetrating radiations like γ -rays in addition to the neutrons are also generated. These radiations pose a danger to the technicians working around the reactor. Hence a reactor is always surrounded by a thick shield in the form of concrete wall many meters thick (lined with lead) to absorb these radiations and prevent them from the leakage to the adjacent areas.

Types of fission reactors :

(i) **Homogeneous and Heterogeneous reactors :** Basically both are fission reactors but in homogeneous type, fuel and moderator are mixed to form a mixture, while in heterogeneous type fuel and moderator are separately carried out in the steel tubes.

(ii) **Fast breeder reactors :** A nuclear reactor that breeds (produces) more fissile material than it consumes is called breeder reactor. These reactors are much more economical than other type of reactors as they consume raw fuel like Th^{232} and U^{238} . Th^{232} is not fissionable but through a fast breeder reactor it is converted to U^{233} which is a very good nuclear fuel. Similarly U^{238} is converted to Pu^{239} (Plutonium) which is very useful fissionable material. Owing to a very high temperature about $9000^{\circ}C$ in the core, a molten metal is used as coolant.

(b) **Uncontrolled or Explosive chain reaction :** A nuclear chain reaction in which fission neutrons keep on increasing until the whole of the fissionable material is consumed is known as explosive or uncontrolled chain reaction.

Such a reaction proceeds very quickly with the liberation of huge amount of energy in a short time. An atom bomb works on this principle and it is a practical example of the uncontrolled/explosive fission.

electron-volt (eV),
through a potential

ssed as

Fahn and Fritz
und that when
en, the nucleus
free neutrons
nuclei. Such

ie two nuclei
sy and some

00 MeV)

r products
fragments
uranium

r fission
nuclear
rium to
further
span of
fission

f their
1, the
ained

types

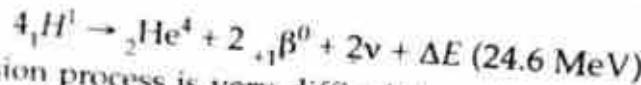
needs
the

rces
kes
sed
of

Nuclear Fusion : When two or more light nuclei moving with high speeds are fused together to form a single nucleus, then this process is called nuclear fusion. The mass of the product nucleus is less than the sum of the masses of the nuclei which are fused. The lost mass is converted into energy which is released in the form of fusion energy.

The energy output in a fusion reaction is 24.6 MeV which is less than energy released in the fission of a U^{235} nucleus which is about 200 MeV. But this doesn't mean that the fusion is a weaker energy source than the fission. The number of neutrons (reactants of the fusion reaction) in 1 g of heavy hydrogen is much larger than the number of U^{235} nuclei in 1 g of uranium. Thus, the energy output per unit mass of the material consumed is much more in the case of fusion of the light nuclei than in the case of the fission of heavy nuclei.

The process responsible for the solar energy is the fusion of light nuclei and here four hydrogen nuclei fuse together directly to form a helium nucleus.



The fusion process is very difficult to carry out, as the nuclei to be fused are positively charged, so they will repel one another strongly. Hence they must be brought very close together not only by the high pressure but also with high kinetic energies of about 0.1 MeV and for it a temperature of the order of 10^8 kelvin is required. Such high temperatures are available on the sun and stars. On earth fusion may be produced by exploding a nuclear fission bomb. Thus, a very high temperature is needed for the fusion of nuclei, the process is called a thermo nuclear reaction and the corresponding energy as *thermo nuclear energy*. Also at the temperature of 10^8 K fusion materials (hydrogen, deuteron, tritium etc) become ionised and the electrons are stripped and alongwith the nuclei, these materials behave like an ionised gas which is called *plasma* (fourth state of matter).

Plasma confinement and control fusion: There is no material container which can accumulate plasma within itself, but if an alternating magnetic field of a very large magnitude generated by mega ampere current and if a torus-shaped machine is used, then plasma can be confined. The torus-shaped machine, developed firstly by former USSR is called tokamak. Such alternating magnetic field repels the plasma from the side and compels it to remain confined to the centre of the container (vessel).

By such methodology and some other alternative ways, the path of development towards the formation of nuclear fusion reactors was searched. The nuclear fuel of the fusion reactors is heavy water (D_2O) which is found abundantly in the oceans or seas. Thus, the acute power crisis could be easily sorted out if the fusion reactors become operative. The research and development activities are going on in this regard and a prototype of nuclear fusion reactor has perhaps been designed and fabricated by France but it is yet to be confirmed.

Uncontrolled/Explosive fusion: Hydrogen bomb works on the principle of nuclear fusion and it is approximately 1000 times more powerful than

atom bomb (fission bomb). The essential conditions for the operation of a hydrogen bomb or the start of nuclear fusion, an extremely high temperature and pressure is required. Thus for the achievement of the essential conditions the functioning of a hydrogen bomb, an atom bomb (fission bomb) is used as a primer. The hydrogen bomb has no limitation like atom bomb and it will never explode unless it is ignited as uncontrolled nuclear fission.

Fusion is the source of stellar energy (i.e. the energy released by the sun and stars). The temperature of the sun's core is very high and fusion occurs by fusing the four hydrogen nuclei into helium. Although there are two different processes by which reactions occur in the stellar condition-a proton-proton cycle and a carbon-nitrogen cycle. But the energy released in both the cases comes out to be the same (about 24.6 MeV).

The sun is radiating energy at the rate of 10^{26} J sec.⁻¹. Thus, the loss of matter occurrence from the sun is 4×10^6 tonnes per second. But the sun has a very large mass (10^{30} kg) which will continue for several billion years.

Fluorescence : There are various types of substances occurring in our nature and on a few of them if a ultraviolet light of smaller wavelength but larger frequency incidents, then it is absorbed by them and emit a light of longer wavelength (shorter frequency) this incident or phenomenon is called fluorescence and the corresponding substances are called fluorescent substances.

The examples of fluorescent substances are fluorspar, petrol, quinine sulphate, uranium oxide etc. To detect X-rays we use barium platino cyanide which is a sensitive fluorescent substance on passing X-rays, through which it absorbs the X-rays and emits green light. Today in tube-light, the inner coating of fluorescent substances are laminated to get a fascinating and decorative flavour of the light.

Phosphorescence : As from the basic characteristic of fluorescence, substances which emit light until they are in absorbing position of suitable light of lower wavelength. But there are also some substances which not only emit the incident light at glance but is also remain emitting for some more long time, even while its incidence is stopped. This is called phosphorescence and the corresponding substances are called phosphorescent substances. On heating, the ability and quality of the phosphorescent substance is completely destroyed.

The examples of the phosphorescent substances are zinc sulphide, calcium sulphide, barium sulphide etc. Today in the needle of watches and in various hoarding boards employed for the advertising and marketing purposes the lamination of the phosphorescent substances are used. These needles and hoarding boards absorb sunlight in the day and shine in very glazy and fascinating way in the night.

Superconductivity : The phenomenon of superconductivity was firstly invented in 1911 by a Dutch physicist K. Onnes. He experimentally observed that the electrical resistance of some metals, alloys and compounds drops suddenly to zero when the specimen is cooled down below a certain

temperature called transition temperature (T_c). This phenomenon is called superconductivity and the specimen cooled down is called Superconductor. He also observed that resistance of the mercury vanishes completely at 4.2K. The critical (transition) temperature (T_c) below which a material undergoes a transition from a state of normal conductivity to a superconductivity is different for different materials. The normal good conductors like Cu, Ag, Au, Li, Na, K etc. do not exhibit the phenomenon of superconductivity even at more and more lower temperature. Thus, these are called normal metals. This implies that in general not all materials are superconducting.

Since the superconducting state of a material is characterised by the zero electrical resistance even in the absence of an applied voltage and the current can persist for years without any detectable decay. A bulk superconductor in a weak magnetic field acts like a perfect diamagnet with zero magnetic field into the interior. If a super conducting material is kept in a magnetic field and then cooled down below its critical (transition) temperature (T_c), it expels all the originally present magnetic flux from its interior and it is called *Meissner effect*. In fact this phenomenon was observed by W. Meissner and R. Ochsenfeld in 1933.

Also scientists from all over the world have been trying to develop the new materials that are superconducting at high temperatures. A breakthrough in this regard came into existence when a hot superconductor was obtained in 1986. When Karl Alex Muller of IBM'S Zurich Lab made a substance of metallic oxide of lanthanum-barium-copper called ceramics that lost its electrical resistance at 30K and it was called a hot superconductor. In 1987 the value of transition temperature (T_c) raised up to about 90K when Paul Chu and his team discovered a ceramic copper-oxide superconductor, called cuprate consisting of Yttrium, barium and copper oxide.

Applications

(i) Large scale application of superconductor are in the transmission of power. The cables made from superconductors can save 30 to 40 percent power which is lost in the conventional system of transmission. The solenoid of a superconductor can trap a large amount of electrical energy endlessly within itself.

(ii) Extremely sophisticated electronic devices such as Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI) scanners, superconducting Quantum Interference Devices (SQUIDs) etc. are today utilised frequently.

Theory of relativity

Michelson-Morley Experiment : According to the wave theory of light a light source sets up a disturbance transporting in all directions through a hypothetical medium called *ether* which fills up all the space and penetrates inside all the matter. But the assumption of ether created a problem. Does ether remain stationary in space when material bodies (including earth) move in it or is it dragged alongwith the moving bodies? But the observation of the aberration of light from the stars had indicated that the ether must be stationary in space, there is a relative motion between the body and the ether. A number of experiments were performed to detect a relative motion between the earth and the ether, Michelson-Morely experiment is one of

them. Michelson-Morely by their experiment observed that the motion of the earth through ether is meaningless and it (ether) could not be experimentally detected.

Einstein's Special theory of relativity : In 1905 Einstein propounded his special theory of relativity which is explained as below—

(i) The laws of Physics have the same form in all the inertial frames moving with a constant velocity relative to one another. This is called principle of relativity. This postulate also confirms the absence of any concept of the universal reference frame.

(ii) The speed of light in free space is the same in all the inertial frames of reference. This is called principle of constancy of the speed of light. This postulate follows directly from the result of Michelson-Morely experiment.

An Inertial frame of reference : Any space-time rectangular coordinate system in which a body totally finds itself in rest anywhere is called an inertial frame of reference. The Newton's laws of motion are defined in this frame.

But if a body is not to be found to remain in the rest position or be in motion, then the frame of reference is called non-inertial. In non-inertial frame Newton's laws of motion are not defined and applicable.

VII. Electronics

The area of electronics has become very extensive in which broad and various electronic devices are frequently operative and through it agriculture, communication, medical sciences, defence, industry, space research, engineering, education etc are extensively studied. During the early time under the electronics vacuum tube diodes and triodes were used and that's why the equipments earlier than the nineteenth century like larger radiogrammes etc. were noisy and inconvenient. Afterwards these vacuum tubes were replaced and discarded by the semi conductors and transistors and now solid state electronic devices have been fabricated and designed which are compact, cheapest, convenient and efficient. Now apart from these solid state electronic devices, Integrated circuits are utilised as microchips in the microprocessors and computers and are studied in the digital electronics segment.

Thermionic emission : Whenever a metallic wire or filament is heated strongly in vacuum then electrons start to emit and these electrons are called thermions, while the phenomenon of electron emission is called thermionic emission. The phenomenon of thermionic emission was firstly invented by Thomas Alva Edison in 1884. The vacuum tube diodes, triodes, pentode etc. had been fabricated on the principle of thermionic emission. The electrons are also obtained by thermionic emission in the x-rays tube and cathode rays tube.

Diode valve : In 1904 Fleming fabricated a device in which two electrodes—a cathode and an anode were inserted in a cylindrical glass valve which was fully evacuated. Here anode acts like a plate, while cathode acts like a filament and both are kept separate and attached through a pin. In this valve filament is made from metallic wire and on heating the plate (made

which encloses cathode (filament). If a positive potential is supplied to the plate, the emitted electrons from the filament start to attract and accumulate around the cathode. The space around which electrons accumulate is called space charge region. Thus, when a +ve potential is supplied to the plate then electrons move towards the plate and a circuit is completed between the plate and filament and a current flows from the plate to filament. This is called plate current.

Diode valves are used as rectifier through which an alternating current (a.c.) is converted into a direct current (d.c.).

Triode valve : In 1907 Dr. Lee De Forest a USA based scientist fabricated a device which was similar to the diode valve alongwith which another element called control grid was attached. In other words, if in a diode valve an additional electrode is attached to control the thermionic emission in an evacuated (vacuum tube) tube it is called a triode valve. Thus there are three electrodes (plate, filament, grid) in a triode valve and this valve is utilised in the form of amplifier, oscillator, modulator, transmitter and detector.

Semi-conductor : A semi-conductor is a solid material whose electrical resistivity is higher than that of a conductor and lower than that of an insulator. Typical values of the resistivity of a semi-conductor lie between 10^{-12} to 1 ohm - meter at room temperature. The electrical resistance of a semi-conductor decreases with increase in temperature over a particular temperature - range which is the specific characteristic of a semi-conductor. The relation between the resistance R and absolute temperature T for a semi-conductor is given by

$$R = Ae^{\frac{B}{T}}$$

where the A, B are constants

Thus a semi-conductor has a negative temperature coefficient and this behaviour is contrary to that of a metallic conductor for which resistance increases with the rise of temperature. At ordinary temperature the pure semi-conductor has very small conductivity and this semi-conductor is called intrinsic semi-conductor. At 0 K all the semi-conductors are in pure form and behave like insulators. But the electrical conductivity of a semiconductor can be increased by a large value by addition of a small amount of suitable impurity called doping. Usually if 1 atom of an impurity is dopped to a pure (intrinsic) semi-conductor of 10^6 atoms, its conductivity increases 16 times and this semi-conductor is called impure or extrinsic semi-conductor.

Broadly there are three elements, silicon (Si) Germanium (Ge) and grey tin (Sn) in their crystalline form which are extensively used as semi-conductors. But Ge and Si are the most widely used semi-conductors in the fabrication of the solid state electronic devices. There are also numerous semi-conductor compounds like GaAs, PbSe, ternary alloys etc.

Extrinsic semi-conductor : As from earlier discussion a pure semi-conductor is a poor conductor of electricity and that's why it is made impure to increase the electrical conductivity by doping impurity. This impure semi-conductor is called an extrinsic semi-conductor. But the doping of the impurity also depends on the types of impurity.

Thus there are two types of extrinsic semi-conductors depending upon the nature of the impurity mixed up.

(i) ***n*-type semi-conductor** : If a pentavalent element (impurity) like phosphorous, arsenic, antimony etc. is dopped or mixed in Ge and Si, then five valence electrons of the pentavalent impurity form a covalent bond and one electron becomes mobile due to which it (electron) acquires a certain energy in excitation form. Thus electron becomes free and it goes to the conduction band from the valance band. Such semi-conductors are called *n*-type and electrons are called majority charge carriers and since surplus electrons are supplied by the impurity (pentavalent) so impurity is called donor impurity. Also due to the release of electrons from the valance band a vacancy is created and it is filled by the another electrons and thus a hole (positive charge carrier) is created which is also respondent for the conductivity. These holes are called minority charge carriers for *n*-type semi-conductor. But over all, *n*-type semi-conductor is a neutral crystal.

(ii) ***p*-type semi-conductor** : If a trivalent element (impurity) like indium boron, gallium or aluminium etc. is dopped or mixed in Ge and Si, then three valance electrons of the trivalent impurity form a covalent bond and from anywhere of Ge and Si an electron becomes available for the trivalent atom and thus four covalent bonds form. But due to an electron availability for the trivalent atom any covalent bond of Ge or Si breaks and a vacancy is created as a hole (positive ion). Due to large holes creation and its conduction these conductors are called *p*-type semi-conductor. Since electrons are accepted by the trivalent impurity and mainly conductivity is done by the holes, that's why such impurity is called acceptor impurity and holes are majority charge carriers for *p*-type semi-conductors. Also some electrons become available and are respondent for a few conduction is called minority charge carrier but over all *p*-type crystal (semi-conductor) is also neutral.

***pn*-junction or semi-conductor diode** : Pure or impure semi-conductors are bilateral electronic equipment through which the current flows in either direction with equal magnitude. Although if in a semi-conductor there exists a *p*-type region on one side and a *n*-type region on the another side then the semi-conductor becomes unilateral and the current flows easily in only one direction. The specific location in the semiconductor where the region changes from *p*-type to *n*-type (the lattice structure remaining continuous) is called a *pn*-junction. The semi-conductor containing a *pn*-junction is called semiconductor diode.

A *pn*-junction is not the interface between the two pieces of the semi-conductor of the opposite types pressed together. It is a single piece of semi-conductor crystal having an excess of donor impurities into one side, and of acceptor impurities into the other. By four methods, *pn*-junctions are fabricated and designed which are growing, alloying, diffusing an ion implantation. The thickness of the *pn*-junction is of the order of 10^{-6} meter.

Forward biased and Reversed biased *pn*-junction :

If in a *pn*-junction, a *p*-type crystal is connected with the positive terminal of the battery and a *n*-type crystal is connected with the negative terminal of the battery, then it is said to be in forward biased position and

cylindrical form is supplied to the and accumulate imulate is called led to the plate completed between filament. This nating current

tist fabricated hich another diode valve nission in an ere are three e is utilised detector.

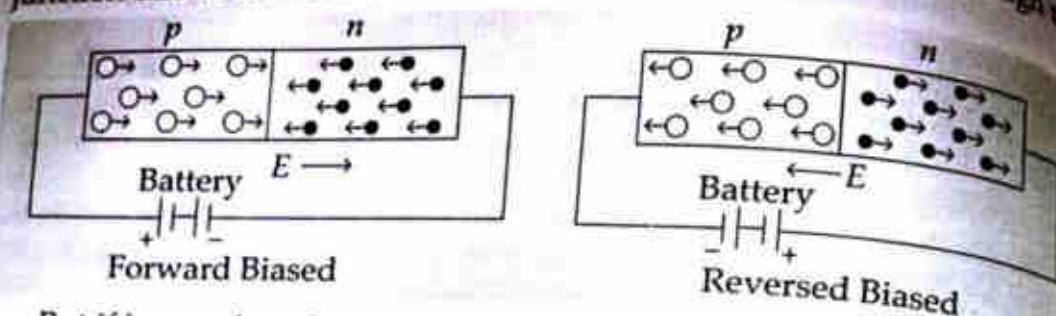
se electrical that of an e between stance of a particular onductor or a semi-

ants
and this
sistance
ne pure
ductor
are in
ty of a
small
purity
tivity
trinsic

and
emi-
the
ous

mi-
ure
are
be

at this position a current flows laterally through the junction due to the creation of an external field E .



But if in a pn -junction a p -type crystal is connected (attached) with the negative terminal of the battery and a n -type crystal is connected (attached) with the positive terminal of the battery, then it is said to be in the reversed biased position and at this position only very small amount of current flows due to the minority charge carriers through the junction.

Applications of pn -junction :

(i) **As a rectifier :** In the absence of any external voltage applied across a pn -junction, there is no current in the diode. Under this condition a few majority charge-carriers (holes in p -region and electrons in n -region) have sufficient energy to move across the junction despite the opposing internal field and form a forward current. This current is however exactly balanced by the reverse current formed by the flow of minority carriers (electron in p -region and holes in n -region) across the junction which is supported by the internal field. The net current is thus zero, this is the action of a rectification. Thereby pn -junction acts like a rectifier in which an alternating current (a.c.) is converted into a direct current (d.c.).

(ii) **As a Zener diode :** When pn -junction is in a reverse biased condition then it acts like a zener diode for a long voltage range and it is used as a voltage stabiliser.

(iii) **As a Tunnel diode :** A tunnel diode is a semi-conductor device (pn -junction diode) which makes use of the quantum mechanical phenomenon of the potential barrier penetration. It is a pn -junction which is made from a heavily doped semi-conductor.

(iv) **As a Photo conductor :** A photo conductor is a device that detects optical signals. A commercial photo conductor is called a photo conductive cell and has a layer of cadmium sulphide (CdS) containing a small amount of bismuth or indium impurity on its sensitive surface. When a light falls on the surface of the photo conductor, the current in the circuit increases depending upon the intensity of the incident light.

Photo conductive devices or cells are used in industry, photography and light-intensity measurement. The most commonly used cell is the cadmium sulphide (CdS) photo conductive cell which is excellently sensitive in the visible range. A lead sulphide (PbS) or indium antimony ($In Sb$) cell is used for the infrared detection. A selenium cell is particularly sensitive in the blue region. PN -photo diode is a junction type photo conductor having several advantages over an ordinary bulk-type photo conductive cell.

(v) **As a Solar cell :** A solar cell is a semi-conductor device (pn -junction) which converts the solar energy directly into the electrical energy and it is based upon the phenomenon of photo voltaic effect. The commercial solar

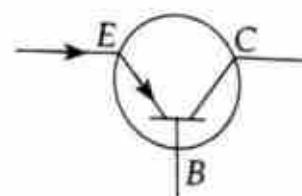
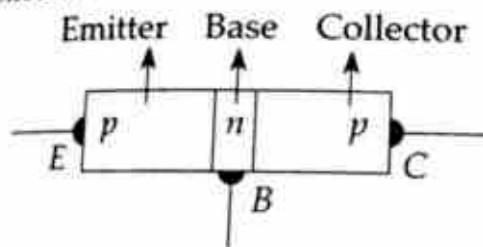
cells are ... and it is used in space vehicles where a small mass of the solar batteries is needed or inaccessible places on the earth where automatic equipments/devices are kept non-stopped operating.

Junction Transistor or Bipolar Transistor : A junction transistor is a semi-conductor device consisting of two *pn*-junctions placed back to back, one under a forward bias and another under a reverse bias. A forward-biased *pn*-junction offers a low resistance, while a reverse-biased offers a high resistance. Also in junction transistor both majority and minority carriers play a significant role and that's why it is also called bipolar transistor and it is a solid state electronic control device.

Such point contact transistor was firstly invented by John Bardeen and Walter Brattain in 1948. But these transistors were found to have the problem in their fabrication. Also these were found to be electrically noisy and lacked a larger power gain. Thus, a modified and comprehensive approach was taken for its commercial fabrication and design by William Shockley in 1951. Thus, on the commercial level the real inventor of the bipolar junction transistor was William Shockley. At present some more modified techniques of its fabrication and designing have been developed and these techniques are zone refining, diffusion, epitaxial, planar, beam-lead, ion implantation etc.

The junction transistor is of two types—*pnp* transistor and *npn* transistor.

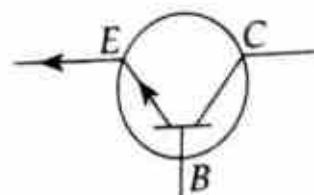
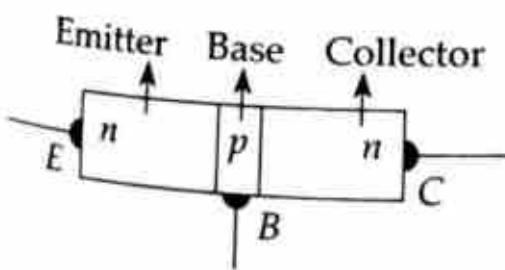
***pnp* transistor :** It consists of a very thin slice of *n*-type semi-conductor sandwiched between two small blocks of *p*-type semi-conductor. The central slice is called base, while the left and right blocks are called emitter and collector.



pnp transistor (symbol)

The emitter is given a positive potential, while the collector is given a negative potential with respect to base. Thus the emitter-base (*p-n*) junction is under forward-bias (low resistance), while the base-collector (*n-p*) junction is under reverse-bias (high resistance).

***npn* transistor :** It consists of a thin slice of *p*-type semi-conductor sandwiched between two small blocks of *n*-type. In this transistor the emitter is given a negative potential, while the collector is given a positive potential with respect to the base. Again the emitter-base (*n-p*) junction is under forward bias, while the base-collector (*p-n*) junction is under reverse-bias.



npn transistor (symbol)

In working position for every bipolar junction transistor pnp or npn
Emitter current (I_e) = Base current (I_b) + collector current (I_c).

There are three modes of configuration for the working of a junction
transistor as given below :

- (a) Common base configuration.
- (b) Common emitter configuration.
- (c) Common collector configuration.

Unipolar transistor or Field Effect Transistor (FET) : A Field Effect Transistor (FET) is a semi-conductor electronic device in which the current is controlled by the variation of an electric field and is carried out by the majority charge carriers only. Like a vacuum tube, the FET is a unipolar (one type of carrier) device. There are two types of field effect transistors—Junction Field Effect transistor (JFET) and Metal-Oxide-Semi-conductor Field Effect Transistor (MOSFET). There are two classes of JFETs— n -channel JFET like a thermionic tube (triode valve), FET is a voltage-controlled device, while the conventional transistor uses a base current to control the large collector-current. That's why bipolar junction transistor is a current-controlled device. Also FET is less noisy than a bipolar transistor so it is frequently used in FM (Frequency Modulated) radio. FETs have smaller size and longer life. Hence, a large number of them are incorporated today in the Integrated Circuits (IC), while bipolars are cheaper and offer a larger range of choice which are used in the discrete circuits (digital electronics).

Application of transistors : Almost all the solid state electronic control devices are made from the bipolar or unipolar junction transistors. Some electronic devices which use junction transistors directly are power amplifiers, voltage amplifiers, oscillators, modulators etc.

Also some FETs are specially used as switches in the digital circuits, as a phase-shifter in the oscillator circuit and as a Voltage Variable Resistor (VVR) which is used in an attenuator circuit, an automatic gain control circuit etc.

Modern electronic devices

(i) **Cathode Ray Oscilloscope (CRO)** : Cathode Ray Oscilloscope (CRO) is one of the most widely used device having a large number of applications. A cathode ray oscilloscope consists of the following main components—cathode ray tube, horizontal and vertical voltage amplifiers, power supply circuits etc.

Both the a.c. and d.c. voltage can be measured through a CRO and it is used in the television receiver and Radar. It is also used for radio servicing and to locate the faults in various electronic equipments. It is used also in the construction of electro cardiograph and in the industries to study the mechanical pressure and to get the indicator diagrams of the internal combustion engines. CRO is also used in measuring an extremely short interval of time even less than a micro second.

(ii) **Television** : Television was firstly invented in 1923 by John L. Baird through which both sound and light were transmitted in the form of an electromagnetic wave by the means of resonance from any suitable place. In other words pictures, scenes and photographs of moving objects

*pnp or npn
(I.)
of a junction*

the picture tube and by the means of an amplified modulation these are picturised on the television screen.

Broadly there are two parts in the television :—

(i) **Iconoscope** : Iconoscope transforms the scattered light wave of the picture of any object into an electromagnetic wave which is transmitted to the far flung distances and places by an amplified modulation mechanism.

(ii) **Kineoscope** : It is a type of Cathode Ray Oscilloscope (CRO) through which cathode ray adjusts the tuning similar to the iconoscope and produces a resonance with an amplified, modulated electromagnetic wave. Consequently fascinating, fluorescent pictures and scenes due to the persistence of the vision appear.

(iii) **RADAR (Radio Detection and Ranging)** : The Radar was firstly invented by Robert Watson but its first prototype was designed by the two American scientists Taylor and Young. It is a device through which the actual location (position) and the configuration of the unwanted bodies are detected and measured by the electromagnetic wave of the flying aircraft at higher altitudes.

The radars are also used to detect and measure the position (or location) and distance (or height) of the cloud, to explore the evidence of any metal or oil reserve, to detect the outer layer of the atmosphere and to obtain the height of ionosphere etc.

(iv) **LASER (Light Amplification by Stimulated Emission of Radiation)** : Laser is a device that produces an intense, coherent and highly directional beam of the single frequency. It can be transmitted over a great distance without being spread. The light beam can be intense enough to vaporise the hardest and the most heat resistant materials. The first ruby laser was demonstrated by Theodore H. Maiman in 1960. Any laser device consists of three main components—an active medium, a pumping source and an optical resonator. All lasers work on a basic principle that whenever electricity, heat, light or chemical reaction excites an atom it accommodates the extra energy by rearranging its electrons, shifting some of them from the ground energy level to higher energy levels. This excited state of electron is unstable and to become stable the electron falls back to its ground state emitting extra energy in the form of light. This kind of emission is called stimulated emission. The important kinds of lasers include optically pumped lasers, liquid lasers, gas discharge lasers, semiconductor lasers etc. Laser works up to femto (10^{-15}) second, while super fast computer works only up to nano (10^{-9}) second.

Applications of Laser :

(i) **In Information Technology (IT)** : Laser is frequently used in the fabrication and composition of CD (Compact Disc), DVD (Digital Versatile Disc) and in the collection of data and its storage in CD.

(ii) **To measure time and distance** : By the help of laser both distance and time can be measured most accurately and precisely. Also through it not only the longest distance is to be measured accurately but also the smallest distances, even interatomic distances, are measured in the most

excellent and accurate form. That's why by the laser interatomic distances and so internal structure of the atoms are authentically studied.

(iii) **To construct hologram :** With the help of laser a special type of three dimensional photograph is drawn in the hologram form.

Holography : Dennis Gobar firstly invented a three dimensional photograph (complete view of an object) which is not possible through any camera lens system by the means of a highly coherent light. Thus, the complete resemblance of an object in a very distinct manner is sketched and in which the originality of the object appears is called holography. In holography we do not record the object (being photographed) but record the light waves reflected from the object. This photographic record is called a *hologram*. The hologram has no resemblance with the object, although it contains all the informations about it in the form of an optical code. When this hologram is illuminated by a source of coherent light a three dimensional photograph of the object is formed. Thus, in holography we do not use any lens (or camera) and obtain a perfect (excellent) and original touch of the object in its photograph. This photography technique was firstly utilised in 1962 by Y.N. Denisluk after the invention of laser in 1960.

(iv) **To sketch the path (trajectory) of flight :** For the security point of view the accurate path of the aircrafts and aeroplanes are sketched through a powerful laser which is very convenient for the air traffic control and comfortable journey. Also rockets and satellites follow this technique for their smooth and perfect destinations in the space.

(v) **In Industry :** In the industrial sector lasers are mainly used in surveying, to facilitate data network, the processing of objects or commodities, to examine non-decomposed substances etc. Today lasers are also utilised frequently in cutting an extremely hard object, cloth, in the construction of buildings, metallic pipes, in the exploration of mines, in the furnishing of diamonds and gems jewellery. By the means of a special laser cutting technique the diamond's look has been made more fascinating and stylish.

(vi) **In defence :** The lasers are used to measure the accurate position and distance of the missiles and other sophisticated weapons. Under the *star war programmes*, the destructive power of the laser is being utilised to destroy missiles in the sky.

(vii) **In chemistry :** In chemistry lasers are used as remedial equipment and in the chemical reactions lasers are used as a catalyst or an autolyst.

(viii) **In health and medical science :** Today lasers are playing a significant and relevant role specially in the incurable and undiagnosed diseases. Through the laser today cancer has become curable, the barrier produced in the blood clotting in the veins of heart is being sorted out, and many surgical operations in human eye are being completed without any complicity and problem in perfect way. Specially in the treatment of eye a modern technique which is called *Eximer Lassic Laser*, through it the human eye glass can be permanently discarded (abandoned). Argon or krypton ion lasers are also frequently used in the treatment of the retina of the eye and some other problems of the human eyes. The *laser radial keratotomy techniques* are used to adjust the abnormal shape of the eye

lens. Through the laser and *optical fibre endoscope* the blood clotted ulcers have easily become curable in a very convenient and simple way. By laproscopic treatment the stones of gall bladder and kidney are removed without any rigorous surgical work in a very short interval of time.

MASER (Microwave Amplification by Stimulated Emission of Radiation): The maser was invented by three American scientists Gordon, Gieger and H. Townes in 1952 and it is similar to the laser upto maximum extent. In fact maser is an optical device which uses microwave in amplified form of longer wavelength of the light, while ordinary laser uses light rays simply.

Through masers the actual position of the artificial satellites, fighter planes, unwanted missiles etc are detected by the help of the radar. In ocean water masers are today utilised to communicate some important messages and details needed. Also through the masers remedial measures are performed similar to the lasers.

Laser technology in India : In 1964 the first laser as Gallium Arsenide (GaA) semi-conductor laser was designed and fabricated by Bhabha Atomic Research Centre (BARC). The BARC is the largest centre for developing laser technology in a very exclusive way in India. The lasers developed so far are *He-Ne* laser, *He-Cd* laser, copper vapour laser, ruby laser etc. Some other centres where lasers are designed and fabricated are Centre for Advanced Technology (CAT), Defence Research and Development Organisation (DRDO), Indian Institute of science (IISc.) Bangalore, and Indian Institute of Technology (IIT) Kanpur. An exclusive centre for the laser research is IIT- Kanpur whose laboratories are too much enriched and where research works on the laser plasmas, quantum optics, ultrafast process, nonlinear optics etc are going on with the American Collaboration.

Miscellaneous

1. Important Physical quantities and their units

Physical quantity	Unit (S.I.)	Physical quantity	Unit (S.I.)
Length	Metre	Sp. heat capacity	Joule/kg-K.
Time	Second	Electric power	kilo Watt hour (kWh)
Volume	Cubic metre	Electric resistance	Ohm
Velocity	Metre/sec.	Electric potential	Volt
Force	Newton	Latent heat	Joule/K
Pressure	Pascal	Surface tension	Newton/metre
Energy	Joule	Moment of inertia	kg. m ²
Temperature	Kelvin	Electric charge	Coulomb
Mass	Kilogram	Electric capacity	Farad
Density	kg / m ³ .	Power	Joule/sec or watt
Heat	Joule	Viscosity	Newton-sec. metre ⁻²
Electric current	Ampere	Work	Newton-metre or Joule
Area	Sq. metre	Luminous Intensity	Lumen

Physical quantity	Unit (S.I.)	Physical quantity	Unit (S.I.)
Frequency	Hertz	Linear momentum	Newton-sec.
Wavelength	Metre	Magnetic flux	Weber, Maxwell
Speed	metre/sec.	Power of the lens	diopter
Acceleration	metre/sec. ² .	Angular velocity	rad/sec.
Plane angle	radian	Solid angle	Steradian
Intensity (in sound)	decibel	Luminous Intensity	Candela
Absolute temperature	Kelvin	Atmospheric pressure	Bar
Potential difference	Volt	Astronomical distance	Light year
Electric intensity	field Newton/ Coulomb	Supersonic motion	mach
Magnetic moment	dipole Ampere- metre	Acceleration due to gravity	metre/sec. ² ,
Magnetic field or Tesla, magnetic induction weber-per metre²			

2. Conversion Units

One inch	2.54 cm	one foot	0.30 meter
One yard	0.91 meter	one mile	1.60 km
One fadam	1.8 meter	one chain	20.11 meter
One nautical mile	1.85 km	one angstrom	10^{-10} meter
Square inch	6.45 square cm	Square foot	0.09 square meter
Square yard	0.83 square meter	one acre	$10^4 m^2$
Square mile	2.58 square km	one cube inch	16.38 cm ³
Cube foot	0.028 cube meter	one yard	0.76 m ³
One liter	1000 cm ³	one pint	0.56 liter
One grain	64.8 milli gram	one drum	1.77 g
One ounce	28 gm	one pound	0.45 kg
One erg	10^{-7} Joule	one poundal	0.13 Newton
One calorie	4.2 Joule	one horse power	746 watt
One Newton	10^5 dyne	one fadam	6 feet
One nautical mile	6080 feet	one mile	5280 feet
One mile	8 farlang	one yard	3 feet
One foot	12 inch	50°C	122°F
37°C	98.6°F	32°F	0°C
-40°C	-40°F		

Scientific devices/equipments

Devices/Equipments Use

Ammeter

Electrical devices employed to measure current in ampere.

Altimeter

The device that measures the altitudes of aircraft.

Audiometer

The device that measures the intensity of sound.

Audiophone

The device or equipment employed in the ears by which the process of listening becomes easy and appreciable.

Anemometer

The device through which the power and speed of wind are measured.

Avrometer

The device used to detect any fault in radio.

Ariometer

The device used to measure the weight and density of air and gases.

Accumulator

The device used to restore electrical energy.

Ascalator

Moving mechanical ladders.

Apicoiscope

The device/equipment used to display the opaque (in transparent) photo on the screen.

Aviontiometer

The device used to detect and measure the intensity of sunrays.

Adiometer

The equipment through which the distances travelled by the wheels of vehicles are measured.

Barometer

The device used to measure atmospheric pressure.

Barograph

The device used to measure atmospheric pressure and used to focus on autographics.

Bolometer

The device used to measure thermal radiations.

Binoculars

The device used for the magnification of objects.

Crescograph

The device through which the growth in plants is detected and measured.

Calorimeter

The device used to measure the amount of heat.

Cardiogram

The device used to measure the heart beats of human body.

Carburator

The equipment used in internal combustion heat engine, vehicle's engine etc.

Compass-box

The equipment used to detect the North-South direction of any place.

Cyclotron

The device used to accelerate positively charged particles, ions etc.

Cytotron

The device by which artificial climate is produced.

Callipers

The device through which the external and the internal diameters of the cylindrical objects are measured.

Cathode ray tube

The equipment through which electrons are emitted or ejected.

Coolidge tube

Modern X-ray tube (device) used for various purposes.

Devices/Equipments Use**Chronometer**

The equipment employed in ships/steamers to measure the right time.

Cardiograph

The equipment through which human's heart beat are recorded and detected through graphics.

Battery cell

The device used to flow direct current (dc) through the circuit.

Density meter

The device used for density measurement.

Dynamometer

The device through which the power generated by an engine is measured.

Dictaphone

The device used to record own statement to listen another.

Dynamo

The device used to convert mechanical energy into electrical energy.

Dip circle

The device used to measure the angle of dip.

Dialysis Machine

The device used in blood purification for the person suffering through cardio related problems.

Dialetometer

The device used to measure the change in volume.

Electroscope

The device that confirms the presence of electric charge.

Electro meter

The device used to measure the potential difference (pd).

Electric motor

The device used to convert electrical energy into mechanical energy.

Electron microscope

The equipment used to analyse the micro substance.

Epidayscope

The equipment employed to project or expose pictures on the screen.

Electroinsifile graph

The mechanical device used to measure the potential of the human mind.

Endoscope

The device through which inner parts of the human body is diagnosed.

Fethometer

The device used to measure the depth of seas and oceans.

Geiger Mullar counter

The device used to measure the radiation of a radioactive substance.

Gravometer

The device used to detect the presence of oil on water surface.

Gyroscope

The device used to obtain the speed and orientation of a moving object.

Galvanometer

The device used to measure the sharpness of electric current.

Gramophone

The device used to reproduce sound by sound wave.

Ganong respiratory

The device used to measure the respiration coefficient.

Hydrophone

The device used to measure the sound waves inside water.

Devices/Equipments	Use
Heart lungs machine	The device used in surgical operations of heart and lungs.
Hygrometer	The device used to measure atmospheric humidity.
Comograph	The equipment used to depict the motion of the heart beat in graphics way.
Calidoscope	The equipment used to detect various type of geometrical figures.
Lactometer	The device used to detect and measure the purification of milk.
Loudspeaker	The device used to enhance sharply the slow voice and loud voice is listened.
Lightening Conductor	The equipment employed and installed in multistoried buildings to protect the building from thundering lightening.
Megaphone	The device used to throw sound or voice remotely.
Microphone	The device used to transform sound energy into electrical energy.
Micrometer	The device used to obtain the $\frac{1}{1000}$ th part of a milimeter.
Microtom	The equipment through which any substance is cut into the very smaller pieces.
Manometer	The device used to measure the pressure of gases.
Machmeter	The device through which the speed of air is expressed as in the form of the speed of sound.
Oscilliograph	The device through which electro mechanical vibrations are depicted graphically.
Ondometer	The device through which the frequency of an electromagnetic wave is measured.
Phonograph	The equipment through which sound writing is composed.
Photometer	The device through which the illumination and intensity of two light sources are compared.
Phototelegraphic	The equipment through which any photograph is brought from one place to another.
Pyrometer	The device used to measure extremely high temperature (temperature of the sun, star)
Periscope	The device used for those objects which are beyond the purview of looking range but through it objects are made easily to be seen.
Phonometer	The device used to know the power of brightness of light.
Pipate	The thin tube shaped equipment which measures the fixed volume of liquids.
Parasuit	The equipment used to fall on the earth's surface from higher altitudes from aircrafts during an emergency.

Devices/Equipments	Use
Photometer	The device through which the rate of evaporation of water is measured.
Polygraph	The device through which the truth of a human being is examined.
Pacnometer	The device used to measure the density of liquids and coeff. of linear expansion.
Quadrant	The device used to measure the altitudes and angles in navigation and astronomical science.
Radiator	The device used to cool the engine of vehicles.
Radiometer	The device used to measure thermal radiations.
Rain Gauge	The device used to measure the amount of rain of a certain place in a specific time.
Radar	The device used to measure the speed and direction of far coming aircrafts and fighter planes.
Refractometer	The device used to obtain the refractive indices of the transparent media.
Radio Micrometer	The device used to measure the thermal radiations.
Safety lamp	The device used in mines to avoid mines related mishaps.
Sextant	The device used to measure altitude
Stroboscope	The device with which the speed of a body is measured which executes the periodic motion.
Submarine	The equipment (water ship) which detects marine activities inside the ocean or sea water.
Sifgmoscope	The device through which human pulse vibration is measured.
Sphygmomanometer	The device used to measure the blood pressure of the human body.
Secrometer	The device used to measure the concentration of sugar.
Speedometer	The device used to measure the speed of motor vehicles.
Scrue Gauge	The device used to measure the diameters of thin wires.
Stop-watch	The device used to record true and accurate time.
Seismograph	The device used to measure the intensity of the earthquake.
Stethoscope	The device used to listen to the vibrations of the heart and lungs.
Spectroscope	The device used to analyse the spectrum.
Sterioscope	The device used to sketch two dimensional photographs.
Spherometer	The device used to measure the curvature.
Sphygmophone	The device used to listen the fast pulse vibrations.
Tokometer	The device used to measure the speed of the aircraft.

Device/Equipment	Use
Transformer	The device used to regulate (high or low) AC voltage.
Telemeter	The device used to record flung physical incidents.
Teletypewriter	The device used for receiving telegraphic messages and auto print technique with itself.
Thermostat	The equipment used to regulate the static temperature.
Telex	The device used to do direct conversation between two countries.
Theodolight	The device used to measure the cross-sectional and rectangular angles.
Taximeter	The equipment that displays directly the fare of the passengers.
Thermopile	The device used to measure the intensity of the radiation.
Turbine	The device used to transform the kinetic energy of the fluid into rotational energy and then the mechanical work is done.
Tokiometer	The device used to measure distance, latitude specially during survey and this device is like Thiodolight.
Ultrasonoscope	The device used to detect tumour, and some problems of the heart.
Udometer	The device used to measure the amount of rainfall.
Viscometer	The equipment used to measure the viscosity of the liquids.
Vacuum-cleaner	The equipment used to remove the <u>dust particles</u> .
Videophone	The device used in which alongwith voice (sound) of telephone photo also appears.
Van-de-graph generator	The device through which high potential difference is produced.
Venturimeter	The device through which the speeds of <u>flow of liquid</u> are measured.
Wattmeter	The device used to measure electric power.
Wavemeter	The device through which the wavelength of the radiowave is measured.
Xylophone	The device of a new musical instrument.

4. Inventors related to devices/equipments

Device/Equipment	Inventors	Device/Equipment	Inventors
Television	J.L. Beared	Radio	Marconi
Barometer	Torricelle	Telegraph	Morse
Lens camera	Jeans	Aeroplane	Wright brothers
Tyre	Dunlop	Seftipin	Walter Hunt
Telescope	Hans Lippershey	Thermionic triode	Leco Duo Forest
Revolver	Colt	Thomas Flask	Dewar

Device/Equipment Inventors	Device/Equipment	Inventors
Military Tank	Rail engine	George Stefans
Dialysis Machine	Steam boat	Frank Wheetal
Electric Bulb	Arc lamp	Devi
Spectroscope	Lift	F.G. Otis
Transistor	Dynamo	Micheal Faraday
Fountain Pen	Radar	Robert Watson
Gyroscope	Submarine	Bushwel
Transformer	Bi-cycle	Macmillan
Tape Recorder	Seftirezor	Gillette
Crascograph	Parasuit	A.G. Gagreen
Steam Engine	Sextant	Compel
Motor Vehicle	Ball pen	John J. Bond
Gramophone	Electric fan	Wheelar
Vapour turbine	Machine gun	James Puckle
Telephone	Printing Machine	Kaekstan
Calculator	Refrigerator	Harison & Kaitlin
Holography	Petrol car	Karl Benz
Helicopter	Wireless Telegraphy	Marconi
Gas Engine	Sismometer	Robert Mallet
Cyclotron	Micrometer	William Gas Cogin
Power loom	Lightening conductor	Franklin
Diesel Engine	Thermionic diode	J.A. Fleming
Type Machine	E-Mail	ReTomlinshon
Scooter	Chronometer	John Harisson
Glider	Microscope	Janson & Janson
Jet engine	Printing technique	Gu tenberg
Nuclear furnace	Heart Lung machine	Denish Mailrose
Thermometer	Air conditioner	Wills Hevyl & Carriare
Air break	George Wasting house	Gieger Mullar Counter
Photometer	Adberd Charles Pikring	Gieger

5. Inventions in Physics/Inventors

Inventions	Inventors	Inventions	Inventors
Speed of light	Fizeou	Diode valve	J.A. Fleming
Mica sheet	C.R.T. Wilson	Triode valve	L.D. Forest
Electronic charge	Millikan	Dynamite	Alfred Nobel
Neutrino	Pauli	Laser rays	T.H. Memon
Safety lamp	H. Devi	Photon	Einstein

Inventions		Inventions	Inventors
Radioactivity	H. Becquarel	Induction coil	Roamcorf
Law of pressure	Pascal	Law of Gravitation	Newton
Superconductivity	K. Onnes	Law of cooling	Newton
Corpuscular theory of light	Newton	Newton's laws of motion	of Newton
Law of refraction of light	Snell	Artificial disintegration of atom	Fermi
Principle of relativity	Einstein	Principle of Floatation	Archemedes
Thermal effect of electric current	Joule	Nuclear fission	Ottohaan and Strassman
Speed of light in liquid	Foucalt	Interference of light	Thomas Young
Current electricity, Electric battery	Alexander Volta	Electric charge	Benzamine Franklin
Static electricity	Thels	Maser rays	Gorden, Geeger
Modern X-ray tube	Coolidge	Wave theory of light	Hygens
Law of electric resistance	Ohm	Law of electric attraction	Coulomb
Electromagnetic wave	Henric Hertz	Logrithm	Briggs, J. Nappier
Thermionic emission	Thomas Alva Edison	Mechanical equivalent of heat	Joule

6. Eminent Physicist and their outstanding contributions

Physicists	Countries	Outstanding Contributions
A. Fermi	Italy	Identification of artificial radioactive elements, Atomic furnace construction etc.
A. Salam	Pakistan	Gave intercorelation between electromagnetic forces and weak forces.
Archemedes	Greece	Propounded concept of upthrust (boyancy) in liquids, provided principle of lever, discovery of sp. gravity etc.
Aryabhatt	India	An eminent mathematician and astronomer of 5th century, some more special contribution in mathematics.
Bhaskar-I	India	A famous astronomer and mathematician of 7th century.
Bhaskar-II	India	A famous astronomer and mathematician of 12th century.
B. T. Nag Choudhary	India	The colleague of Dr. Lawrence who was the inventor of Cyclotron has special contribution in the nuclear physics etc.

Physicists	Countries	Outstanding Contributions
Copernicus	Poland	Discovery of the solar system, firstly to explain that all celestial bodies are revolving around the sun.
C. V. Raman	India	Raman effect, related to scattering of light, special research on crystallography of solids.
Dr. Raja Ramanna	India	Contribution in 1st nuclear explosion (Atom bomb) of India at Pokharan in 1974.
Dr. V. Sarabhai	India	Space research, cosmic rays research etc.
de-Broglie	France	Dual nature of matter (matter as a particle and matter as a wave).
Denish Gobar	U. K.	Discovery of three dimensional photography (holography)
Dr. Adberd Taylor	U. S. A.	Construction of hydrogen bomb (Fussion bomb)
Einstein	Germany	Comprehensive and special theory of relativity, explanation of photo electric effect, gave mass energy equivalence relation ($E = mc^2$), discovery of photon etc.
Galelio	Italy	Law of inertia, Kinematical equations, discovery of telescope etc.
G. Marconi	Italy	Wireless telegraphy, radio and wireless message.
H. Devi	U. K.	Discovery of safety lamp.
H. Cauvendish	U. K.	Determination of the density of the earth.
Heisenberg	Germany	Principle of uncertainly, propounded theory of Quantum mechanics.
H. A. Baith	U. S. A.	Explanation of stellar energy (energy confined within stars).
H. Yukawa	Japan	Discovery of elementary particle meson.
H. J. Bhabha	India	The father of Indian Atomic energy, special contribution in space and cosmic-rays showers.
J. J. Thomson	U. K.	Discovery of electron
James Chadwick	U. K.	Discovery of Atomic neutron
John Dalton	U. K.	Proposed Atomic model
J. Kepler	Germany	Planetary motion, motion of satellites etc around the sun
J. B. Narlikar	India	Propounded new theory of relativity.
J. C. Bose	India	Discovery of crescograph, wireless messages, discovery of intrinsic sensation of plants.

Physicists	Countries	Outstanding Contributions
Copernicus	Poland	Discovery of the solar system, firstly to explain that all celestial bodies are revolving around the sun.
C. V. Raman	India	Raman effect, related to scattering of light, special research on crystallography of solids.
Dr. Raja Ramanna	India	Contribution in 1st nuclear explosion (Atom bomb) of India at Pokharan in 1974.
Dr. V. Sarabhai	India	Space research, cosmic rays research etc.
de-Broglie	France	Dual nature of matter (matter as a particle and matter as a wave).
Denish Gobar	U. K.	Discovery of three dimensional photography (holography)
Dr. Adberd Taylor	U. S. A.	Construction of hydrogen bomb (Fussion bomb)
Einstein	Germany	Comprehensive and special theory of relativity, explanation of photo electric effect, gave mass energy equivalence relation ($E = mc^2$), discovery of photon etc.
Galelio	Italy	Law of inertia, Kinematical equations, discovery of telescope etc.
G. Marconi	Italy	Wireless telegraphy, radio and wireless message.
H. Devi	U. K.	Discovery of safety lamp.
H. Cauvendish	U. K.	Determination of the density of the earth.
Heisenberg	Germany	Principle of uncertainly, propounded theory of Quantum mechanics.
H. A. Baithe	U. S. A.	Explanation of stellar energy (energy confined within stars).
H. Yukawa	Japan	Discovery of elementary particle meson.
H. J. Bhabha	India	The father of Indian Atomic energy, special contribution in space and cosmic-rays showers.
J. J. Thomson	U. K.	Discovery of electron
James Chadwick	U. K.	Discovery of Atomic neutron
John Dalton	U. K.	Proposed Atomic model
J. Kepler	Germany	Planetary motion, motion of satellites etc around the sun
J. B. Narlikar	India	Propounded new theory of relativity.
J. C. Bose	India	Discovery of crescograph, wireless messages, discovery of intrinsic sensation of plants.

Physicists
K. M. Krish
Max Planck
Millikan
M. N. Sal
Maxwell
Niels Bo
Newton
Otto H
Robert
Roentgen
R. P. F

S. Cha
Satisfi
S. R
S. N
T. A

1.
2.
3